



002603

SL
306

*Works by J. W. McGRINDLE, M.A., M.R.A.S.,
Late Principal of the Government College,
Patna, and Fellow of the University of
Calcutta.*

ANCIENT INDIA

AS DESCRIBED BY THE CLASSICAL AUTHORS;

BEING a series of copiously annotated Translations of all extant works relating to India, written by The ANCIENT GREEK and ROMAN Authors. The following volumes of the series have appeared :—

- I.—ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED BY MEGASTHENES AND ARRIAN : Being a translation of the fragments of the Indika of Megasthenes, and of the first part of the Indika of Arrian : with Introduction, Notes, and Map of Ancient IndiaRs. 2-8
- II.—THE COMMERCE AND NAVIGATION OF THE ERYTHRÆAN SEA : Being a translation of the Periplus Maris Erythraei (Circumnavigation of the Red Sea and Indian Ocean), and of Arrian's account of the Voyage of Nearkhos : with Introduction, Commentary and IndexRs. 3-0
- III.—ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED BY KTÆSIAS THE KNIDIAN : Being a translation of the fragments of his Indika, with Introduction, Notes and IndexRs. 3
- IV.—ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED BY PTOLEMY : Being a translation of the Chapters on India and on Central and Eastern Asia, in the Treatise on Geography by Klaudios Ptolemaïos, the celebrated Astronomer : with Introduction, Commentary, Map of India according to Ptolemy, and a very copious Index.....Rs. 4-4

The 5th and last volume will contain Strabo's Geography of India and the accounts of the Makedonian Invasion of India given by Arrian and Curtius.

BOMBAY : EDUCATION SOCIETY'S PRESS.
CALCUTTA : THACKER, SPINK & Co.
LONDON : TRÜBNER & Co.



CSL

RARE
FOR COLLEGIATE USE ONLY
OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

In rendering the results of Dr. Schwanbeck's industry accessible to English readers by this translation of the collected fragments of the lost *Indika* of Megasthenês, perhaps the most trustworthy of the Greek writers on India, Mr. McCrindle would have performed a most valuable service even had he not enriched the original by the addition of copious critical notes, and a translation of Arrian's work on the same subject.—*Calcutta Review*.

Mr. McCrindle's translations of the accounts of Ancient India by Megasthenês and Arrian is a most valuable contribution to our knowledge of the subject in the days when Greeks and Romans were ruling the world Mr. McCrindle has conferred a great boon on society by translating Dr. Schwanbeck's learned work into English, illustrating it by a valuable map of Ancient India, and publishing it at a small price. There is more *bonâ fide* information regarding Ancient India in this unpretending volume than is to be found in the great bulk of Sanskrit Puranas; whilst it forms a most valuable adjunct to the mass of traditions and myths which have been preserved in the Hindu epics of the Mahabharata and Ramayana, &c.—*Pioneer*.

Mr. J. W. McCrindle, of Patna, has given us a readable translation both of Schwanbeck's Megasthenês, and of the first part of Arrian's *Indika*. Mr. McCrindle deserves the thanks of all who take an interest in Ancient India, and, should he be able to fulfil his promise to translate "the entire series of classical works relating to India," he will give an impetus to the study of the early civilization of this country among native as well as European scholars. His work is well printed, and, as far as we have been able to judge, carefully edited.—*The Madras Times*.

Mr. McCrindle, who has already published a portion of the translation of Arrian, reprints these valuable contributions to our scanty knowledge of Ancient India. An introduction and notes add value to the translation, a value which happens to be very great in this case, and to centre in one long note on the identification of the old Palibothra or Pataliputra with the modern Patna.—*The Daily Review*.

Mr. McCrindle, who holds a very high position in the Education Department of the Indian Government, has collected into a volume some translations which he has lately contributed to the "Indian Antiquary" from Megasthenês and Arrian. Strabo and Pliny thought fit to condemn the writings of Megasthenês as absolutely false



with the Author's Compliment **SL**

RARE
FOR CONSULTATION ONLY

ANCIENT INDIA

AS DESCRIBED BY

PTOLEMY;

BEING

A TRANSLATION OF THE CHAPTERS WHICH DESCRIBE INDIA
AND CENTRAL AND EASTERN ASIA IN THE TREATISE ON
GEOGRAPHY WRITTEN BY KLAUDIUS PTOLEMAIOS,
THE CELEBRATED ASTRONOMER,

WITH

INTRODUCTION, COMMENTARY, MAP OF
INDIA ACCORDING TO PTOLEMY, AND
A VERY COPIOUS INDEX,

BY

J. W. McCRINDLE, M.A., M.R.A.S.,

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL OF THE GOVERNMENT COLLEGE, PATNA,
AND FELLOW OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALCUTTA;
MEMBER OF THE INDIAN ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY AND THE UNIVERSITY

Reprinted from the "Indian Antiquary," 1884.

Calcutta:
THACKER, SPINK & Co.

Bombay:
B. E. S. PRESS.

London:
TRUBNER & Co.

1885.



CSL

915.401
Pto M85A
16065

915.401
M12AP

PP/PP/PP
954.0141
Pto - A

9 JUL 1962

BOMBAY:

PRINTED AT THE EDUCATION SOCIETY'S PRESS.



16065

CENTRAL SECRETARIAT LIBRARY	
Division	
Acc. No.	
Date of Acqng.	
Call No.	
Processed	Checked
Date of Transfer	



and incredible, although they were glad to copy into their own works much that he had written. We moderns, however, with our longer experience of travellers' tales, and of the vitality of fabulous statements, and practised in comparing accounts that vary, find much in these fragments that agrees with what we can reasonably conjecture of the past of India. . . . We may observe that many of the singularities of the human race, which are depicted on the famous *Mappemonde*, at Hereford, are described by Megasthenès. Mr. McCrindle's volume ends with an excellent translation of the first part of Arrian's *Indika*. He is to be congratulated on having made a very useful contribution to the popular study of Indian antiquities.—*Westminster Review*.

A good notion of the extent of the knowledge respecting India possessed by the old Greeks and Romans may be formed from the translation of the writings on the subject of Megasthenès and Arrian, presented by Mr. McCrindle, under the title of *Ancient India*. Many of the statements made by the old writers are unmingled fable, although Megasthenès, there can be no doubt, travelled as far as Bengal, but on the whole, as much accurate knowledge was possessed by the Romans in the first century after Christ, as by the European nations in the 16th century. An introduction, notes, and map of India add to the practical utility of Mr. McCrindle's work.—*Scotsman*.

Both of these ancient works are very interesting as illustrating the knowledge possessed by the later Greeks and the Romans respecting the geography of India and the neighbouring regions. Mr. McCrindle's prefaces, each with an informative introduction, embody the results of the most recent investigations of modern scholarship on the subjects to which they relate.—*Scotsman*.

Mr. J. W. McCrindle, Principal of the Government College, Patna, has set himself the task of publishing, from time to time, translations of the Greek and Latin works which relate to Ancient India, and in pursuance of this intention, some time since he published a work entitled *Ancient India as described by Megasthenès and Arrian*. A second instalment has now appeared under the title of *The Commerce and Navigation of the Erythrean Sea; being a translation of the Periplus Maris Erythraei, by an anonymous writer, and of Arrian's account of the Voyage of Nearkhos, from the mouths of the Indus to the head of the Persian Gulf, with introduction, commentary, notes, and index*. The introduction and commentary embody the main substance of Müller's prolegomena and notes to the *Periplus* and of Vincent's *Commerce and Navigation of the Ancients*, so far as it relates specially to that work. The identification of places on the Malabar and Coromandel Coasts is derived from Bishop Caldwell's *Dravidian*. Other recent works have been resorted to for verification.



CSL

and correction of the contents of the narrative. To those students who have neither the learned work of Dr. Vincent, nor the *Geographi Græci Minores* of C. Müller, within reach, this handy volume will prove very serviceable.—*The Academy*.

The careful and scholarly translations of ancient texts relating to India, which Mr. McCrindle is preparing in serial order, promises to be of great value. The method which he follows is in accordance with the best traditions of English scholarship As to the historical importance of these texts there can be only one opinion. History in Sanskrit literature is conspicuous by its absence, so that external authorities are at once the only ones available, and at least redeem by their unbiassed character their relatively deficient opportunities of information. Those who are best acquainted with the difficulties of English rule in India, are best aware that the problems of Indian administration are, in fact, problems of Indian history. . . . It is thus of vital importance that every possible hint and clue as to the course of the legal, social, and economical history of the country should be made available. It is the special value of Mr. McCrindle's work that it will form a solid, positive basis for the earliest period of authentic Indian history, &c.—*The Civil and Military Gazette*, Lahore.

The fragments of the *Indika* of Megasthenés, collected by Dr. Schwanbeck, with the first part of the *Indika* of Arrian, the *Periplus Maris Erythraei*, and Arrian's account of the voyage of Nearkhos have been translated, in two most useful volumes, by Mr. J. W. McCrindle, M.A. The *Indika* of Ktesias with the fifteenth book of Strabo is also promised, and the sections referring to India in Ptolemy's *Geography* would complete a collection of the highest value to Indian history.—*Note under the article India, in the new edition of the Encyclopædia Britannica*.

We are glad to learn that the papers by Mr. J. W. McCrindle (on Ptolemy's *Geography* of India) which have recently been appearing in the *Indian Antiquary* are to be published separately. The amount of patient and scholarly work which they indicate is of the kind that we are rather accustomed to look for from a German *savant*, and can hardly be properly appreciated by one who does not know by experience the difficulties of such investigations.—*The Scottish Geographical Magazine*.



GOVT. OF INDIA
SECRETARIAT
LIBRARY.

CSL

P R E F A C E .

PTOLEMY'S "Treatise on Geography," like his famous work on astronomy to which it formed the sequel, was destined to govern the world's opinion on the subject of which it treated, from the time of its publication until the dawn of the modern era, a period of about 1,300 years. This treatise must have been composed in the interests of chartography rather than of geography, for the author's aim is not so much to describe the earth's surface as to lay down the principles on which maps should be constructed, and to determine the latitude and longitude of places with a view to their being mapped in their proper positions. The principles he here laid down have proved of permanent validity, and are still practically applied in the art of map-construction, but his determinations of the position of places, owing to the paucity and imperfection of the astronomical observations on which, in combination with the existing measurements of terrestrial distances his conclusions were based, are all, with very few exceptions, incorrect. The work lost, of course, much of its old authority as soon as the discoveries of modern times had brought its grave and manifold errors to light. It did



CSL

not, however, on this account cease to be of high interest and value as an antiquarian record, if we may judge from the multiplicity of the learned disquisitions which have from time to time been published in elucidation of many points of Ptolemaic Geography.

There is perhaps no part of the contents which has received more attention from scholars than the chapters relating to India, where the tables abound to a surprising extent with names which are found nowhere else in classical literature, and which were doubtless obtained directly from Indian sources, rather than from reports of travellers or traders who had visited the country. On glancing over these names one cannot fail to remark how very few of them have any but the most distant resemblance to the indigenous names which they must have been intended to represent. Philologists, however, have made persistent efforts to penetrate the disguise which conceals the original forms of the names so much distorted by Ptolemy, and have succeeded in establishing a great number of satisfactory identifications, as well as in hitting upon others which have a balance of probability in their favour—a similar service has been rendered by the archaeological investigations which have now for many years been systematically prosecuted under the auspices of the Indian Government.



CSL

PREFACE.

v

The present work has for its main object to show concisely what has been accomplished up to this time in this department of enquiry. It has been compiled from multifarious sources which are not easily accessible, as for instance from foreign publications not yet translated into our own language, and from the Journals and Transactions of various societies at home and abroad which concern themselves with Oriental literature.

I venture therefore to hope that my compendium, which it has taken much time and laborious research to prepare, may meet with recognition and acceptance as a useful contribution to general literature, while proving also serviceable to scholars as a work of reference.

I proceed now to indicate the method which I have followed in the treatment of my subject, and to specify the authorities on which I have principally relied. I have then, in an introductory chapter, attempted to give a succinct account of the general nature of Ptolemy's geographical system, and this is followed by a translation of several chapters of his First Book which serve to exhibit his general mode of procedure in dealing with questions of Geography, and at the same time convey his views of the configuration of the coasts of India, both on this side the Ganges and beyond. In translating the text I have taken it in detach-



CSL

ments of convenient length, to each of which I have subjoined a commentary, the main object of which is—1st, to show, as far as has been ascertained, how each place named by Ptolemy in his Indian Tables has been identified; 2nd, to trace the origin or etymology of each name, so far as it is possible to do so; and 3rd, to notice very concisely the most prominent facts in the ancient history of the places of importance mentioned. I have, as a rule, quoted the sources from which my information has been derived, but may here state that I have generally adopted the views of M. Vivien de Saint-Martin and those of Colonel Yule, whose map of ancient India in Smith's well-known historical *Atlas of Ancient Geography* is allowed on all hands to be the best that has yet been produced. These authors have examined the greater part of the Ptolemaic Geography of India, and their conclusions are for the most part coincident. The works of Saint-Martin, which I have consulted, are these: *Étude sur la Géographie Grecque et Latine de l'Inde, et en particulier sur l'Inde de Ptolémée, dans ses rapports avec la Géographie Sanskrite; Mémoire Analytique sur la Carte de l'Asie Centrale et de l'Inde; et Étude sur la Géographie et les populations primitives du Nord-Ouest de l'Inde d'après les hymnes védiques.* Colonel Yule has expressed his views chiefly in the notes upon the map referred to, but also occasionally in the notes



CSL

PREFACE.

vii

to his edition of *Marco Polo* and in other works from his pen. Frequent reference will be found in my notes to that work of vast erudition, Prof. Lassen's *Indische Alterthumskunde*. Unfortunately the section which he has devoted to a full examination of Ptolemy's India is the least satisfactory portion of his work. His system of identification is based on a wrong principle, and many of the conclusions to which it has led are such as cannot be accepted. His work is notwithstanding, as Yule says, "a precious mine of material for the study of the ancient geography of India." For elucidations of the Ptolemaic geography of particular portions of India I have consulted with great advantage such works as the following:—Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, General Cunningham's *Geography of Ancient India*, Vol. I. (all yet published), and his *Reports on the Archaeological Survey of India*; Bishop Caldwell's Introduction to his *Dravidian Grammar*, valuable for identification of places in the south of the Peninsula; the *Bombay Gazetteer*, edited by Mr. J. M. Campbell, who has carefully investigated the antiquities of that Presidency; the volumes of *Asiatic Researches*; the *Journals of the Royal Asiatic Society* and of the kindred Societies in India; the *Journals of the Royal Geographical Society*; the articles on India and places in India in Smith's *Dictionary of Classical Geography*, written almost all by Mr.



CSL

Vaux; articles in the *Indian Antiquary*; Benfey's *Indien* in the *Encyclopädie* of Ersch and Grüber; the Abbé Halma's *Traité de Géographie de Claude Ptolémée*, Paris, 1828; the Chapters on Marinus and Ptolemy's System of Geography in Bunbury's *History of Ancient Geography*; Priaulx's *Indian Travels of Apollonius of Tyana, &c.*; Stephanos of Byzantium *On Cities*; Sir Emerson Tennent's *Ceylon*; Sir H. Rawlinson's articles on Central Asia which have appeared in various publications, and other works which need not here be specified.

There has recently been issued from the press of Firmin-Didot, Paris, the first volume of a new and most elaborate edition of Ptolemy's Geography, prepared by C. Müller, the learned editor of the *Geographi Graeci Minores*, but the work unfortunately has not advanced so far as to include the chapters which contain the geography of India.

I would here take the opportunity of expressing my obligations to Dr. Burgess, the late editor of the *Indian Antiquary*, for his careful revision of the proofs, and for sundry valuable suggestions.

Having thought it advisable to extend the scope of the work beyond the limits originally contemplated, I have included in it those chapters of the geography in which China, Central Asia, and all the provinces adjacent to India are described. The reader is thus



CSL

PREFACE.

ix

presented with the Ptolemaic Geography of the whole of Asia, with the exception only of those countries which from propinquity and frequency of intercourse were well known to the nations of the West.

In a short Appendix will be found some additional notes.

The present volume forms the fourth of the Series of Annotated Translations of the Works of the Classical Writers which relate to India. Another volume, containing Strabo's Indian Geography and the Accounts given by Arrian and Curtius of the Makedonian Invasion of India, will complete the series.

3, ABBOTSFORD PARK, EDINBURGH,

June, 1885.



CSL

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction	1
Description of India within the Ganges..	33
" of India beyond the Ganges (including Indo-China) ...	189
" of the Sinaï (Southern China).	244
" of the Island of Taprobânê (Ceylon)	247
" of Hyrkania	260
" of Margianê	262
" of Baktrianê	267
" of Sogdiana	274
" of the Sakai	283
" of Skythia within Imaös	285
" of Skythia beyond Imaös	292
" of Sêrikê (Northern China)...	297
" of Areia	305
" of the Paropanisadaï.....	310
" of Drangianê	313
" of Arakhôsia	315
" of Gedrôsia	319



	PAGE
Appendix of Additional Notes	331
1. On the Latitude of Byzantium and that of Tash-Kurghan (p. 14) ..	331
2. On Kouroula (pp. 22, 63-4).....	331
3. On the Argaric Gulf and Argeirou (pp. 22, 59 and 60)	331
4. On Tbelkheir (pp. 63 and 64).....	332
5. On Orthoura (pp. 64 and 184) ..	332
6. On Arkatos (p. 64)	332
7. On the River Adamas (p. 71)	333
8. On Mount Sardonyx (p. 77)	334
9. On Talara (p. 90)	334
10. On Pournata (p. 180)	334
11. On Arembour (pp. 180, 182)	334
12. On Abour (p. 184)	334
13. On Argyra (p. 196)	334
14. On the Golden Khersonese (p. 197).	335
15. On the Loadstone rocks (p. 242)..	335
16. On the sandy deserts of Bactria (p. 270)	335
17. On the River Ôchos (p. 273)	335
18. On the Avestic names of rivers, &c., in Afghânistân	336
19. On the Griffins or Gryphons (p. 295).	338



CSL

PTOLEMY'S GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA AND SOUTHERN ASIA.

INTRODUCTION.

Ptolemy and his System of Geography.

Klaudios Ptolemaios, or as he is commonly called, Ptolemy, was distinguished alike as a Mathematician, a Musician, an Astronomer and a Geographer, and was altogether one of the most accomplished men of science that antiquity produced. His works were considered as of paramount authority from the time of their publication until the discoveries of modern times had begun to show their imperfections and errors. It is surprising that with all his fame, which had even in his own lifetime become pre-eminent, that the particulars of his personal history should be shrouded in all but total darkness. Nothing in fact is known for certain regarding him further than that he flourished in Alexandria about the middle of the 2nd century of our era, in the reign of Antoninus Pius, whom he appears to have survived.

His work on Geography formed a sequel to his great work on Astronomy, commonly called the *Almagest*. From its title Γεωγραφικὴ Ὑφήγησις, *an Outline of Geography*, we might be led to infer



that it was a general treatise on the subject, like the comprehensive work of Strabo, but in reality it treats almost exclusively of Mathematical, or what may be called Cosmical, Geography. Ptolemy's object in composing it was not like that of the ordinary Geographer to describe places, but to correct and reform the map of the world in accordance with the increased knowledge which had been acquired of distant countries and with the improved state of science. He therefore limits his argument to an exposition of the geometrical principles on which Geography should be based, and to a determination of the position of places on the surface of the earth by their latitudes and longitudes. What he considered to be the proper method of determining geographical positions he states very clearly in the following passage: "The proper course," he says, "in drawing up a map of the world is to lay down as the basis of it those points that were determined by the most correct (astronomical) observations, and to fit into it those derived from other sources, so that their positions may suit as well as possible with the principal points thus laid down in the first instance."¹

Unfortunately, as Bunbury remarks, it was impossible for him to carry out in practice—even approximately—the scheme that he had so well laid down in theory. The astronomical observations to which he could refer were but few—and they were withal either so defective or so inaccurate that he could not use them with con-

¹ Book I. cap. 4. The translation is Bunbury's.



fidence. At the same time his information concerning many parts of the earth, whether owing to their remoteness or the conflicting accounts of travellers regarding them, was imperfect in the extreme. The extent, however, of his geographical knowledge was far greater than that possessed by any of his predecessors, and he had access to sources of information which enabled him to correct many of the errors into which they had fallen.

He was induced to undertake the composition of his *Geography* through his being dissatisfied more or less with all the existing systems. There was however one work—that of his immediate precursor, Marinus of Tyre—which approximated somewhat closely to his ideal, and which he therefore made the basis of his own treatise. Marinus, he tells us, had collected his materials with the most praiseworthy diligence, and had moreover sifted them both with care and judgment. He points out, however, that his system required correction both as to the method of delineating the sphere on a plane surface, and as to the computation of distances, which he generally exaggerated. He censures him likewise for having assigned to the known world too great a length from west to east, and too great a breadth from north to south.

Of Ptolemy's own system, the more prominent characteristics may now be noted: He assumed the earth to be a sphere, and adopting the estimate of Poseidónios fixed its circumference at 180,000 stadia, thus making the length of a degree at the equator to be only 500 stadia, instead of 600, which



is its real length.² To this fundamental miscalculation may be referred not a few of the most serious errors to be found in his work. With regard to the question of the length and the breadth of the inhabited part of the earth, a question of first importance in those days, he estimated its length as measured along the parallel of Rhodes³ which divided the then known world into two nearly equal portions at 72,000 stadia, and its breadth at 40,000. The meridian in the west from which he calculated his longitudes was that which passed through the Islands of the Blest (*Μακάρων Νῆσοι*) probably the Canary Islands,⁴ and his most

² The Olympic *stadium*, which was in general use throughout Greece, contained 600 Greek feet, which were equal to 625 Roman feet, or 606½ English feet. The Roman mile contained 8 stadia, or about half a stadium less than an English mile. A stadium of 600 Greek feet was very nearly the 600th part of a degree, and 10 stadia are therefore just about equal to a Nautical or Geographical mile. According to Eratosthenes, a degree at the Equator was equal to 700 stadia, but according to Poseidónios it was equal to only 500. The truth lay between, but Ptolemy unfortunately followed Poseidónios in his error.

³ "The equinoctial line was of course perfectly fixed and definite in Ptolemy's mind, as an astronomical line; but he had no means of assigning its position on the Map of the World, except with reference to other parallels, such as the tropic at Syene, or the parallels of Alexandria and Rhodes, which had been determined by direct observation."—Bunbury, *Hist. of Anc. Geog.*, vol. II, p. 560, n. 2.

⁴ The Island of Ferro—the westernmost of the Group of the Canaries, which was long taken as the prime meridian, and is still so taken in Germany—is really situated 18° 20' west of Greenwich, while Cape St. Vincent (called anciently *the Sacred Cape*) is just about 9°, so that the real difference between the two amounted to 9° 20' instead of only 2½°. Two corrections must therefore be applied to Ptolemy's longitudes—one-sixth must be deducted because of his under-estimate of the length



eastern meridian was that which passed through the Metropolis of the Sinai, which he calls Sinai or Thinaï, and places in $180^{\circ} 40'$ E. Long. and 3° S. Lat. The distance of this meridian from that of Alexandria he estimated at $119\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, and the distance of the first meridian from the same at $60\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, making together 180 degrees, or exactly one-half of the circumference of the earth. His estimate of the breadth he obtained by fixing the southern limit of the inhabited parts in the parallel of $16\frac{1}{2}$ degrees of South Latitude, which passes through a point as far south of the Equator as Meroë is north of it. And by fixing the northern limit in the parallel of 63 degrees North Latitude, which passes through Thoulê (probably the Shetland Islands), a space of nearly 80 degrees was thus included between the two parallels, and this was equivalent in Ptolemy's mode of reckoning to 40,000 stadia.

Having made these determinations he had next to consider in what mode the surface of the earth with its meridians of longitude and parallels of latitude should be represented on a sphere and on a plane surface—of the two modes of delineation that on the sphere is the much easier to make, as it involves no method of projection, but a map drawn on a plane is far more convenient for use, as it presents simultaneously to the eye a far greater extent of surface. Marinus had drawn his map of the world on a plane, but his method

of a degree along the Equator, and $6^{\circ} 50'$ must be added because Ferro was so much further west than he supposed. Subject to these corrections his longitudes would be fairly accurate, provided his calculations of distances were otherwise free from error.



of projection was altogether unsatisfactory. It is thus described by Ptolemy: Marinus, he says, on account of the importance of the countries around the Mediterranean, kept as his base the line fixed on of old by Eratosthenes, *viz.*, the parallel through Rhodes in the 36th degree of north latitude. He then calculated the length of a degree along this parallel, and found it to contain 400 stadia, the equatorial degree being taken at 500. Having divided this parallel into degrees he drew perpendiculars through the points of division for the meridians, and his parallels of latitude were straight lines parallel to that which passed through Rhodes. The imperfections of such a projection are obvious. It represented the parts of the earth north of the parallel of Rhodes much beyond, and those south of it much below, their proper length. Places again to the north of the line stood too far apart from each other, and those to the south of it too close together. The projection, moreover, is an erroneous representation, since the parallels of latitude ought to be circular arcs and not straight lines.

Ptolemy having pointed out these objections to the system of Marinus proceeds to explain the methods which he himself employed. We need say nothing more regarding them than that they were such as presented a near approximation to some of those which are still in use among modern Geographers.

Ptolemy's treatise is divided into 8 books. In the 1st or introductory book he treats first of Geography generally—he then explains and



criticizes the system of Marinus, and concludes by describing the methods of projection which may be employed in the construction of maps. The next 6 books and the first 4 chapters of the 7th book consist of tables which give distinctly in degrees and parts of a degree the latitudes and longitudes of all the places in his map. These places are arranged together in sections according to the country or tribe to which they belong, and each section has prefixed to it a brief description of the boundaries and divisions of the part about to be noticed. Descriptive notices are also occasionally interspersed among the lists, but the number of such is by no means considerable. The remainder of the 7th book and the whole of the 8th are occupied with a description of a series of maps which, it would appear, had been prepared to accompany the publication of the work, and which are still extant. The number of the maps is twenty-six, viz. 10 for Europe, 4 for Libya, and 12 for Asia. They are drawn to different scales, larger or smaller, according as the division represented was more or less known. He gives for each map the latitudes and longitudes of a certain number of the most important cities contained in it, but these positions were not given in the same manner as in the tables, for the latitudes are now denoted by the length of the longest day and the longitudes according to the difference of time from Alexandria. It might be supposed that the positions in question were such as had been determined by actual astronomical observations, as distinguished from those in the Tables, which were for the most part derived from itine-



raries, or from records of voyages and travels. This supposition is however untenable, for we find that while the statements as to the length of the longest days at the selected places are always correct for the latitudes assigned them, they are often glaringly wrong for their real positions. Ptolemy, it is evident, first mapped out in the best way he could the places, and then calculated for the more important of these places the astronomical phenomena incident to them as so situated. I conclude by presenting the reader with a translation of some chapters of the Introductory Book,⁹ where Ptolemy in reviewing the estimate made by Marinus of the length of the known world from west to east, has frequent occasion to mention India and the Provinces beyond the Ganges, which together constitute what is now called Indo-China.

BOOK I., CAP. 11.

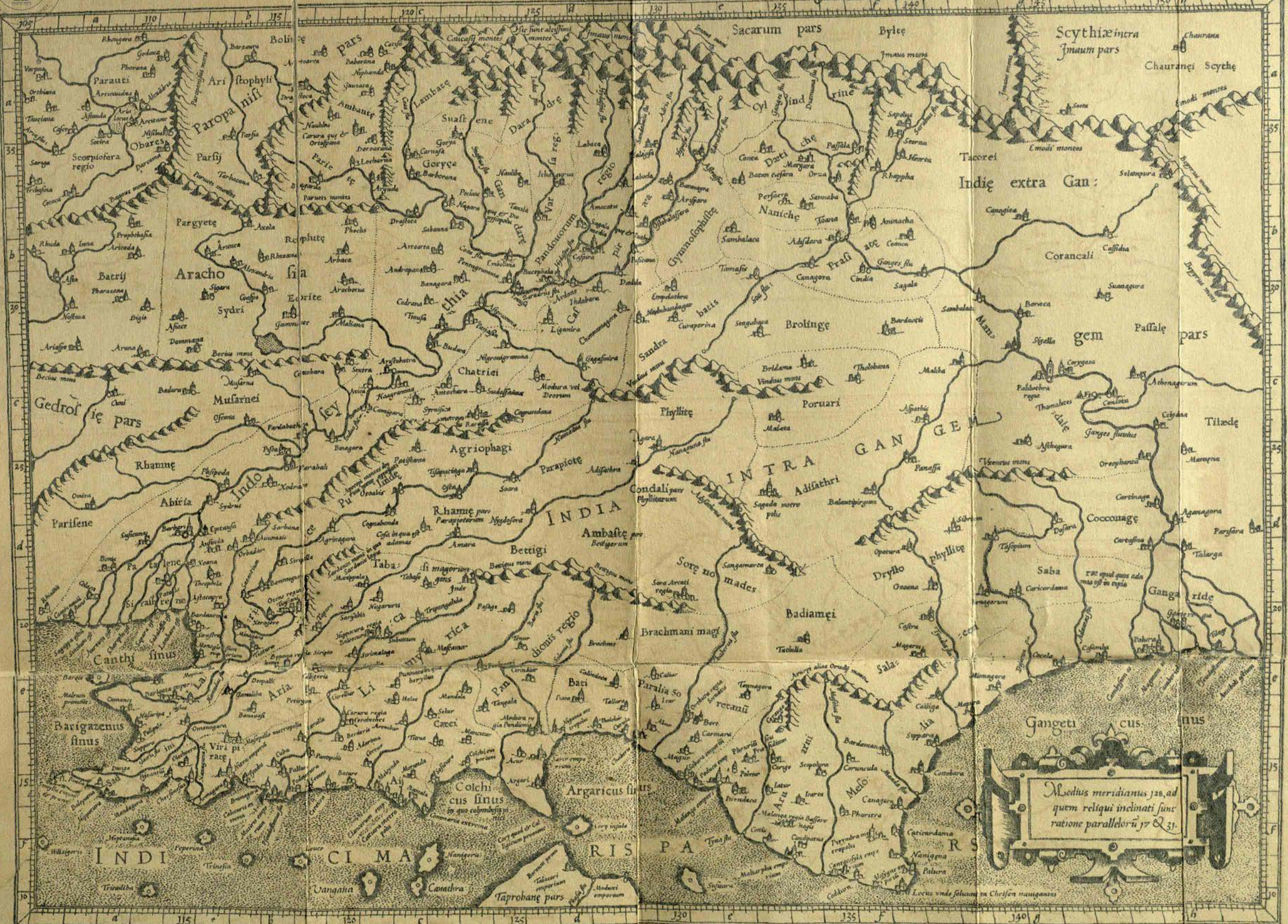
§ 1. What has now been stated will suffice to show us what extent in *breadth* it would be fair to assign to the inhabited world. Its *length* is given by Marinus at 15 hours, this being the distance comprised between his two extreme meridians—but in our opinion he has unduly extended the distance towards the east. In fact, if the estimate be properly reduced in this direction the entire length must be fixed at less than 12 hours, the Islands of the Blest being taken as the limit towards

⁹ The edition used is that of C. F. A. Noble, Leipsic, 1843.



CSL

ASIAE X TAB: Ptolemy's Map of India.



Medius meridianus 130, ad quem reliqui inclinati sunt ratione parallelorum 17 & 31.



the west, and the remotest parts of Sêra and the Sinai⁶ and Kattigara⁷ as the limit towards

⁶ "China for nearly 1,000 years has been known to the nations of Inner Asia, and to those whose acquaintance with it was got by that channel, under the name of Khitai, Khata, or Cathay, *s.g.*, the Russians still call it Khitai. The pair of names, Khitai and Machin, or Cathay and China, is analogous to the other pair Seres and Sinai. Seres was the name of the great nation in the far east as known by land, Sinai as known by sea; and they were often supposed to be diverse, just as Cathay and China were afterwards." Yule's *Marco Polo*, 2nd ed., Introd., p. 11 and note.

⁷ The locality of Kattigara has been fixed very variously. Riechthofen identified it with Kian-chi in Tong-king, and Colonel Yule has adopted this view. "To myself," he says, "the arguments adduced by Riechthofen in favour of the location of Kattigara in the Gulf of Tong-king, are absolutely convincing. This position seems to satisfy every condition. For 1st, Tong-king was for some centuries at that period (B. C. 111 to A. D. 263), only incorporated as part of the Chinese Empire. 2nd, the only part mentioned in the Chinese annals as at that period open to foreign traffic was Kian-chi, substantially identical with the modern capital of Tong-king, Kesho or Hanoi. Whilst there are no notices of foreign arrivals by any other approach, there are repeated notices of such arrivals by this province, including that famous embassy from Antan, King of Ta-t'sin, *i.e.*, M. Aurelius Antoninus (A. D. 161-180) in A. D. 166. The province in question was then known as Ji-nan (or Zhi-nan, French); whence possibly the name Sinai, which has travelled so far and spread over such libraries of literature. The Chinese Annalist who mentions the Roman Embassy adds: 'The people of that kingdom (Ta-t'sin or the Roman Empire) came in numbers for trading purposes to Fu-nan, Ji-nan, and Kian-chi.' Fu-nan we have seen, was Champa, or Zebai. In Ji-nan with its chief-port Kian-chi, we may recognize with assurance Kattigara, Portus Sinarum. Riechthofen's solution has the advantages of preserving the true meaning of Sinai as the Chinese, and of locating the Portus Sinarum in what was then politically a part of China, whilst the remote Metropolis Thinae remains unequivocally the capital of the Empire, whether Si-guan-fu in Chen-si, or Lo-yang in Ho-nan be meant. I will only add that though we find Katighora in Edrisi's *Geography*, I apprehend this to be a mere adoption from the *Geogra-*



the east. § 2. Now the entire distance from the Islands of the Blest to the passage of

phy of Ptolemy; founded on no recent authority. It must have kept its place also on the later mediaeval maps; for Pigafetta, in that part of the circumnavigation where the crew of the *Victoria* began to look out for the Asiatic coast, says that Magellan 'changed the course . . . until, in 13° of N. Lat. in order to approach the land of Cape Gaticara, which Cape (under correction of those who have made cosmography their study, for they have never seen it), is not placed where they think, but is towards the north in 12° or thereabouts.' [The Cape looked for was evidently the extreme S. E. point of Asia, actually represented by Cape Varela or Cape St. James on the coast of Cochín-China.] It is probable that, as Richthofen points out, Kattigara, or at any rate Kian-chi, was the Lukin or Al-Wákin of the early Arab Geographers. But the terminus of the Arab voyagers of the 9th century was no longer in Tong-King, it was Khán-fú, apparently the Kan-pu of the Chinese, the haven of the great city which we know as Hang-chow, and which then lay on or near a delta-arm of the great Yang-tse." These arguments may be accepted as conclusively settling the vexed question as to the position of Kattigara. In a paper, however, recently read before the E. Asiatic Society, Mr. Holt, an eminent Chinese scholar, expressed a different view. He "showed that there was good evidence of a very early communication from some port on the Chinese coast to near Martaban, or along the valley of the Iráwadi to the north-west capital of China, then at Si-gnan-fu or Ho-nan-fu. He then showed that the name of China had been derived from the Indians, who first knew China, and was not due to the Tsin Dynasty, but more probably came from the name of the Compass, specimens of which were supplied to the early envoys, the Chinese being thus known in India as the 'Compass-people,' just as the Seres, another Chinese population, derived their western name from 'Silk.' That the knowledge of this fact was lost to both Indians and Chinese is clear from the use by Hiuen-Tsiang and later writers of two symbols (see Morrison's *Dictionary*, syllabic part, No. 8,033) to designate the country, as these, while giving the sound 'Che-ha,' indicate that they are substitutes for original words of like sounds, the true sense of which cannot now be recovered. Having shown that M. Reinaud's view of an intercourse between China and Egypt in the first century A.D. has no real foundation, Mr. Holt



the Euphrates at Hierapolis, as measured along the parallel of Rhodes, is accurately determined by summing together the several intervening distances as estimated in stadia by Marinus, for not only were the distances well ascertained from being frequently traversed, but Marinus seems moreover in his computation of the greater distances, to have taken into account the necessary corrections for irregularities and deviations.⁵ He understood, besides, that while the length of a single degree of the 360 degrees into which the equatorial circle is divided measures, as in the commonly accepted estimate, 500 stadia, the parallel circle which passes through Rhodes in 36 degrees of N. latitude, measures about 400 stadia. § 3. It measures, in fact, a little over that number if we go by the exact proportion of the parallels, but the excess is so trifling as in the case of the equatorial degree, that it may be neglected. But

further stated that there was no evidence of an embassy from M. Aurelius having gone by sea to China in A.D. 166. In conclusion, he urged, that in his judgment, there was no proof whatever of any knowledge of a maritime way to China before the 4th century A.D., the voyage even of Fa-hian, at that period being open to serious criticism. He believes therefore with M. Gosselin that the Kattigara of Ptolemy was probably not far from the present Martaban, and that India for a considerable period up to the 7th century A.D. dominated over Cambodia."

⁵ Deviations from the straight line by which the route would be represented in the map. The irregularities refer to the occasional shortening of the daily march by obstacles of various kinds, bad roads, hostile attacks, fatigue, &c.



his estimates of the distances beyond Hierapolis require correction. § 4. He computes the distance from the passage of the Euphrates already mentioned to the Stone Tower⁹ at 876

⁹ "One of the circumstances of the route that Ptolemy has reproduced from Marinus is that on leaving Baktra the traveller directed his course for a long enough time towards the North. Assuredly the caravans touched at Samarkand (the Marakanda of Greek authors) which was then, as now, one of the important centres of the region beyond the Oxus. For passing from Sogdiana to the east of the snowy range, which covers the sources of the Jaxartes and the Oxus, three main routes have existed at all times: that of the south, which ascends the high valleys of the Oxus through Badakhshān; that in the centre, which goes directly to Kāshgar by the high valleys of the Syr-Darya or Jaxartes; and lastly that of the north, which goes down a part of the middle valley of the Jaxartes before turning to the east towards Chinese Tartary. Of these three routes, the itinerary of the Greek merchants could only apply to the 2nd or the 3rd; and if, as has been for a long time supposed with much probability, the Stone Tower of the Itinerary is found in an important place belonging to the valley of the Jaxartes, of which the name Tāshkand has precisely the same meaning in the language of the Tarkomāns, it would be the northern route that the caravan of Maēs would have followed. The march of seven months in advancing constantly towards the east leads necessarily towards the north of China (Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp. 428-9.) Sir H. Rawlinson however assigns it a more southern position, placing it at Tash-kurghan, an ancient city which was of old the capital of the Sarik-kul territory, a district lying between Yarkand and Badakhshān, and known to the Chinese as Ko-panto. The walls of Tash-kurghan are built of unusually large blocks of stone. It was no doubt, Sir Henry remarks, owing to the massive materials of which it was built, that it received the name of Tash-kurghan or the 'Stone Fort,' and it seems to have every claim to represent the *λίθινος πύργος* of Ptolemy, where the caravans rendezvoused before entering China, in preference to Tashkand or Ush, which have been selected as the site of the Stone Tower by other geographers."—*Jour. R. Geog. Soc.* vol. XLII, p. 327.



*schœni*¹⁰ or 26,280 stadia, and from the Stone Tower to Sêra, the metropolis of the Sêres, at a 7 months' journey or 36,200 stadia as reckoned along the same parallel. Now in neither case has he made the proper deductions for the excess caused by deviations ; and for the second route he falls into the same absurdity as when he estimated the distance from the Garamantes to Agisymba.¹¹ § 5. Where he had to deduct above half of the stadia in the march of the 3 months and 14 days, since such a march could not possibly have been accomplished without halting.

¹⁰ According to Herodotus (lib. II, c. vi), the *schœnos* was equal to two Persian *parasangs* or 60 stadia, but it was a very vague and uncertain measure, varying as Strabo informs us (lib. XVII, c. i, 24) from 30 to 120 stadia. In the case before us, it was taken as equivalent to the *parasang* of 30 stadia and afforded with correction some approximation to the truth.

¹¹ "The Roman arms had been carried during the reign of Augustus (B. C. 19) as far as the land of the Garamantes, the modern Fezzan, and though the Roman Emperors never attempted to establish their dominion over the country, they appear to have permanently maintained friendly relations with its rulers, which enabled their officers to make use of the oasis of the Garamantes as their point of departure from which to penetrate further into the interior. Setting out from thence, a General named Septimius Plancus 'arrived at the land of the Ethiopians, after a march of 3 months towards the south.' Another Commander named Julius Maternus, apparently at a later date, setting out from Leptis Magna, proceeded from thence to Garama, where he united his forces with those of the king of the Garamantes, who was himself undertaking a hostile expedition against the Ethiopians, and their combined armies 'after marching for four months towards the south,' arrived at a country inhabited by Ethiopians, called Agisymba, in which rhinoceroses abounded."—Bunbury, *Hist. of Anc. Geog.*, vol. II, pp. 522-3.



The necessity for halting would be still more urgent when the march was one which occupied 7 months. § 6. But the former march was accomplished even by the king of the country himself, who would naturally use every precaution, and the weather besides was all throughout most propitious. But the route from the Stone Tower to Sêra is exposed to violent storms, for as he himself assumes, it lies under the parallels of the Hellespont and Byzantium,¹² so that the progress of travellers would be frequently interrupted. § 7. Now it was by means of commerce this became known, for Marinus tells us that one Maës, a Makedonian, called also Titianus, who was a merchant by hereditary profession, had written a book giving the measurement in question, which he had obtained not by visiting the Sêres in person, but from the agents whom he had sent to them. But Marinus seems to have distrusted accounts borrowed from traders. § 8. In giving, for instance, on the authority of Philémon, the length of Ivernia (Ireland) at a 20 days' journey, he refuses to accept this estimate, which was got, he tells us, from merchants, whom he reprobates as a class of men too much engrossed with their own proper business to care about ascertaining the truth, and who also from mere vanity frequently exaggerated distances. So

¹² Lat. 40° 1'—Lat. of Tâsh-kurghân.



too, in the case before us, it is manifest that nothing in the course of the 7 months' journey was thought worthy either of record or remembrance by the travellers except the prodigious time taken to perform it.

CAP. 12.

§ 1. Taking all this into consideration, together with the fact that the route does not lie along one and the same parallel (the Stone Tower being situated near the parallel of Byzantium, and Sêra lying farther south than the parallel through the Hellespont) it would appear but reasonable in this case also to diminish by not less than a half the distance altogether traversed in the 7 months' journey, computed at 36,200 stadia, and so let us reduce the number of stadia which these represent at the equator by one-half only, and we thus obtain (22,625) stadia or $45\frac{1}{4}$ degrees.¹³ § 2. For it would be absurd, and show a want of proper judgment, if, when reason enjoins us to curtail the length of both routes, we should follow the injunction with respect to the African route, to the length of which there is the obvious objection, *viz.*, the species of animals in the neighbourhood of Agisymba,

¹³ 36,200 stadia along the parallel of Rhodes are equivalent, according to Ptolemy's system, to 45,250 stadia along the equator, and this sum reduced by a half gives the figures in the text.



which cannot bear to be transplanted from their own climate to another, while we refuse to follow the injunction with regard to the route from the Stone Tower, because there is not a similar objection to its length, seeing that the temperature all along this route is uniform, quite independently of its being longer or shorter. Just as if one who reasons according to the principles of philosophy, could not, unless the case were otherwise clear, arrive at a sound conclusion.¹⁵

§ 3. With regard again to the first of the two Asiatic routes, that, I mean which leads from the Euphrates to the Stone Tower, the estimate of 870 *schoeni* must be reduced to 800 only, or 24,000 stadia, on account of deviations. § 4. We

¹⁵ Marinus was aware that Agisymba lay in a hot climate, from the fact that its neighbourhood was reported to be a favourite resort for rhinoceroses, and he was thus compelled to reduce his first estimate of its distance, which would have placed it in far too cold a latitude for these animals, which are found only in hot regions. But no such palpable necessity compelled him to reduce his estimate of the distance from the Stone Tower to the Metropolis of the Sères, for here the route had an equable temperature, as it did not recede from the equator but lay almost uniformly along the same parallel of latitude. A little reflexion, however, might have shown Marinus that his enormous estimate of the distance to the Seric Metropolis required reduction as much as the distance to Agisymba, though such a cogent argument as that which was based on the habitat of the rhinoceros was not in this instance available. It is on the very face of it absurd to suppose that a caravan could have marched through a difficult and unknown country for 7 months consecutively at an average progress of 170 stadia (about 20 miles) daily.



may accept as correct his figures for the entire distance as the several stages had been frequently traversed and had therefore been measured with accuracy. But that there were numerous deviations is evident from what Marinus himself tells us. § 5. For the route from the passage of the Euphrates at Hierapolis through Mesopotamia to the Tigris, and the route thence through the Garamaioi of Assyria, and through Media to Ekbatana and the Kaspian Gates, and through Parthia to Hekatompylos Marinus considers to lie along the parallel which passes through Rhodes, for he traces (*in his map*) this parallel as passing through these regions. § 6. But the route from Hekatompylos to the capital city of Hyrkania must, of necessity, diverge to the north, because that city lies somewhere between the parallel of Smyrna and that of the Hellespont, since the parallel of Smyrna is traced as passing below Hyrkania and that of the Hellespont through the southern parts of the Hyrkanian Sea from the city bearing the same name, which lies a little farther north. § 7. But, again, the route herefrom to Antiokheia (Merv) of Margiana through Areia, at first bends towards the south, since Areia lies under the same parallel as the Kaspian Gates, and then afterwards turns towards the north, Antiokheia being situated under the parallel of



the Hellespont.¹⁵ The route after this runs in an eastward direction to Baktra whence it turns towards the north in ascending the mountains of the Kômêdoi, and then in passing through these mountains it pursues a southern course as far as the ravine that opens into the plain country. § 8. For the northern parts of the mountain region and those furthest to the west where the ascent begins, are placed by him under the parallel of Byzantium, and those in the south and the east under the parallel of the Hellespont. For this reason, he says, that this route makes a detour of equal length in opposite directions, that in advancing to the east it bends towards the south, and thereafter probably runs up towards the north for 50 *schœni*, till it reaches the Stone Tower. § 9. For to quote his own

¹⁵ The actual latitudes of the places here mentioned may be compared with those of Ptolemy :—

	Real Lat.	Ptolemy's Lat.
Byzantium.....	41°	43° 5'
Hellespont	40°	41° 15'
Smyrna	38° 28'	38° 35'
Issus	37°	36° 35'
Rhodes	36° 24'	36° 25'
Hierapolis.....	36° 28'	36° 15'
Ekbatana	34° 50'	37° 45'
Kaspian Gates.....	35° 30'	37°
Hekatompylos	35° 40'	37° 50'
Antiokheia (Merv)	37° 35'	40° 20'
Baktra (Balkh)	36° 40'	41°
Stone Tower (Tâshkand)	42° 53'	43°
Sêra Metropolis (Ho-nan).....	38° 35'	33° 55'



words, "When the traveller has ascended the ravine he arrives at the Stone Tower, after which the mountains that trend to the east unite with Imaus, the range that runs up to the north from Palimbothra." § 10. If, then, to the 60 degrees made up of the 24,000 stadia, we add the $45\frac{1}{4}$ degrees which represent the distance from the Stone Tower to Sêra, we get $105\frac{1}{4}$ degrees as the distance between the Euphrates and Sêra as measured along the parallel of Rhodes.¹⁰ § 11. But, further, we

¹⁰ Saint-Martin identifies Sêra, the Metropolis of the Sêres, with a site near Ho-nan-fa. He says, (*Etudes*, p. 432) "At the time when the caravan journey reported by Maëss was made (in the first half of the first century of our era), the Han surnamed Eastern held the reins of government, and their residence was at Lo-yang near the present City of Ho-nan-fou, not far from the southern bank of the lower Hoang-ho. It is there then we should look to find the place which in their ignorance of the language of the country, and in their disdain for barbarous names, the Greek traders designated merely as the Metropolis of the Sêres." The road these traders took appears to have been the same by which Hiuen-Tsiang travelled towards India.

We may here insert for comparison with Ptolemy's distances two itineraries, one by Strabo and the other by Pliny. Strabo (lib. XI, c. viii, 9) says: "These are the distances which he (Eratosthenes) gives:—

	Stadia.
From the Kaspian Sea to the Kyros about ...	1,800
Thence to the Kaspian Gates	5,600
Thence to Alexandria of the Areioi (Herat)..	6,400
Thence to Baktra, called also Zariâspa (Balkh)	3,570
Thence to the Jaxartes, which Alexander reached, about	5,000
Making a total of	22,670."
He also assigns the following distances from the Kaspian Gates to India:—	Stadia.
"To Hekatompylos	1,960
To Alexandria of the Areioi (Herat).....	4,530



can infer from the number of stadia which he gives as the distance between successive places lying along the same parallel, that the distance from the Islands of the Blest to the sacred Promontory in Spain (*Cape St. Vincent*), is $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, and the distance thence to the mouth of the Bætis (*Guadalquivir*), the same.

	Stadia.
Thence to Prophthasia in Dranga (a little north of lake Zarah)	1,600
Thence to the City Arakhotos (Ulan Robût)... ..	4,120
Then to Ortospama (Kâbul) on the 3 roads from Baktra	2,000
Thence to the confines of India	1,000

Which together amount to 15,300."

The sum total however is only 15,210

Pliny (lib. VI, c. xxi) says: "Diogenes and Baeton, his (Alexander's) measurers, have recorded that from the Kaspien Gates to Hekatompylos of the Parthians there were as many miles as we have stated, thence to Alexandria Arion a city built by that king, 375 miles, to Prophthasia of the Drangae 198 miles, to the town of the Arakhosii 365 miles, to Hortospamum 175 miles, thence to Alexander's town (Opiané) 50 miles. In some copies numbers differing from these are found. They state that the last-named city lay at the foot of Gancasus; from that the distance to the Cophes and Pencolatis, a town of the Indians, was 237 miles, and thence to the river Indus and town of Taxila 60 miles, to the Hydaspes, a famous river, 120 miles, to the Hyphasis, no mean river [LXXXIX] 390— which was the limit of Alexander's progress, although he crossed the river and dedicated altars on the far-off bank, as the letters of the king himself agree in stating." The Kaspien Gates formed a point of great importance in ancient Geography, and many of the meridians were measured from it. The pass has been clearly identified with that now known as the Sirdar Pass between Veráná and Kishlak in Khowar. Arrian states that the distance from the city of Rhagai to the entrance of the Gates was a one day's march. This was, however, a forced march, as the ruins of Rhagai (now Rai, about 5 miles from Tehran) are somewhere about 30 miles distant from the Pass.



From the Bætis to Kalpê, and the entrance of the Straits, $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. From the Straits to Karallis in Sardinia, 25 degrees. From Karallis to Lilybaion, in Sicily, $4\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. From this Cape to Pakhynos, 3 degrees. Then again, from Pakhynos to Tainaros, in Lakonia, 10 degrees. Thence to Rhodes, $8\frac{1}{4}$ degrees. From Rhodes to Issus, $11\frac{1}{4}$ degrees, and finally from Issos to the Euphrates, $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees.¹⁷ § 12. The

¹⁷ I may present here the tabular form in which Mr. Bunbury (vol. II, p. 638) exhibits the longitudes of the principal points in the Mediterranean as given by Ptolemy, and the actual longitudes of the same points computed from Ferro :

	Longitude in Ptolemy.	Real longitude E. of Ferro.
Sacred Promontory	2° 30'	9° 20'
Mouth of Bætis	5° 20'	12°
Calpe (at mouth of Straits). ..	7° 30'	13°
Caralis in Sardinia.....	32° 30'	27° 30'
Lilybaum in Sicily	37°	30° 45'
Pakhynus (Prom.) in Sicily. ..	40°	33° 25'
Tainarus (Prom.).....	50°	40° 50'
Rhodes	58° 20'	46° 45'
Issus	69° 20'	54° 30'

The same authority observes (vol. II, p. 564) "Ptolemy thus made the whole interval from the Sacred Cape to Issus, which really comprises only about $45^{\circ} 15'$ to extend over not less than 67 degrees of longitude, and the length of the Mediterranean itself from Calpe to Issus, to amount to 62 degrees; rather more than 20 degrees beyond the truth. It is easy to detect one principal source of this enormous error. Though the distances above given are reported by Ptolemy in degrees of longitude, they were computed by Marinus himself from what he calls *stadiasms*, that is from distances given in maritime itineraries and reported in stadia. In other words, he took the statements and estimates of preceding authorities and converted them into degrees of longitude, according to his own calculation that a degree on the equator was equal to 500 stadia, and



sum of these particular distances gives a total of 72 degrees, consequently the entire length of the known world between the meridian of the Islands of the Blest and that of the Sères is $177\frac{1}{4}$ degrees, as has been already shown.¹⁵

CAP. 13.

§ 1. That such is the length of the inhabited world may also be inferred from his estimate of the distances in a voyage from India to the Gulf of the Sinai and Kattigara, if the sinuosities of the coast and irregularity of the navigation be taken into account, together with the positions as drawn into nearer proximity in the projections; for, he says, that beyond the Cape called Kôry where the Kolchic Gulf terminates, the Argaric Gulf begins, and that the distance thence to the City of Kouroula, which is situated to the north-east of Kôry is 3,400 stadia. § 2. The

consequently a degree of longitude in latitude 36° would be equal (approximately) to 400 stadia.¹⁶ The total length of the Mediterranean computed from the stadiasmoi must have been 24,800. This was an improvement on the estimate of Eratosthenes, but was still excessive. In the ancient mode of reckoning sea distances the tendency was almost uniformly towards exaggeration.

¹⁵ The different corrections to be applied to Ptolemy's eastern longitudes have been calculated by Sir Henry Rawlinson to amount to *three-tenths*, which is within one-seventieth part of the empirical correction used by M. Gossellin. [If we take *one-fifth* from Ptolemy's longitude of a place, and deduct $17^{\circ} 43'$ for the W. longitude of Ferro, we obtain very approximately the modern English longitude. Thus, for Barygaza, Ptolemy's longitude is $113^{\circ} 15'$ and $113^{\circ} 15' - 22^{\circ} 39' - 17^{\circ} 43' = 72^{\circ} 53'$, or only 5' less than the true longitude W. of Greenwich. — J. B.]



distance right across may, therefore, be estimated at about 2,030 stadia, since we have to deduct a third because of the navigation having followed the curvature of the Gulf, and have also to make allowances for irregularities in the length of the courses run. § 3. If now we further reduce this amount by a third, because the sailing, *though subject to interruption*, was taken as continuous, there remain 1,350 stadia, determining the position of Kouroula as situated north-east from Kôry. § 4. If now this distance be referred to a line running parallel to the equator and towards the East, and we reduce its length by half in accordance with the intercepted angle, we shall have as the distance between the meridian of Kouroula and that of Kôry, 675 stadia, or $1\frac{1}{3}$ degree, since the parallels of these places do not differ materially from the great circle.¹⁹

§ 5. But to proceed : the course of the voyage from Kouroula lies, he says, to the south-east as far as Paloura, the distance being 9,450 stadia. Here, if we deduct as before one-third for the irregularities in the length of the courses, we shall have the distance on account of the navigation having been continuous to

¹⁹ By the intercepted angle is meant the angle contained by two straight lines drawn from Kôry, one running north-east to Kouroula and the other parallel to the Equator. In Ptolemy's map Kouroula is so placed that its distance in a straight line from Kôry is about double the distance between the meridians of those two places.



the south-east about 6,300 stadia. § 6. And if we deduct from this in like manner as before one-sixth, in order to find the distance parallel to the equator, we shall make the interval between the meridians of these two places 5,250 stadia, or $10\frac{1}{2}$ degrees.

§ 7. At this place the Gangetic Gulf begins, which he estimates to be in circuit 19,000 stadia. The passage across it from Paloura to Sada in a direct line from west to east is 1,300 stadia. Here, then, we have but one deduction to make, *viz.*, one-third on account of the irregularity of the navigation, leaving as the distance between the meridians of Paloura and Sada 8,670 stadia, or $17\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. § 8. The voyage is continued onward from Sada to the City of Tamala, a distance of 3,500 stadia, in a south-eastward direction. If a third be here again deducted on account of irregularities, we find the length of the continuous passage to be 2,330 stadia, but we must further take into account the divergence towards the south-east, and deduct one-sixth, so we find the distance between the meridians in question to be 1,940 stadia, or $3^{\circ} 50'$ nearly. § 9. He next sets down the passage from Tamala to the Golden Kheronese at 1,600 stadia, the direction being still towards the south-east, so that after making the usual deductions there remain as the distance between the two meridians 900 stadia, or $1^{\circ} 48'$. The





sum of these particulars makes the distance from Cape Kôry to the Golden Khersonese to be $34^{\circ} 48'$.

CAP. 14.

§ 1. Marinus does not state the number of stadia in the passage from the Golden Khersonese to Kattigara, but says that one Alexander had written that the land thereafter faced the south, and that those sailing along this coast reached the city of Zaba in 20 days, and by continuing the voyage from Zaba southward, but keeping more to the left, they arrived after some days at Kattigara. § 2. He then makes this distance very great by taking the expression "some days" to mean "many days," assigning as his reason that the days occupied by the voyage were too many to be counted,—a most absurd reason, it strikes me. § 3. For would even the number of days it takes to go round the whole world be past counting? And was there anything to prevent Alexander writing "many" instead of "some," especially when we find him saying that Dioskoros had reported that the voyage from Rhapta to Cape Prasinum took "many days." One might in fact with far more reason take "some" to mean "a few," for we have been wont to censure this style (*of expression*).²⁰ § 4. So now lest we

²⁰ To account for the seeming caprice which led Marinus to take the expression *some days* as equivalent to *ever so many days* it has been supposed that he had



16065



should appear to fall ourselves into the same error, that of adapting conjectures about distances to some number already fixed on, let us compare the voyage from the Golden Kheronese to

adopted the theory that Kattigara, the furthest point eastward that had been reached by sea, was situated nearly under the same meridian as Séra, the furthest point in the same direction that had been reached by land. Unfortunately the expression used by Alexander *some days* did not square with this theory, and it was all the worse in consequence for that expression. "The result," says Mr. Bunbury (vol. II, p. 537), "derived by Marinus from these calculations was to place Kattigara at a distance of not less than 100 degrees of longitude, or nearly 50,000 stadia, east of Cape Kôry; and as he placed that promontory in $125\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ of longitude east of the Fortunate Islands, he arrived at the conclusion that the total length of the inhabited world was, in round numbers, 225^s, equivalent, according to his calculation to 112,500 stadia. As he adopted the system of Poseidônios, which gave only 180,000 stadia for the circumference of the globe, he thus made the portion of it which he supposed to be known, to extend over nearly two-thirds of the whole circumference. This position of Cape Kôry, which was adopted by Ptolemy as a position well established, was already nearly 34° too far to the east; but it was by giving the enormous extension we have pointed out to the coast of Asia beyond that promontory, that he fell into this stupendous error, which though partly corrected by Ptolemy, was destined to exercise so great an influence upon the future progress of geography." Columbus by accepting Ptolemy's estimate of the circumference of the globe greatly underestimated the distance between the western shores of the Atlantic and the eastern shores of Asia, and hence was led to undertake his memorable enterprise with all the greater hope and courage.

With reference to the position of Cape Kôry as given by Ptolemy, Bunbury says (Vol. II, p. 537, note): "Cape Kôry is placed by Ptolemy, who on this point apparently follows Marinus, in 125° E. Longitude. It is really situated 80° E. of Greenwich and 98° E. of Ferro; but as Ptolemy made a fundamental error in the position of his primary meridian of nearly 7° this must be added to the amount of his error in this instance. He himself states that Cape Kôry was 120° E. of the mouth of the Betis, the real difference of longitude being only $36^{\circ}20'$."



Kattigara, consisting of the 20 days to Zaba and the "some days" thence to Kattigara with the voyage from Arômata to Cape Prasum, and we find that the voyage from Arômata to Rhapta took also 20 days as reported by Theophilos, and the voyage from Rhapta to Prasum "many more days" as reported by Dioskoros, so that we may set side by side the "some days" with the "many days" and like Marinus take them to be equivalent. § 5. Since then, we have shown both by reasoning and by stating ascertained facts, that Prasum is under the parallel of $16^{\circ} 25'$ in South latitude, while the parallel through Cape Arômata is $4^{\circ} 15'$ in North latitude, making the distance between the two capes $20^{\circ} 40'$, we might with good reason make the distance from the Golden Khersonese to Zaba and thence to Kattigara just about the same. § 6. It is not necessary to curtail the distance from the Golden Khersonese to Zaba, since as the coast faces the south it must run parallel with the equator. We must reduce, however, the distance from Zaba to Kattigara, since the course of the navigation is towards the south and the east, in order that we may find the position parallel to the equator. § 7. If again, in our uncertainty as to the real excess of the distances, we allot say one-half of the degrees to each of these distances, and from the $13^{\circ} 20'$ between Zaba and Kattigara we deduct a third on account of the divergence, we shall have the



distance from the Golden Khersonese to Kattigara along a line parallel to the equator of about $17^{\circ} 10'$. § 8. But it has been shown that the distance from Cape Kôry to the Golden Khersonese is $34^{\circ} 48'$, and so the entire distance from Kôry to Kattigara will be about 52° .

§ 9. But again, the meridian which passes through the source of the River Indus is a little further west than the Northern Promontory of Taprobane, which according to Marinus is opposite to Kôry, from which the meridian which passes through the mouths of the River Bætis is a distance of 8 hours or 120° . Now as this meridian is 5° from that of the Islands of the Blest, the meridian of Cape Kôry is more than 125° from the meridian of the Islands of the Blest. But the meridian through Kattigara is distant from that through the Islands of the Blest a little more than 177° in the latitude of Kôry, each of which contains about the same number of stadia as a degree reckoned along the parallel of Rhodes. § 10. The entire length then of the world to the Metropolis of the Sinai may be taken at 180 degrees or an interval of 12 hours, since it is agreed on all hands that this Metropolis lies further east than Kattigara, so that the length along the parallel of Rhodes will be 72,000 stadia.

CAP. 17, (part).

§ 3. For all who have crossed the seas to those places agree in assuring me that the district of



Sakhalitès in Arabia, and the Gulf of the same name, lie to the east of Syagros, and not to the west of it as stated by Marinus, who also makes Simylla, the emporium in India, to be further west not only than Cape Komari, but also than the Indus. § 4. But according to the unanimous testimony both of those who have sailed from us to those places and have for a long time frequented them, and also of those who have come from thence to us, Simylla, which by the people of the country is called Timoula, lies only to the south of the mouths of the river, and not also to west of them. § 5. From the same informants we have also learned other particulars regarding India and its different provinces, and its remote parts as far as the Golden Khersonese and onward thence to Kattigara. In sailing thither, the voyage, they said, was towards the east, and in returning towards the west, but at the same time they acknowledged that the period which was occupied in making the voyages was neither fixed nor regular. The country of the Sères and their Metropolis was situated to the north of the Sinai, but the regions to the eastward of both those people were unknown, abounding it would appear, in swamps, wherein grew reeds that were of a large size and so close together that the inhabitants by means of them could go right across from one end of a swamp to the other. In travelling from these parts there



was not only the road that led to Baktrianê by way of the Stone Tower, but also a road that led into India through Palimbothra. The road again that led from the Metropolis of the Sinai to the Haven at Kattigara runs in a south-west direction, and hence this road does not coincide with the meridian which passes through Sêra and Kattigara, but, from what Marinos tell us, with some one or other of those meridians that are further east.

I may conclude this prefatory matter by quoting from Mr. Bunbury his general estimate of the value of Ptolemy's Indian Geography as set forth in his criticism of Ptolemy's Map of India.

His strictures, though well grounded, may perhaps be considered to incline to the side of severity. He says (vol. II, pp. 642-3), "Some excellent remarks on the portion of Ptolemy's work devoted to India, the nature of the different materials of which he made use, and the manner in which he employed them, will be found in Colonel Yule's introduction to his Map of India, in Dr. Smith's *Atlas of Ancient Geography* (pp. 22-24). These remarks are indeed in great measure applicable to the mode of proceeding of the Alexandrian Geographer in many other cases also, though the result is particularly conspicuous in India from the fulness of the information—crude and undigested as it was—which he had managed to bring together. The result, as presented to us in the tables of Ptolemy, is a map of utter confusion, out of which it is very difficult to extract in a few instances any definite conclusions." The attempt



of Lassen to identify the various places mentioned by Ptolemy, is based throughout upon the fundamental error of supposing that the geographer possessed a Map of India similar to our own, and that we have only to compare the ancient and modern names in order to connect the two. As Col. Yule justly observes: "Practically, he (Lassen) deals with Ptolemy's compilation as if that Geographer had possessed a collection of real Indian surveys, with the data systematically co-ordinated. The fact is, that if we should take one of the rude maps of India that appeared in the 16th century (*e.g.* in Mercator or in Lindschoten), draw lines of latitude and longitude, and then *more Ptolemaico* construct tables registering the co-ordinates of cities, sources and confluences as they appeared in that map, this would be the sort of material we have to deal with in Ptolemy's India." But, in fact, the case is much stronger than Col. Yule puts it. For such a map as he refers to, of the 16th century, however rude, would give a generally correct idea of the form and configuration of the Indian Peninsula. But this, as we have seen, was utterly misconceived by Ptolemy. Hence he had to fit his data, derived from various sources, such as maritime and land itineraries, based upon real experience, into a framework to which they were wholly unsuited, and this could only be effected by some Procrustean process, or rather by a repetition of such processes, concerning which we are left wholly in the dark.

Col. Yule's map of Ancient India is undoubtedly by far the best that has yet been produced: it is indeed the only attempt to interpret Ptolemy



data, upon which such a map must mainly be founded upon anything like sound critical principles. But it must be confessed that the result is far from encouraging. So small a proportion of Ptolemy's names can find a place at all, and so many of those even that appear on the map are admitted by its author to rest upon very dubious authority; that we remain almost wholly in the dark as to the greater part of his voluminous catalogues; and are equally unable to identify the localities which he meant to designate, and to pronounce an opinion upon the real value of his materials."

BOOK VII.

Contents.

Description of the furthest parts of Greater Asia, according to the existing provinces and Satrapies.

1. [*Tenth Map*]
of India within the River Ganges.
2. [*Eleventh Map*]
*of India beyond the Ganges,
of the Sinai.*
3. [*Twelfth Map*]
*of the Island of Taprobané and the
islands surrounding it.*
4. *Outline Sketch of the Map of the Inhabited World.*
*Delineation of the Armillary Sphere with
the Inhabited World.*
Sketch of the World in Projection.
- [5. *There are 100 Provinces and 30 Maps.*]



CAP. I.

Description of India within the Ganges.

§ 1. India within the river Ganges is bounded on the west by the Paropanisadai and Arakhôsia and Gedrôsia along their eastern sides already indicated; on the north by Mount Imaôs along the Sogdiaioi and the Sakai lying above it; on the east by the river Ganges; and on the south and again on the west by a portion of the Indian Ocean. The circuit of the coast of this ocean is thus described:—

2. In Syrastrênê, on the Gulf called Kanthi, a roadstead and harbour. $109^{\circ} 30' 20''$

The most western mouth of
the River Indus called

Sagapa $110^{\circ} 20' 19^{\circ} 50'$

The next mouth called Sin-

thôn $110^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 50'$

The 3rd mouth called Khry-

soun (the Golden) $111^{\circ} 20' 19^{\circ} 50'$

The 4th called Kariphron ... $111^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 50'$

The 5th called Sapara $112^{\circ} 30' 19^{\circ} 50'$

The 6th called Sabalaessa ... $113^{\circ} 20^{\circ} 15'$

The 7th called Lônibarô $113^{\circ} 30' 20^{\circ} 15'$

3. Bardaxêma, a town ... $113^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 40'$

Syrastra, a village $114^{\circ} 19^{\circ} 30'$

Monoglôsson, a mart $114^{\circ} 10' 18^{\circ} 40'$

Comment.—Strabo, following Eratosthenes, regarded the Indus as the boundary of India on the west, and this is the view which has been generally prevalent. Ptolemy, however, included within India



the regions which lay immediately to the west of that river, comprehending considerable portions of the countries now known as Balûchistân and Afghânistân. He was fully justified in this determination, since many places beyond the Indus, as the sequel will show, bore names of Sanskrit origin, and such parts were ruled from the earliest times down to the Muhammadan conquests by princes of Indian descent. The western boundary as given by Ptolemy would be roughly represented by a line drawn from the mouth of the Indus and passing through the parts adjacent to Kandahâr, Ghaznî, Kâbul, Balkh, and even places beyond. The Paropanisadai inhabited the regions lying south of the mountain range called Paropanisos, now known as the Central Hindû-Kâsh. One of these towns was *Ortospana*, which has been identified with the city of Kâbul, the *Karoura* of our author. He gives as the eastern boundary of the Paropanisadai a line drawn south from the sources of the river Oxus through the Caucasian Mountains (the eastern portion of the Hindû-Kâsh) to a point lying in long. $119^{\circ} 30'$ and lat. 39° . *Arakhôsia* lay to the south of the Paropanisadai—its chief city was *Arakhôtos*, whose name, according to Rennell, is preserved in *Arokhaj*. There is a river of the same name which has been identified with the Helmand (the *Etymander* or *Erymanthos* of the ancients) but also and more probably with the *Urghand-âb* or *Arkand-âb*, which passes by *Kandahâr*. *Gedrôsia*, the modern Balûchistân, had for its eastern boundary the River Indus. The boundary of India on the



north was formed by Mount Imaös (Sansk. *hima*, cold), a name which was at first applied by the Greeks to the Hindû-Kûsh and the chain of the Himâlayas running parallel to the equator, but which was gradually in the course of time transferred to the Bolor range which runs from north to south and intersects them. Ptolemy, however, places Imaös further east than the Bolor, and in the maps which accompany his *Geography*, this meridian chain, as he calls it, is prolonged up to the most northerly plains of the Irtysh and Obi.

Sogdiana lay to the north of Bactria and abutted on Skythia, both towards the north and towards the west. The name has been preserved in that of Soghd, by which the country along the Kohik from Bokhârâ to Samarkand has always been known. Our author places the Sogdian Mountains (the Pâmîr range) at the sources of the Oxus, and the mountains of the Kômêdai between the sources of that river and the Jaxartes.

The Sakai were located to the east of the Sogdians—Ptolemy describes them as nomadic, as without towns and as living in woods and caves. He specifies as their tribes the Karatai (probably connected with the Kirâtai of India), the Komaroi, the Kômêdai, the Massagetai, the Grynaiou Skythai, the Toörnai and the Byltai. The Sakai it would appear therefore were the Mountaineers of Kâfiristân, Badakshân, Shignân, Roshan, Baltistân or Little Tibet, &c.

Systrênê and Larikê.

Systrênê:—The name is formed from the Sanskrit Surâshtra (now Sorâsh) the ancient



name of the Peninsula of Gujarât. It is mentioned in the *Periplûs of the Erythraean Sea* as the sea-board of Abêria, and is there praised for the great fertility of its soil, for its cotton fabrics, and for the superior stature of its inhabitants.

Kan th i:—The Gulf of this name is now called the Gulf of Kachh. It separates Kachh, the south coast of which is still called Kan tha, from the Peninsula of Gujarât. In the *Periplûs* the gulf is called Barakê and is described as of very dangerous navigation. In Ptolemy, Barakê is the name of an island in the Gulf.

Two mouths only of the Indus are mentioned by the followers of Alexander and by Strabo. The *Periplûs* gives the same number (7) as Ptolemy. There are now 11, but changes are continually taking place. Sagapa, the western mouth, was explored by Alexander. It separates from the main stream below Thaṭha. In the chronicles of Sindh it is called Sâgâra, from which perhaps its present name Ghâra, may be derived. It has long ceased to be navigable.

Sin th ô n:—This has been identified with the Piti branch of the Indus, one of the mouths of the Baghâr River. This branch is otherwise called the Sindhî Khrysoun. This is the Kediwârî mouth.

Kh ar ip h r o n:—Cunningham identifies this with the Kyâr river of the present day which, he says, leads right up to the point where the southern branch of the Ghâra joins the main river near Lâri-bandar.

S a p a r a:—this is the Wârî mouth.

S a b a l a e s s a is now the Sir mouth.



L o n i b a r é in Sanskrit is Lônavâri (or Lônava-dâ, or Lavanavâri or Lâvanavâtâ.²¹ It is now the Kori, but is called also the Launi which preserves the old name.

B a r d a x ê m a :—This, according to Yule, is now Pur-bandar, but Dr. Burgess prefers Srînagar, a much older place in the same district, having near it a small village called Bardiyâ, which, as he thinks, may possibly be a reminiscence of the Greek name.

S y r a s t r a :—This in the Prakritized form is Sorath. It has been identified by Lassen with Junâgaḍh, a place of great antiquity and historical interest in the interior of the Peninsula, about 40 miles eastward from the coast at Navi-bandar. The meaning of the name is *the old fort*. The place was anciently called Girnagara, from its vicinity to the sacred mountain of Girnâr, near which is the famous rock inscribed with the edicts of Aśôka, Skandagupta and Rudra Dâma. Yule identifies Syrastra with Navi-bandar, a port at the mouth of the Bhâdar, the largest river of the Peninsula, said to be fed by 99 tributaries. Junâgaḍh was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who states that after leaving the kingdom of Valabhî (near Bhaunagar) he went about 100 miles to the west and reached the country of Su-la-ch'a (Saurâshtra) that was subject to the kingdom of Valabhî. See *Tarikh-i-Sorath*, edited by Dr. Burgess, pp. 33-199.

M o n o g l ô s s o n :—This is now represented by Mangrol, a port on the S. W. coast of the Penin-

²¹ *Lavana* is the Sanskrit word for *salt*.



sula below Navi-bandar. It is a very populous place, with a considerable traffic, and is tributary to Junâgadh.

4. In Larikê.

Mouth of the River Môphis...	114°	18° 20'
Pakidarê, a village	113°	17° 50'
Cape Maleô	111°	17° 30'

5. In the Gulf of Barygaza.

Kamanê	112°	17°
Mouth of the River Namados	112°	17° 45'
Nausaripa	112° 30'	16° 30'
Poulipoula	112° 30'	16°

Larikê, according to Lassen, represents the Sansk. Râshṭrika in its Prakrit form Laṭika. Lâr-deśa, however, the country of LÂR (Sansk. Lâṭa) was the ancient name of the territory of Gujarât, and the northern parts of Koṅkan, and Larikê may therefore be a formation from Lâr with the Greek termination ikê appended. The two great cities of Barygaza (Bharoch) and Ozênê (Ujjain) were in Larikê, which appears to have been a political rather than a geographical division.

Maleô must have been a projection of the land somewhere between the mouth of the Mahî and that of Narmadâ—but nearer to the former if Ptolemy's indication be correct.

The Gulf of Barygaza, now the Gulf of Khambhat, was so called from the great commercial emporium of the same name (now Bharoch) on the estuary of the Narmadâ at a distance of about 300 stadia from the Gulf. This river is called the Namados or Namadês by Ptolemy and the Namnadios by the Author of the *Periplûs*,



who gives a vivid account of the difficulties attending the navigation of the gulf and of the estuary which was subject to bores of great frequency and violence.

Kamanê is mentioned as Kammônê in the *Periplus*, where it is located to the south of the Narmadâ estuary. Ptolemy probably errs in placing it to northward of it.

Nausaripa has been identified with Nausâri, a place near the coast, about 18 miles south from Sûrat.

Poulipoula is in Yule's map located at Sanjan, which is on the coast south from Nausâri. It was perhaps nearer Balsâr.

6. Ariakê Sadinôn.

Soupara	112° 30'	15° 30'
Mouth of the River Goaris ...	112° 15'	15° 10'
Dounga	111° 30'	15°
Mouth of the River Bênda ...	110° 30'	15°
Simylla, a mart and a cape ...	110°	14° 45'
Hippokoura	111° 45'	14° 10'
Baltipatna	110° 30'	14° 20'

Âriakê corresponds nearly to Mahârâshtra—the country of the Marâthâs. It may have been so called, because its inhabitants being chiefly Aryans and ruled by Indian princes were thereby distinguished from their neighbours, who were either of different descent or subject to foreign domination. The territory was in Ptolemy's time divided among three potentates, one of whom belonged to the dynasty of the Sadinêis and ruled the prosperous trading communities that occupied the seaboard. This dynasty



is mentioned in the *Periplus* (cap. 52) whence we learn that Sandanes after having made himself master of Kalliena (now Kalyâna), which had formerly belonged to the house of Saraganes the elder, subjected its trade to the severest restrictions, so that if Greek vessels entered its port even accidentally, they were seized and sent under guard to Barygaza, the seat evidently of the paramount authority. Sadanes, according to Lassen, corresponds to the Sanskrit word Sâdhana, which means *completion* or *a perfecter*, and also an agent or representative. By Saraganes is probably indicated one of the great Sâtakarni or Andhra dynasty. The *Periplus* makes Ariakê to be the beginning of the kingdom of Mambares and of all India.

Soupara has been satisfactorily identified by Dr. Burgess with Supârâ, a place about 6 miles to the north of Vasai (Bassein). It appears to have been from very early times an important centre of trade, and it was perhaps the capital of the district that lay around it. Among its ruins have been preserved some monuments, which are of historical interest, and which also attest its high antiquity. These are a fragment of a block of basalt like the rocks of Girnâr, inscribed with edicts of Asôka, and an old Buddhist Stûpa. The name of Supârâ figures conspicuously in the many learned and elaborate treatises which were evoked in the course of the famous controversy regarding the situation of Ophir to which Solomon despatched the ships he had hired from the Tyrians. There can now be little doubt that if Ophir did not mean India itself it designated



some place in India, and probably Supârâ, which lay on that part of the coast to which the traders of the west, who took advantage of the monsoon to cross the ocean, would naturally direct their course. The name moreover of Supârâ is almost identical with that of Ophir when it assumes, as it often does, an initial S, becoming Sôphara as in the *Septuagint* form of the name, and Sofir which is the Coptic name for India, not to mention other similar forms. (See Benfey's *Indien*, pp. 30-32).

The mouths of the Goaris and Bênda Yule takes to be the mouths of the Strait that isolates Salsette and Bombay. The *names* represent, as he thinks, those of the Gôdâvari and Bhima respectively, though these rivers flow in a direction different from that which Ptolemy assigns to them, the former discharging into the Bay of Bengal and the latter into the Krishnâ, of which it is the most considerable tributary. Ptolemy's rivers, especially those of the Peninsula, are in many instances so dislocated, that it is difficult to identify them satisfactorily. It appears to have been his practice to connect the river-mouths which he found mentioned in records of coasting voyages with rivers in the interior concerning which he had information from other sources, and whose courses he had only partially traced. But, as Yule remarks, with his erroneous outline of the Peninsula this process was too hazardous and the result often wrong. Mr. J. M. Campbell, B.C.S., would identify the Goaris with the Vaitarna River, as Gore is situated upon it and was probably the



highest point reached by ships sailing up its stream. The sources of the Vaitarna and the Gôdâvarî are in close propinquity. The Bênda he would identify with the Bhiwandî River, and the close similarity of the names favours this view.

Dounga is placed in Yule's map to the S. E. of Supârâ on the Strait which separates Salsette from the mainland. Ptolemy, however, through his misconception of the configuration of this part of the coast, places it a whole degree to the west of Supârâ. Mr. Campbell, from some similarity in the names, suggests its identity with Dugâd—a place about 10 miles N. of Bhiwandî and near the Vajrabâi hot springs. Dugâd, however, is too far inland to have been here mentioned by Ptolemy, and moreover, it lies to the north of Supârâ, whereas in Ptolemy's enumeration, which is from north to south, it is placed after it.

Simylla:—Yule identifies this with Chaul and remarks: "Chaul was still a chief port of Western India when the Portuguese arrived. Its position seems to correspond precisely both with Simylla and with the Şaimûr or Jaimûr (*i.e.* Chaimur, the Arabs having no *ch*) of the Arabian geographers. In Al-Bîrûnî the coast cities run: Kambâyat, Bahruj, Sindân (Sanjân), Sufâra (Supârâ), Tana (near Bombay). "There you enter the country of Lârân, where is Jaimûr." Istakhri inverts the position of Sindân and Sufâra, but Saimûr is still furthest south." In a note he adds: "Ptolemy mentions that Simylla was called by the natives Timula (probably Tiamula); and



putting together all these forms, Timula, Simylla, Šaimūr, Chaimūr, the real name must have been something like Chainul or Chāmul, which would modernize into Chaul, as Chamari and Prāmara into Chauri and Pawâr.” Chaul or Chênwal lies 23 miles S. of Bombay. Paṇḍit Bhagvānlāl Indrāji, Ph.D., suggested as a better identification Chimūla in Trombay Island, this being supported by one of the Kanhēri inscriptions in which Chimūla is mentioned, apparently as a large city, like Supârâ and Kalyāna in the neighbourhood. Mr. Campbell thus discusses the merits of these competing identifications:—“ Simylla has a special interest, as Ptolemy states that he learned some of his Geography of Western India from people who traded to Simylla and had been familiar with it for many years, and had come from there to him—Ptolemy speaks of Simylla as a point and emporium, and the author of the *Periplūs* speaks of it as one of the Koṅkan local marts. Simylla till lately was identified with Chaul. But the discovery of a village Chembur on Trombay Island in Bombay Harbour, has made it doubtful whether the old trade centre was there or at Chaul. In spite of the closer resemblance of the names, the following reasons seem to favour the view that Chaul, not Chimūla, was the Greek Simylla. First, it is somewhat unlikely, that two places so close, and so completely on the same line of traffic as Kalyān (the Kalliena of the *Periplūs*) and Chimūla should have flourished at the same time. Second, the expression in the *Periplūs* ‘below (*μῆρα*) Kalliena other local marts are Semulla’ points to some place down the coast rather than



to a town in the same Harbour as Kalliena, which according to the Author's order north to south should have been named before it. Third, Ptolemy's point (promontorium) of Simylla has no meaning if the town was Chembur in Trombay. But it fits well with Chaul, as the headland would then be the south shore of Bombay Harbour, one of the chief capes in this part of the coast, the south head of the gulf or bay whose north head is at Bassein. This explanation of the Simylla point is borne out by Fryer (1675) *New Account* (pp. 77-82), who talked of Bombay 'facing Chaul' and notices the gulf or hollow in the shore stretching from Bassein to Chaul Point. The old (1540) Portuguese name 'Chaul Island' for the isle of Kennery of the south point of Bombay, further supports this view." Ptolemy's map gives great prominence to the projection of land at Simylla, which (through a strange misconception on his part, for which it is impossible to account) is therein represented as the great south-west point of India, whence the coast bends at once sharply to the east instead of pursuing its course continuously to the south.

Hippokoura:—This word may be a Greek translation (in whole or in part) of the native name of the place. Hence Pandit Bhagvânâlî Indrajî was led to identify it with Ghodabandar (Horse-port) a town on the Thana Strait, whose position however is not in accordance with Ptolemy's data. Mr. Campbell again has suggested an identification free from this objection. Ghoregâon (Horse-village) in Kolâba, a place at the head of a navigable river, which was once a



seat of trade. Yule takes it, though doubtingly, as being now represented by Kudâ near Râjapûr. Hippokourios was one of the Greek epithets of Poseidôn. Ptolemy mentions another Hippokoura, which also belonged to Ariakê and was the Capital of Baleokouros. Its situation was inland.

Baltipatna:—This place is mentioned in the *Periplus* under the somewhat altered form *Palaipatmai*. Yule locates it, but doubtingly, at Daibal. Fra Paolino identified it with Balaerpatam (the Baleopatam of Rennell) where the king of Cananor resided, but it lies much too far south to make the identification probable. Mr. Campbell has suggested Pali, which he describes as "a very old holy town at the top of the Nagôtna river." Its position, however, being too far north and too far from the sea, does not seem to suit the requirements.

7. (*Ariakê*) of the Pirates.

Mandagara.....	113°	14°
Byzanteion.....	113° 40'	14° 40'
Khersonêsos	114° 20'	14° 30'
Armagara	114° 20'	14° 20'
Mouth of the River Nanagouna	114° 30'	13° 50'
Nitra, a mart.....	115° 30'	14° 40'

Ariakê.

Piracy, which from very early times seems to have infested, like a pernicious parasite, the commerce of the Eastern Seas, flourished nowhere so vigorously as on the Konkan Coast, along which richly freighted merchantmen were continually plying. Here bands of pirates, formed into regularly organized communities like those



of the Thags in the interior of the country, had established themselves in strongholds contiguous to the creeks and bays, which were numerous on the coast, and which afforded secure harbourage to their cruisers. The part of the coast which was subject to their domination and which was in consequence called the Pirate Coast, extended from the neighbourhood of Simylla to an emporium called Nitra, the Mangaruth of Kosmas and the Mangalâr of the present day. Whether the native traders took any precautions to protect their ships from these highwaymen of the ocean is not known, but we learn from Pliny, that the merchantmen which left the Egyptian ports heading for India carried troops on board well-armed for their defence. Mr. Campbell has ingeniously suggested that by *Ἀνδρῶν Πειρατῶν* Ptolemy did not mean pirates, but the powerful dynasty of the Ândhrabhṛitya that ruled over the Konkan and some other parts of the Dekhan. He says (*Bombay Gazetteer*, Thâna, vol. II., p. 415 n. 2nd), "Perhaps because of Pliny's account of the Konkan pirates, Ptolemy's phrase *Ariâké Andrôn Peiratôn* has been taken to mean Pirate Ariâké. But Ptolemy has no mention of pirates on the Konkan Coast, and, though this does not carry much weight in the case of Ptolemy, the phrase *Andrôn Peiratôn* is not correct Greek for pirates. This and the close resemblance of the words suggest that *Andrôn Peiratôn* may originally have been *Andhra-bhṛityon*." On this it may be remarked, that though Ptolemy has no mention of pirates on the Konkan Coast this is not in the least sur-



prising, since his work is almost exclusively geographical, and whatever information on points of history we obtain from it is more from inference than direct statement. Further, I do not see why the expression *ἀνδρῶν Πειρατῶν* if taken to mean pirates should be called incorrect Greek, since in later Attic it was quite a common usage to join *ἀνὴρ* with titles, professions and the like.

M a n d a g a r a:—This may be a transliteration, somewhat inexact, of Madangarh (House of Love) the name of a fort about 12 miles inland from Bankūt. More likely the place is Māndlā on the north bank of the Sautri river, opposite Bankūt, and now known as Kolmāndlā, and Bāg and Bāgmāndlā. Mangalūr, to which as far as the name goes it might be referred, is too far south for the identification.

Byzantion:—The close correspondence of this name with that of the famous capital on the Bosphoros has led to the surmise that a colony of Greeks had established themselves on this coast for commercial purposes, notwithstanding the danger to be apprehended from attacks by the pirates in their neighbourhood. It appears however quite unlikely that Greeks should have formed a settlement where few, if any, of the advantages could be enjoyed which generally determined their choice of a locality in which to plant a colony. The name may perhaps be a transliteration of Vijayanta, now Vijayadurga, the south entrance of the Vāghotan river in Ratnagiri. The word means the Fort of Victory.

K h e r s o n ἔσος:—This seems to be the peninsula which is in the neighbourhood of Goa. It is



mentioned in the *Periplus* as one of the haunts of the pirates, and as being near the island of the Kaineitai, that is, St. George's Island.

Armagara:—This is placed near the mouth of the Nanagouna river, which may be taken to mean here the river on which Sadāśivagaṛḥ stands. The Nanagouna however must be identified with the Tāptī, whose embouchure is about 6° farther north. Its name is Sanskrit, meaning 'possessed of many virtues.' To account for this extraordinary dislocation, Yule supposes that Ptolemy, having got from his Indian lists a river Nānāguna rising in the Vindhya, assigns to it three discharges into the sea by what he took for so many delta branches, which he calls respectively Goaris, Benda, and Nanaguna. This, he adds, looked possible to Ptolemy on his map, with its excessive distortion of the western coast, and his entire displacement of the Western Ghāts. Mr. Campbell suggests that Ptolemy may have mistaken the Nānā Pass for a river.

Nitra is the most southern of the pirate ports, and is mentioned by Pliny in a passage where he remarks that ships frequenting the great emporium of Mouziris ran the risk of being attacked by pirates who infested the neighbourhood, and possessed a place called Nitra. Yule refers it as has been already stated to Mangalur.

8. Limyriké.

Tyndis, a city	116°	14° 30'
Bramagara	116° 45'	14° 20'
Kalaikarias	116° 40'	14°
Mouziris, an emporium	117°	14°



CSL

Mouth of the River Pseudos-

tomos	117° 20'	14°
Podoperoura	117° 40'	14° 15'
Semnê	118°	14° 20'
Koreoura	118° 40'	14° 20'
Bakarei	119° 30'	14° 30'
Mouth of the River Baris...	120°	14° 20'

Limyrikê:—Lassen was unable to trace this name to any Indian source, but Caldwell has satisfactorily explained its origin. In the introduction to his *Dravidian Grammar* he states (page 14), that in the Indian segment of the Roman maps called the *Peutinger Tables* the portion of India to which this name is applied is called Damirike, and that we can scarcely err in identifying this name with the Tamil country, since Damirike evidently means *Damir-ikê*. In the map referred to there is moreover a district called Scytia Dymirice, and it appears to have been this word which by a mistake of Δ for Λ Ptolemy wrote Lymirike. The D, he adds, retains its place in the *Cosmography* of the Geographer of Ravenna, who repeatedly mentions Dimirica as one of the 3 divisions of India. Ptolemy and the author of the *Periplus* are at one in making Tyndis one of the first or most northern ports in Limyrikê. The latter gives its distance from Barygaza at 7,000 stadia, or nearly 12 degrees of latitude, if we reckon 600 stadia to the degree. Notwithstanding this authoritative indication, which makes Limyrikê begin somewhere near Kalikat (11° 15' N. lat.) its frontier has generally been placed nearly 3 degrees further north, Tyndis having



been located at Barcelôr. This error has been rectified by Yule, whose adherence to the data of the *Periplus* has been completely justified by the satisfactory identification of Mouziris (the southern rival in commercial prosperity of Barygaza) with Kranganur, instead of with Mangalur as previously accepted. The capital of Limyrikê was Karûr, on the Kāvêrî, where resided Kêrobothros, *i.e.*, Kêralaputra, the Chêra king.

Tyndis is described in the *Periplus* as a place of great note pertaining to the kingdom of Kêprobotras, and situate near the sea at a distance of 500 stadia from Mouziris. This distance north from Kranganur with which, as has been stated, Mouziris has been identified, brings us to Tanûr. "Tanûr itself," says Yule, "may be Tyndis; it was an ancient city, the seat of a principality, and in the beginning of the 16th century had still much shipping and trade. Perhaps, however, a more probable site is a few miles further north, Kaḍaluṇḍi, *i.e.* Kaḍal-tuṇḍi, 'the raised ground by the sea,' standing on an inlet 3 or 4 miles south of Bêpur. It is not now a port, but persons on the spot seem to think that it must formerly have been one, and in communication with the Backwater." He adds in a note supplied by Dr. Burnell, "The composition of *Kaḍal* and *Tuṇḍi* makes *Kaḍaluṇḍi* by Tamiḷ rules." The pepper country called Kottonarike was immediately adjacent to Tyndis, which no doubt exported great quantities of that spice.

Bramagara is placed in the table half a degree to the east of Tyndis, *i.e.*, really to the south of it, since Ptolemy makes the Malabar



Coast run east instead of south. The name may be a transliteration of the Sanskrit *Brahmágdra*, which means 'the abode of the Bráhmans.' The Bráhmans of the south of India appear in those days to have consisted of a number of isolated communities that were settled in separate parts of the country, and that were independent each of the other. This, as Lassen remarks (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 193) is in harmony with the tradition according to which the Árya Bráhmans were represented as having been settled by Paraśurâma in 61 villages, and as having at first lived under a republican constitution. In section 74 Ptolemy mentions a town called Bráhmê belonging to the Bráhmanoi Magoi, *i.e.*, 'sons of the Bráhmans.'

Kalaikarias:—The last half of this word (*Karias*) is doubtless the Tamil word for "coast," *karei*, which appears also in another of Ptolemy's names, *Peringkarei*, mentioned as one of the inland towns *Kandionoi* (sec. 89). I find in Arrowsmith's large Map of India a place called 'Chalacoory' to the N. E. of *Kranganur*, and at about the same distance from it as our author makes *Kalaikarias* distant from *Mouziris*.

Mouziris may unhesitatingly be taken to represent the *Muyiri* of *Muyiri-Koḍu*, which says Yule, appears in one of the most ancient of Malabar inscriptions as the residence of the King of *Koḍangalur* or *Kranganur*, and is admitted to be practically identical with that now extinct city. It is to *Kranganur* he adds that all the Malabar traditions point as their oldest seaport of renown; to the Christians it was the landing-place of St. Thomas the Apostle.



Mouth of the river *Pseudostomos*, or 'false-mouth.' According to the table the river enters the sea at the distance of $\frac{1}{2}$ of a degree below Mouziris. It must have been one of the streams that discharge into the Backwater.

Podoperoura must be the Poudopatana of Indikopleustês—a word which means 'new town,' and is a more correct form than Ptolemy's *Podoperoura*.

Semnê:—The Sanskrit name for Buddhist Ascetics was *Śramana*, in Tamil *Samana*, and as we find that this is rendered as *Semnoi* by Clemens Alexandrinus, we may infer that *Semnê* was a town inhabited by Buddhists, having perhaps a Buddhist temple of noted sanctity. For a different explanation see Lassen's *Ind. Alt.* vol. III, p. 194.

Bakarei is mentioned by Pliny as *Becare*, and as *Bakarê* by the Author of the *Periplus*, who places it at the mouth of the river on which, at a distance of 120 stadia from the sea, was situated the great mart called *Nelkynda*, or *Melkynda* as Ptolemy writes it. The river is described as difficult of navigation on account of shallows and sunken reefs, so that ships despatched from *Nelkynda* were obliged to sail down empty to *Bakarê* and there take in their cargoes. The distance of *Nelkynda* from *Mouziris* is given at about 500 stadia, and this whether the journey was made by sea or by river or by land. Upon this Yule thus remarks: "At this distance south from *Kranganur* we are not able to point to a quite satisfactory *Nelkynda*. The site which has been selected as the most probable is nearly 800



stadia south of Mouziris. This is Kallāḍa, on a river of the same name entering the Backwater, the only navigable river on this south-west coast except the Perri-ār near Kranganur. The Kallāḍa river is believed to be the *Kanēṭṭi* mentioned in the Kēralotatti legendary history of Malabar, and the town of Kallāḍa to be the town of *Kanēṭṭi*. It is now a great entrepôt of Travankor pepper, which is sent from this to ports on the coast for shipment. That Nelkynda cannot have been far from this is clear from the vicinity of the *Ἰνρρόν ὄρος* or *Red-Hill* of the *Periplūs* (sec. 58). There can be little doubt that this is the bar of red laterite which, a short distance south of Quilon, cuts short the Backwater navigation, and is thence called the Warkallē barrier. It forms abrupt cliffs on the sea, without beach, and these cliffs are still known to seamen as the *Red Cliffs*. This is the only thing like a sea cliff from Mount d'Ely to Cape Comorin." The word *Bakarei* may represent the Sanskrit *dvāraka*, 'a door.'

Mouth of the river *Baris*:—The *Baris* must be a stream that enters the Backwater in the neighbourhood of Quilon.

9. Country of the *Aïoi*.

Melkynda	120° 20'	14° 20'
Elangkôn (or Elangkôr), a mart	120° 40'	14°
Kottiara, the metropolis	121°	14°
Bammala	121° 20'	14° 15'
Komaria, a cape and town ...	121° 45'	13° 30'



Limiriké and country of the Aïoi.

The Aïoi:—This people occupied the southern parts of Travankor. Their name is perhaps a transliteration of the Sanskrit *ahi*, 'a snake,' and if so, this would indicate the prevalence among them of serpent worship. Cunningham, in his *Geography of Ancient India* (p. 552), states that in the Chino-Japanese Map of India the alternative name of Malyakûṭa is Hai-an-men, which suggests a connection with Ptolemy's Aïoi. I note that the entrance to the Backwater at Kalikoulan is called the Great Ayibicca Bar, and an entrance farther south the Little Ayibicca Bar. The first part of this name may also be similarly connected.

Melkynda, as already stated is the Nelkynda of the *Periplus*, which places it, however, in Limyriké. Pliny speaks of it as *portus gentis Neacyndon* (v. II. Neacrindon, Neachyndon, Nelcyndon.) The name, according to Caldwell, probably means West Kynda, that is Kannetri, the south boundary of Kêrala Proper. When Mangalur was taken as the representative of Mouziris, Nelkynda was generally identified with Nelisuram, which besides the partial resemblance of its name, answered closely in other respects to the description of Nelkynda in the *Periplus*—Cf. C. Müller, *not. ad Periplus*, Sec. 54. Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 190. Bunbury, *Hist. of Anc. Geog.* vol. I, pp. 467-8.

Elangkôn or Elangkôr is now Quilon, otherwise written Kulam.

"Kottiarâ," says Caldwell, "is the name of a place in the country of the Aïoi of Ptolemy in the Paralia of the Author of the *Periplus*, identical



in part with South Travankor. Apparently it is the Cottara of Pliny, and I have no doubt it is the Cottara of the *Peutingar Tables*. It is called by Ptolemy the Metropolis, and must have been a place of considerable importance. The town referred to is probably Kôttâra, or as it is ordinarily written by Europeans 'Kotaur,' the principal town in South Travankor, and now as in the time of the Greeks distinguished for its commerce." *Dravid. Gram.*, Introd. p. 98. The name is derived from *kôḍ* 'a foot,' and *âr-û* 'a river.'

Bammala:—Mannert would identify this with Bulita, a place a little to the north of Anjenga, but this is too far north. It may perhaps be the Balita of the *Periplûs*.

Komaria, a cape and a town:—We have no difficulty in recognizing here Cape Comorin, which is called in the *Periplûs* Komar and Komarei. The name is derived from the Sanskrit *kumâri*, 'a virgin,' one of the names of the Goddess Dûrgâ who presided over the place, which was one of peculiar sanctity. The Author of the *Periplûs* has made the mistake of extending the Peninsula southward beyond Comorin.

We may here compare Ptolemy's enumeration of places on the west coast with that of the *Periplûs* from Barygaza to Cape Comorin.

<i>Ptolemy.</i>	<i>Periplûs.</i>
Barygaza	Barygaza
Nousaripa	Akabarou
Poulipoula	
Soupara	Souppara
Dounga	Kalliena



<i>Ptolemy.</i>	<i>Periplûs.</i>
Simylla	Semylla
Island of Milizêgyris	Mandagora
Hippokoura	
Baltipatna	Palaipatnai
Mandagora	Melizeigara
Is. of Heptanésia	
Byzanteion	Byzantion
	Toparon
	Tyrannosboas
	3 separate groups of islands
Khersonésos	Khersonésos
Armagara	Is. of Leukê
Is. of Peperine	
Nitra	Naoura
Tyndis	Tyndis
Trinésia Islands	
Bramagara	
Kalaikarias	
Mouziris	Mouziris
Podoperoura	
Semnê	
Is. Leukê	
Koreoura	
Melkynda	Nelkynda
Bakarei	Bakarê
Elangkôn	Mons Pyrrhos
Kottiara	
Bammola	Balita
Komaria	Komar.

There is a striking agreement between the two lists, especially with respect to the order in



which the places enumerated succeed each other. There are but three exceptions to the coincidence and these are unimportant. They are, Milizegyris, Mandagora and the Island Leuké, i.e. 'white island,' if the name be Greek. The Melizeigara of the *Periplús*, Vincent identifies with Jayagadh or Sidi, perhaps the Sigerus of Pliny (lib. VI, c. xxvi, 100). Ptolemy makes Milizégyris to be an island about 20 miles south of Simylla. There is one important place which he has failed to notice, Kalliena now Kalyána, a well-known town not far from Bombay.

10. Country of the Kareoi.

In the Kolkhic Gulf, where there is the Pearl Fishery :—

Sósikourai	122°	14° 30'
Kolkhoi, an emporium	123°	15°
Mouth of the river Sólén.....	124°	14° 40'

The country of the Kareoi corresponds to South Tinneveli. The word *kareí*, as already stated is Tamil, and means 'coast.' The Kolkhic Gulf is now known as the Gulf of Manár. The pearl fishery is noticed in the *Periplús*.

Sósikourai:—By the change of S into T we find the modern representative of this place to be Tutikorin (Tuttukuḍi) a harbour in Tinneveli, where there are pearl banks, about 10 miles south of Kolkhoi. This mart lay on the Sólén or Tâmrapanî river. Tutikorin in the *Peutinger Tables* is called *Colcis Indorum*. The Tamil name is Kolkei, almost the same as the Greek. Yule in his work on Marco Polo (vol. II, pp. 360-61) gives the following account of this



place, based on information supplied by Dr. Caldwell :—

“Kolkhoi, described by Ptolemy and the Author of the *Periplus* as an emporium of the pearl trade, as situated on the sea-coast to the east of Cape Comorin, and as giving its name to the Kolkhic Gulf or Gulf of Manâr has been identified with Korkai, the mother-city of Kayal (the Coel of Marco Polo). Korkai, properly Kolkai (the *l* being changed into *r* by a modern refinement, it is still called Kolka in Malayalam), holds an important place in Tamil traditions, being regarded as the birth-place of the Pândya dynasty, the place where the princes of that race ruled previously to their removal to Madurâ. One of the titles of the Pândya kings is ‘Ruler of Korkai.’ Korkai is situated two or three miles inland from Kayal, higher up the river. It is not marked in the G. Trig. Surv. map, but a village in the immediate neighbourhood of it, called Mâramangalam ‘the good fortune of the Pândyas’ will be found in the map. This place, together with several others in the neighbourhood, on both sides of the river, is proved by inscriptions and relics to have been formerly included in Korkai, and the whole intervening space between Korkai and Kayal exhibits traces of ancient dwellings. The people of Kayal maintain that their city was originally so large as to include Korkai, but there is much more probability in the tradition of the people of Korkai, which is to the effect that Korkai itself was originally a sea-port; that as the sea retired it became less and less suitable for trade, that Kayal rose as Korkai



fell, and that at length, as the sea continued to retire, Kayal also was abandoned. They add that the trade for which the place was famous in ancient times was the trade in pearls."

Mouth of the River Sôlên :—This river is identified by Lassen with the Sylaur, which he says is the largest northern tributary of the Tâmrarnî. On this identification Yule remarks :— "The 'Syllâr' of the maps, which Lassen identifies with Sôlên, originates, as Dr. Caldwell tells me, in a mistake. The true name is 'Sitt-âr,' 'Little River,' and it is insignificant." The Tâmrarnî is the chief river of Tinneveli. It entered the sea south of Kolkhoi. In Tamiḷ poetry it is called Porumei. Its Pâli form is Tambapanni. How it came to be called the Sôlên remains as yet unexplained. *Sôla* is an element in several South Indian geographical names, meaning Chôla. The word Tâmrarnî itself means 'red-leaved' or 'copper-coloured sand.' Taprobane, the classical name for Ceylon, is this word in an altered form.

11. Land of P a n d i o n .

In the Orgalic Gulf, Cape

Kôry, called also Kalligikon..	125° 40'	12° 20'
Argeirou, a town	125° 15'	14° 30'
Salour, a mart	125° 20'	15° 30'

The land of P a n d i o n included the greater portion of the Province of Tinneveli, and extended as far north as to the highlands in the neighbourhood of the Koimbatour gap. Its western boundary was formed by the southern range of the Ghâts, called by Ptolemy Mount Bêtigô, and it had a sea-board on the east, which extended for some



distance along the Sinus Orgalicus, or what is now called Palk's Passage.

The Author of the *Periplús* however, assigns it wider limits, as he mentions that Nelkynda, which lay on the Malabar Coast, as well as the pearl-fishery at Kolkhoi, both belonged to the Kingdom of Pandion. The kingdom was so called from the heroic family of the Pândya, which obtained sovereign power in many different parts of India. The Capital, called Madurâ, both by Pliny and by our author, was situated in the interior. Madurâ is but the Tamil manner of pronouncing the Sanskrit *Mathurâ*, which also designated the sacred city on the Jamnâ famous as the birthplace and the scene of the exploits of Krishna, who assisted the Pândus in their war with the Kurus. The city to this day retains its ancient name, and thus bears, so to speak, living testimony to the fact that the Âryans of Northern India had in early times under Pândya leaders established their power in the most southern parts of the Peninsula.

The Orgalic Gulf lay beyond the Kolkhic Gulf, from which it was separated by the Island of Râmêsvaram and the string of shoals and small islands which almost connect Ceylon with the mainland. It derived its name from Argalou, a place mentioned in the *Periplús* as lying inland and celebrated for a manufacture of muslin adorned with small pearls. The northern termination of the gulf was formed by Cape Kalimîr.

Cape Kôry:—Ptolemy makes Kôry and Kalligikon to be one and the same cape. They are



however distinct, Kôry being the headland which bounded the Orgalic Gulf on the south, and Kalligikon being Point Kalimîr, which bounded it on the north. The curvature of this Gulf was called by the Hindûs Râmadhanuḥ, or '*Râma's bow*,' and each end of the bow Dhanuḥ-kôṭi or simply Kôṭi. The Sanskrit word *kôṭi* (which means '*end, tip or corner*') becomes in Tamiḻ *kôṭi*, and this naturally takes the form of Kôṭi or Kôry. The southern Kôṭi, which was very famous in Indian story, was formed by the long spit of land in which the Island of Râmêsvaram terminates. It is remarkable, as Caldwell remarks, that the Portuguese, without knowing anything of the *Kôpu* of the Greeks, called the same spit of land Cape Ramancoru. Ptolemy's identification of Cape Kôry with Kalligikon or Point Kalimîr is readily explained by the fact just stated that each of these projections was called Kôṭi.

This word Kôṭi takes another form in Greek and Latin besides that of Kôry, viz., Kôlis, the name by which Pomponius Mela and Dionysios Periêgêtês (v. 1148) designate Southern India. The promontory is called Coliacum by Pliny, who describes it as the projection of India nearest Ceylon, from which it was separated by a narrow coral sea. Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 14) quoting Onêsikritos, speaks of Taprobane as distant from the most southern parts of India, which are opposite the Kôniakoi, 7 days' sail towards the south. For Kôniakoi the reading Kôliakoi has been with reason suggested.

Ptolemy, like the author of the *Periplus* and other writers, regarded Cape Kôry as the most



important projection of India towards the south, and as a well-established point from which the distances of other places might conveniently be calculated. He placed it in 125 degrees of E. longitude from Ferro, and at 120 degrees east of the mouth of the River Batis in Spain from which, however, its distance is only $86\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. Its latitude is $9^{\circ} 20'$ N. and that of Cape Comorin $8^{\circ} 5'$, but Ptolemy makes the difference in latitude to be only $10'$.

The identity of Kalligikon with Point Kalimr has already been pointed out. *Calimere* is a corrupt form of the Tamil compound Kallimeḍu, *Euphorbia eminence*, and so the first part of the Greek name exactly coincides with the Tamil Kalli, which means the *Euphorbia* plant, or perhaps a kind of cactus. Pliny mentions a projection on the side of India we are now considering which he calls Calingon, and which the similarity of name has led some to identify with Kalligikon, and therefore with Point Kalimr. It seems better, however, taking into account other considerations which we need not here specify, to identify this projection with Point Gôdâvari.

Before concluding this notice we may point out how Ptolemy has represented the general configuration of the eastern coast beyond the Orgalic Gulf. His views here are almost as erroneous as those he entertained concerning the west coast, which, it will be remembered, he did not carry southward to Cape Comorin, but made to terminate at the point of Simylla, thus effacing from the Map of India the whole of the Peninsula.



The actual direction of the east coast from point Kalimîr is first due north as far as the mouths of the Krishnâ, and thereafter north-east up to the very head of the Bay of Bengal. Ptolemy, however, makes this coast run first towards the south-east, and this for a distance of upwards of 600 miles as far as Paloura, a place of which the site has been fixed with certainty as lying near the southern border of Katak, about 5 or 6 miles above Ganjâm. Ptolemy places it at the extremity of a vast peninsula, having for one of its sides the long stretch of coast just mentioned, and he regards it also as marking the point from which the Gangetic Gulf begins. The coast of this gulf is made to run at first with an inclination to westward, so that it forms at its outlet the other side of the peninsula. Its curvature is then to the north-east, as far as to the most eastern mouth of the Ganges, and thence its direction is to the south-east till it terminates at the cape near Têmala, now called Cape Negrais, the south-west projection of Pegu.

12. Country of the Batoi.

Nikama, the Metropolis	126°	16°
Thelkheir	127°	16° 10'
Kouroula, a town	128°	16°

13. In Paralia specially so called: the country of the Têringoi.

Mouth of the River Khabêros	129°	15° 15'
Khabêris, an emporium	128° 30'	15° 40'
Sabouras, an emporium	130°	14° 30'

The Batoi occupied the district extending from the neighbourhood of Point Kâlumîr to the



southern mouth of the River Kāvêri and corresponding roughly with the Province of Tanjore.

Nikama, the capital, has been identified with Nagapatam (Nāgapattanam) by Yule, who also identifies (but doubtingly) Thelkyr with Nagor and Kouroula with Karikal.

Paralia, as a Greek word, designated generally any maritime district, but as applied in India it designated exclusively (*ιδίως*) the seaboard of the Tōringoi. Our author is here at variance with the *Periplūs*, which has a Paralia extending from the Red Cliffs near Quilon to the Pearl-Fishery at the Kolkhoi, and comprising therefrom the coast-lines of the Aïoi and the Kareoi. "This Paralia," says Yule, "is no doubt Purali, an old name of Travankor, from which the Rāja has a title *Puralisān*, 'Lord of Purali.' But the "instinctive striving after meaning" which so often modifies the form of words, converted this into the Greek *Παραλία*, 'the coast.' Dr. Caldwell however inclines rather to think that *Paralia* may possibly have corresponded to the native word meaning *coast*, viz. *kareoi*.

In sec. 91, where Ptolemy gives the list of the inland towns of the Tōringoi, he calls them the Sôrêtai, mentioning that their capital was Orthoura, where the king, whose name was Sôrnagos, resided. In sec. 68 again he mentions the Sôrai as a race of nomads whose capital was Sôra where their king, called Arkatos, resided. Caldwell has pointed out the identity of the different names used to designate this people. Σôρα, he says, "which we meet alone and in various combinations in these (Ptolemy's) notices represents the



name of the northern portion of the Tamilian nation. This name is Chôla in Sanskrit, Chôla in Telugu, but in Tamiḷ Sôra or Chôra. The accuracy with regard to the name of the people is remarkable, for in Tamiḷ they appear not only as Sôras, but also as Sôragas and Sôriyas, and even as Sôringas. Their country also is called Sôragam. The *r* of the Tamiḷ word Sôra is a peculiar sound not contained in Telugu, in which it is generally represented by *ḍ* or *ḷ*. The transliteration of this letter as *r* seems to show that then, as now, the use of this peculiar *r* was a dialectic peculiarity of Tamiḷ."

The River *Khabêros* is the *Kâvêri*. *Kâvéra* is the Sanskrit word for *saffron*. *Kâvêri*, according to a legend in the *Harivaṅśa*, was changed by her father's curse from one-half of the *Gaṅgâ* into the river which bears her name, and which was therefore also called *Ardha-gaṅgâ*, *i.e.*: half-gaṅgâ. *Karoura*, the residence of the Chera king, was upon this river.

Dr. Burnell identified *Khabêris* with *Kâvéripattam* (*Ind. Ant.*, vol. VII, p. 40) which lies a little to the north of Tranquebar (Talangambadi) at the mouth of the *Pudu-Kâvêri* (New *Kâvêri*).

Sabouras.—This mart Yule refers doubtfully to *Gudalur* (Cuddalore) near the mouth of the *S. Penn-âr River*.

14. The *Arouarnoi* (Arvarnoi).

<i>Pôdoukê</i> , an emporium	130° 15'	14° 30'
<i>Melangê</i> , an emporium.....	131°	14° 20'
Mouth of the River <i>Tyna</i>	131° 40'	12° 45'



Kottis	132° 20'	12° 16'
Manarpha (or Manaliarpha, a mart)	133° 10'	12°
15. Maisôlia.		
Mouth of the River Maisôlos	134°	11° 40'
Kontakossyla, a mart	134° 30'	11° 40'
Koddoura	135°	11° 30'
Allosygnê, a mart	135° 40'	11° 20'
The point of departure (<i>aphe- térion</i>) for ships bound for Khrysê	136° 20'	—11°

The territory of the Arouarnoi (Arvarnoi) was permeated by the River Tyna, and extended northward to Maisôlia, the region watered by the River Maisôlos in the lower parts of its course. Opinions differ with regard to the identification of these two rivers, and consequently also of the places mentioned in connection with them. Some of the older commentators, followed by Yule, take the Tyna to be the Pinâka or Penn-âr River, and the Maisôlos the Kṛishṇâ. Lassen again, and recent writers generally, identify the Tyna with the Kṛishṇâ and the Maisôlos with the Gôdâvari. To the former theory there is the objection that if the Gôdâvari be not the Maisôlos, that most important of all the rivers on this coast is left unnoticed, and Lassen accordingly asks why should the small Penn-âr appear and the great Gôdâvari be omitted. To this Yule rejoins, "We cannot say why; but it is a curious fact that in many maps of the 16th and 17th and even of the 18th century the Gôdâvari continues to be omitted altogether. A beautiful



map in Valentijn (vol. V), shows Gôdâvarî only as a river of small moment, under a local name." He argues further that the name Tynna if applied to the Kṛishnâ is unaccounted for. As identified with the Penn-âr or Pinâka, TYNNA is an easy error for IYNNNA.

Pôdônkê:—This mart is mentioned in the *Periplus* along with Kamara and Sôpatma as ports to which merchants from Limyrikê and the north were wont to resort. According to Böhlen, Ritter and Benfey, it is Paduchehêri (Pondicherry). Lassen and Yule agree, however, in placing it at Pulikât, which is nearly two degrees further north.

In Yule's map Melangê is placed at Krishnapatam, a little to the south of the North Penn-âr River, which as we have seen, he identifies with the Tyna. Its name closely approximates to that of the capital Malanga, and hence Cunningham, who takes the Maisôlos to be the Gôdâvarî, and who locates Malanga in the neighbourhood of Elâr, identifies Melangê with Bandar Malanka (near one of the Gôdâvarî mouths) which he assumes to have been so called from its being the port (*bandar*) with which the capital that lay in the interior communicated with the sea. See *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 539-40.

Manarpha (or Manaliarpha):—This mart lay at the mouth of a river which still preserves traces of its name, being called the Manâra. Kottis lay not very far to the north of it.

Maisôlia is the name of the coast between the Kṛishnâ and the Gôdâvarî, and onward thence to the neighbourhood of Paloura. It is the Masalia



of the *Periplus* which describes it as the sea-board of a country extending far inland, and noted for the manufacture, in immense quantities, of the finer kinds of cotton fabrics. The name is preserved in Masulipattam, which has been corrupted for the sake of a meaning into Machhlipatam, which means *fish-town*. The Metropolis called Pityn̄dra was seated in the interior.

Kontakossyla transliterates, though not quite correctly, the Sanskrit Kan̄takasthala, '*place of thorns*.' In Yule's map it is placed inland near the Kṛishnā, in the neighbourhood of Konḍapalle, in which its name seems to be partly preserved.

Koddoura has been identified with Gūdrū, a town near Masulipatam.

Allo sygn̄é may perhaps be now represented by Koringa (Koranja) a port situated a little beyond Point Gôdāvari. Its distance from the point next mentioned in the Tables may be roughly estimated at about 230 miles, but Ptolemy makes it to be only $\frac{1}{3}$ of a degree, and thus leaves undescribed an extensive section of the coast comprising the greater part of the sea-board of the Kalingai. A clue to the explanation of this error and omission is supplied by a passage in the *Periplus*, which runs to the effect that ships proceeding beyond Maisôlia stood out from the shore and sailing right across a bay made a direct passage to the ports of Dêsarênê, i.e. Orissa. It may hence be inferred that navigators who came from a distance to trade in those seas would know little or nothing of a coast which they were



careful to avoid, and that Ptolemy in consequence was not even so much as aware of its existence.

The point whence ships took their departure for Khryse Yule places at the mouth of a little river called the Baroua (the Puacotta of Lindschoten) lying under Mt. Mahendra in lat. $18^{\circ} 54'$ N. This *aphetérion*, he points out, was not a harbour as Lassen supposed, from which voyages to Khryse were made, but the point of departure from which vessels bound thither struck off from the coast of India, while those bound for the marts of the Ganges renewed their coasting. The course of navigation here described continued to be followed till modern times, as Yule shows by a quotation from Valentijn's book on the Dutch East Indies (1727) under a notice of Bimlipatam :—"In the beginning of February, there used to ply . . . to Pegu, a little ship with such goods as were in demand, and which were taken on board at Masulipatam. . . . From that place it used to run along the coast up to 13° N. Lat., and then crossed sea-wards, so as to hit the land on the other side about 16° , and then, on an offshore wind, sailed very easily to the Peguan River of Syriang." (Syriam below Rangun).

16. In the Gangetic Gulf.

Paloura or Pakoura, a town.	$136^{\circ} 40'$	$11^{\circ} 20'$
Nanigaina	$136^{\circ} 20'$	12°
Katikardama.....	$136^{\circ} 20'$	$12^{\circ} 40'$
Kannagara	$136^{\circ} 30'$	$13^{\circ} 30'$
Mouth of the River Manada.	137°	14°
Kottobara	$137^{\circ} 15'$	$14^{\circ} 40'$



Sippara	137° 40'	15° 30'
Mouth of the River Tyndis...	138° 30'	16°
17. Mapoura	139°	16° 30'
Minagara	140°	17° 15'
Mouth of the Dôsarôn.....	141°	17° 40'
Kôkala	142°	18°
Mouth of the River Adamas	142° 40'	18°
Kôsamba or Kôsaba	143° 30'	18° 15'

Paloura :—Ptolemy, as we have seen, placed this town at the extremity of a great peninsula projecting to the south-east, which had no existence however, except in his own imagination. The following passage, quoted by Yule from Lindschoten, shows that the name of Paloura survived till modern times, and indicates at the same time where its site is to be looked for :—
“ From the river of Puacota to another called Paluor or Palura, a distance of 12 leagues, you run along the coast with a course from S. W. to E. Above this last river is a high mountain called Serra de Palura, the highest mountain on the coast. This river is in $19\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$.” The Palura River must be the river of Ganjâm, the latitude of which is at its mouth $19^{\circ} 23'$. Ptolemy fixes at Paloura the beginning of the Gangetic Gulf.

Nanigaina may perhaps be placed at Purî, famous for the temple of Jagannâtha Katikardama.

The first part of the name points to the identification of this place with Katak, the capital of Orissa.

Kannagara :—There can be little doubt that we have here the Kanarak of modern times, called also the Black Pagoda.



Mouth of the Manada:—Ptolemy enumerates four rivers which enter the Gulf between Kannagara and the western mouth of the Ganges, the Manada, the Tyndis, the Dôsarôn and the Adamas. These would seem to be identical respectively with the four great rivers belonging to this part of the coast which succeed each other in the following order:—The Mahânadî, the Brâhmaṇî, the Vaitaraṇî and the Suvarṇarêkhâ, and this is the mode of identification which Lassen has adopted. With regard to the Manada there can be no doubt that it is the Mahânadî, the great river of Orissa at the bifurcation of which Katak the capital is situated. The name is a Sanskrit compound, meaning 'great river.' Yule differs from Lassen with regard to the other identifications, making the Tyndis one of the branches of the Mahânadî, the Dôsarôn,—the Brâhmaṇî, the Adamas,—the Vaitaraṇî, and the Kambyson (which is Ptolemy's western mouth of the Ganges)—the Suvarṇarêkhâ.

The Dôsarôn is the river of the region inhabited by the Daśârnas, a people mentioned in the *Vishnu Purâna* as belonging to the south-east of Madhya-dêsa in juxta-position to the Sabaras, or Suars. The word is supposed to be from *daśan* 'ten,' and *ṛiṇa* 'a fort,' and so to mean 'the ten forts.'

Adamas is a Greek word meaning *diamond*. The true Adamas, Yule observes, was in all probability the Sank branch of the Brâhmaṇî, from which diamonds were got in the days of Mogul splendour.

Sippara:—The name is taken by Yule as



representing the Sanskrit *Śārpāraka*. *Pāra* in Sanskrit means 'the further shore or opposite bank of a river.'

Minagara:—The same authority identifies this with Jajhpūr. In Arrowsmith's map I find, however, a small place marked, having a name almost identical with the Greek, Mungrapūr, situated at some distance from Jajhpūr and nearer the sea.

Kōsamba is placed by Yule at Balasôr, but by Lassen at the mouth of the Subanrêkhâ which, as we have seen, he identifies with the Adamas. There was a famous city of the same name, Kausâmbî, in the north-west of India, on the River Jamnâ, which became the Pâṇḍû capital after Hastinâpura had been swept away by the Ganges, and which was noted as the shrine of the most sacred of all the statues of Buddha. It is mentioned in the *Râmâyana*, the *Mahāvânṣa*, and the *Mêghadûta* of Kâlidâsa. It may thus be reasonably concluded that the Kōsamba of Ptolemy was a seat of Buddhism established by propagandists of that faith who came from Kausâmbî.

18. Mouths of the Ganges.

The Kambyson mouth, the		
most western	144° 30'	18° 15'
Poloura, a town	145°	18° 30'
The second mouth, called		
Mega	145° 45'	18° 30'
The third called Kambêri-		
khon	146° 30'	18° 40'
Tilogrammon, a town	147° 20'	18°



The fourth mouth, Pseudostomon147° 40' 18° 30'
The fifth mouth, Antibolè ...148° 30' 18° 15'

Ptolemy appears to have been the first writer who gave to the western world any definite information concerning that part of the Bengal Coast which receives the waters of the Ganges. His predecessors had indeed excelled him in the fullness and accuracy with which they had described the general course of the river, but they did not know, except in the very vaguest way, either where or how it entered the sea. Strabo, for instance, was not even aware that it had more than a single mouth. Ptolemy, on the other hand, mentions by name five of its mouths, and his estimate of the distance between the most western and the most eastern of these (4 degrees of latitude) is not very wide of the mark. Some traces also of his nomenclature are still to be found. It is difficult, however, to identify the mouths he has named with those now existing, as the Ganges, like the Indus, has shifted some of its channels, and otherwise altered the hydrography of its delta. Opinions differ regarding the western mouth, called the Kambysion. One would naturally take it to be the Hughli river, on which Calcutta stands, and V. de Saint-Martin accordingly adopts this identification. It is impossible to doubt, he says, that the Kambysum is the Hughli river, which must have been at all times one of the principal outlets, as is proved historically by the mention of Tâmrāiptâ, 600 years before our æra, as one of the most frequented ports of Eastern India. It would be possible enough, he continues, that



below Diamond Point, the principal channel, instead of passing as now in front of Kalpi re-mounted to the west in front of Tamluk (the ancient Tāmraliptā) by the mouth of Tingorcally, and came thus to touch at a locality of which the actual name Nungabusan recalls that of Kambysum or Kambusum. Wilford and Yule, on the other hand, agree in identifying the Kambyson with the Subanrêkhâ river, which was formerly but erroneously supposed to be a branch of the Ganges, and they are thus free to take the Hughli river as representing the second mouth called by Ptolemy the Mega, the Greek word for 'great.' Saint-Martin identifies this estuary with the River Matlâ to which in recent years an attempt was made to divert the commerce of Calcutta, in consequence of the dangers attending the navigation of the Hughli. With regard to the Kambêrikhon, or third mouth, there is no difference of opinion. "It answers," says Saint-Martin, "to the Barabaingâ, a still important estuary, which receives the river of Kobbadak (or rather Kobbarak), which traverses the whole extent of the delta. The *Kshêtra Samdasa*, a modern treatise of Sanskrit Geography, which Wilford has often quoted in his Memoir on the Ancient Geography of the Gangetic basin, calls this river Koumâraka. Here the Kambêrikhon of the Greek navigators is easily recognized." The fourth mouth was called Pseudostomon, that is, 'false mouth,' because it lay concealed behind numerous islands, and was often mistaken for the easternmost mouth of the Ganges. This Ptolemy calls Antibolê, a name which has not yet been explained. It



is the Dhakka or old Ganges river, and seems to have been the limit of India and the point from which measurements and distances relating to countries in India were frequently made.

In connexion with the river-mouths Ptolemy mentions two towns, Poloura and Tilogrammon. The former is placed in Yule's map at Jelasur, near the Subanrêkhâ, and the latter at Jesor. Its name seems to be compounded of the two Sanskrit words *tîla*, 'sesamum,' and *grâma*, 'a village or township.'

Ptolemy having thus described the whole sea-coast of India, from the mouths of the Indus to those of the Ganges, gives next a list of its mountain ranges, together with figures of Latitude and Longitude, showing the limits of the length of each range as well as the direction.

19. The mountains belonging to Intra-gangetic India are named as follows :—

The Apokopa, called *Poinai Theôn*, which extend from long. 116° to 124° and from lat. 23° at their western limit to 26° at the eastern.

20. Mount Sardônyx, in which is found the precious stone of the same name, and whose middle point is in long. 117° and lat. 21° .

21. Mount Ouindion (Vindion) which extends from 126° to 135° , and preserves from its western to its eastern limit a uniform latitude of 27° .

Ptolemy enumerates seven of these, probably following some native list framed in accordance with the native idea that seven principal mountains existed in each division of a continent. A



Paurāṇik list gives us the names of the seven which pertained to India, Mahēndra, Malaya, Sahya, Suktimat, Riksha, Vindhya and Pāripātra or Pāriyātra. This can hardly be the list which Ptolemy used, as only two of his names appear in it, Ouxenton (—) Riksha, and Ouindion (—) Vindhya. As his views of the configuration of India were so wide of the mark, his mountain ranges are of course hopelessly out of position, and the latitudes and longitudes assigned to them in the tables afford no clue to their identification. Some help however towards this, as Yule points out, lies in the river-sources ascribed to each, which were almost certainly copied from native lists, in which notices of that particular are often to be found.

The Apokopa, or 'punishment' of the 'gods':—There is a consensus of the authorities in referring the range thus named to the Aravali mountains. Mount Arbuda (Abu) which is by far the most conspicuous summit, is one of the sacred hills of India. It was mentioned by Megasthenes in a passage which has been preserved by Pliny (N.H. lib. VI, c. xxi) who calls it Mons Capitalia, i.e. the 'Mount of Capital Punishment,' a name which has an obvious relation to the by-name which Ptolemy gives it, 'the punishment of the gods.' The word *apokopa* is of Greek origin, and means primarily 'what has been cut off,' and is therefore used to denote 'a cleft,' 'a cliff,' 'a steep hill.' It occurs in the *Periplūs* (sec. 15) where it designates a range of precipitous hills running along the coast of Azania, i.e. of Ajan in Africa. Its Sanskrit equivalent may have been given as a name to Mount Arbuda because of its having



been at some time rent by an earthquake. In point of fact the *Mahābhārata* has preserved a tradition to the effect that a cleft (*chhidra*) had here been made in the earth. Such an alarming phenomenon as the cleaving of a mountain by an earthquake would naturally in superstitious times be ascribed to the anger of the gods, bent on punishing thereby some heinous crime. (See Lassen's *Ind. Alt.* vol. III, pp. 121-2).

Mount Sardōnyx is a short range, a branch of the Vindhya, now called Sātpura, lying between the Narmadā and the Tāptī: it is mentioned by Ktésias (frag. 8) under the name of Mount Sardous. It has mines of the carnelian stone, of which the sardian is a species. The *Periplus* (sec. 49) notices that onyx-stones were imported into Barygaza from the interior of the country, and that they were also among the articles which it exported.

Mount O u i n d i o n :—This is a correct transliteration of *Vindhya*, the native name of the extensive range which connects the northern extremities of the Western and Eastern Ghāts, and which separates Hindūstān proper—the Madhya-dēśa or middle region, regarded as the sacred land of the Hindūs—from the Dekhan. Ptolemy, as Lassen remarks (*Ind. Alt.* vol. III, p. 120), is the only geographer of classical antiquity in whose writings the indigenous name of this far-spread range is to be found. His Vindion however does not embrace the whole of the Vindhya system, but only the portion which lies to the west of the sources of the Sōṇ. Sanskrit writers speak of the Vindhyas as a family of mountains. They



extended from Baroda to Mirzapur, and were continued thence to Chunar.

22. Bêttingô, which extends from 123° to 130° , and whose western limit is in lat. 21° and its eastern in 20° .

23. Adeisathron, whose middle point is in long. 132° and in lat. 23° .

24. Ouxenton, which extends from 136° to 143° , and whose western limit is in lat. 22° and its eastern in 24° .

25. The Oroudian Mountains, which extend from 138° to 133° , and whose eastern limit is in 18° lat. and its western 16° .

Mount Bêttingô:—As the rivers which have their sources in this range—the Pseudostomos, the Baris, and the Sôlên or Tâmrarparñi, all belong to South Malabar, there can be no doubt that Bêttingô denotes the southern portion of the Western Ghâts extending from the Koimbatur gap to Cape Comorin—called Malaya in the Paurânik list already quoted. One of the summits of this range, famous in Indian mythology as the abode of the Rishi Agastya, bears the name in Tamiḷ of Podigei, or as it is pronounced Pothigei. It is visible from the mouth of the Tâmrarparñi, which has its sources in it, and from Kolkhoi, and the Greeks who visited those parts, and had the mountain pointed out to them would no doubt apply the name by which they heard it called to the whole range connected with it. (See Caldwell's *Dravid. Gram. Introd.* p. 101.)



Adeisathron:—If we take Ptolemy's figures as our guide here, we must identify this range with the chain of hills which Lassen describes in the following passage:—"Of the mountain system of the Dekhan Ptolemy had formed an erroneous conception, since he represented the chain of the Western Ghâts as protruded into the interior of the country, instead of lying near to the western coast with which it runs parallel, and he was misled thereby into shortening the courses of the rivers which rise in the Western Ghâts. The chain which he calls Adeisathron begins in the neighbourhood of Nâgpur and stretches southward to the east of the rivers Wain + Gaṅgâ and Pranîtâ, separates the Gôdâvarî from the Kṛishnâ, and comes to an end at the sources of the Kâvêrî. This view of his meaning is confirmed by the fact that he locates the two cities Baithana or Pratishphâna which lies to the east of the Western Ghâts, on the Gôdâvarî, and Tagara both to the west of Adeisathron. He was led into this misrepresentation partly through the incompleteness and insufficiency of the accounts which he used, and partly through the circumstance that the Eastern Ghâṭ does not consist of a single chain, but of several parallel chains, and that to the south of the sources of the Kâvêrî the Eastern Ghâṭ is connected with the Western Ghâṭ through the Nilgiri Mountains. The name Adeisathron, one sees, can only refer to the West Ghâṭ in which the Kâvêrî rises." (*Ind. Alt.* vol. III, pp. 162-3). Yule explains the source of Ptolemy's error thus: "No doubt his Indian lists showed him Kâvêrî rising in Sahyâdri (as does Wilford's list from the



Brahmaṇḍa Pūrāṇa. As. Res. vol. VIII, p. 335f.) He had no real clue to the locality of the Sahyādri, but found what he took for the same name (*Adisathra*) applied to a city in the heart of India, and there he located the range." Adeisathron must therefore be taken to denote properly that section of the Western Ghāṭs which is immediately to the north of the Koimbatour gap, as it is there the Kāvéri rises. The origin of the name Adeisathron will be afterwards pointed out.

Ouxenton designates the Eastern continuation of the Vindhya. All the authorities are at one in referring it to the mountainous regions south of the Sôn, included in Chhuttia Nāgpur, Rāngarh, Sirgujā, &c. Ptolemy places its western extremity at the distance of one degree from the eastern extremity of the Vindhya. The rivers which have their sources in the range are the Tyndis, the Dōsarōn, the Adamas and an unnamed tributary of the Ganges. The name itself represents the Sanskrit Rikshavant, which however did not designate the Eastern Vindhya, but a large district of the central. This difference in the application of the names need not invalidate the supposition of their identity. The authors whom Ptolemy consulted may have misled him by some inaccuracy in their statements, or the Hindūs themselves may have intended the name of Rikshavant to include localities further eastward than those which it primarily denoted. *Riksha* means 'a bear,' and is no doubt connected with the Greek word of the same meaning, *arktos*.

The Oroudiān Mountains:—"This we take,"



says Yule, "to be the Vaidūrya just mentioned, as the northern section of the Western Ghāts, though Ptolemy has entirely misconceived its position. We conceive that he found in the Indian lists that the great rivers of the eastern or Maesolian Coast rose in the Vaidūrya, and having no other clue he places the Orādia (which seems to be a mere metathesis of Odūrya for Vaidūrya) near and parallel to that coast. Hence Lassen and others (all, as far as is known) identify these Oroudian Mountains with those that actually exist above Kalinga. This corresponds better, no doubt, with the position which Ptolemy has assigned. But it is not our business to map Ptolemy's errors; he has done that for himself; we have to show the real meaning and application of the names which he used, whatever false views he may have had about them."

26. The rivers which flow from Mount Imaös into the Indus are arranged as follows:—

Sources of the River Kōa	...120°	37°
Sources of the River Souastos..	122° 30'	36°
Sources of the River Indus	..125°	37°
Sources of the River Bi-		
daspēs	127° 30'	36° 40'
Sources of the River Sandabal	129°	36°
Sources of the River Adris		
or Rouadis.....	130°	37°
Sources of the River Bidasis..	131°	35° 30'

Regarding the origin and meaning of the name Indus, Max Müller (*India, what it can teach us*) says: "In the *Vēdas* we have a number of names of the rivers of India as they were known to one single



poet, say about 1000 B.C. We then hear nothing of India till we come to the days of Alexander, and when we look at the names of the Indian rivers represented by Alexander's companions in India, we recognize without much difficulty nearly all of the old Vedic names. In this respect the names of rivers have a great advantage over the names of towns in India. I do not wonder so much at the names of the Indus and the Ganges being the same. The Indus was known to early traders, whether by sea or land. Skylax sailed from the country of the Paktys, *i.e.* the Pushtus, as the Afghans still call themselves, down to the mouth of the Indus. That was under Darius Hy-staspês (B.C. 521-486). Even before that time India and the Indians were known by their name, which was derived from Sindhu, the name of their frontier river. The neighbouring tribes who spoke Iranic languages all pronounced, like the Persian, the *s* as an *h* (Pliny, lib. VI, c.xx, 7) '*Indus incolis Sindus appellatus.*' Thus *Sindhu* became *Hindhu* (*Hidhu*) and as *h*'s were dropped, even at that early time, *Hindhu* became *Indu*. Thus the river was called Indus, the people *Indoi* by the Greeks, who first heard of India from the Persians. *Sindhu* probably meant originally the *divider, keeper and defender*, from *sidh* to *keep off*. No more telling name could have been given to a broad river, which guarded peaceful settlers both against the inroads of hostile tribes and the attacks of wild animals. . . . Though *Sindhu* was used as an appellative noun for river in general, it remained throughout the whole history of India, the name of its powerful guardian river,



the Indus." For a full discussion of the origin of the name I may refer the reader to Benfey's *Indien*, pp. 1—2, in the *Encyclopædia* of Ersch and Grüber.

The Indus being subject to periodic inundations, more or less violent, has from time to time undergone considerable changes. As has been already indicated it not unfrequently shifts the channels by which it enters the sea, and in the upper part of its course it would seem to be scarcely less capricious. Thus while at the time of the Macedonian invasion it bifurcated above Arôr, the capital of the Sogdi, to run for about the distance of 2 degrees in two beds which enclosed between them the large island called by Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx, 23) Prasiakê, the Prârjuna of the inscription on the Allâhâbâd column, it now runs at that part in a single stream, having forsaken the eastern bed, and left thereby the once flourishing country through which it flowed a complete desert.

In his description of the Indus, Ptolemy has fallen into error on some important points. In the first place, he represents it as rising among the mountains of the country of the Daradrae to the east of the Paropanisos, and as flowing from its sources in a southward direction. Its true birth-place is, however, in a much more southern latitude, viz., in Tibet, near the sources of the Satlaj, on the north side of Mount Kailâsa, famous in Indian mythology as the dwelling-place of Kuvêra and as the paradise of Śiva, and its initial direction is towards the north-west, till it approaches the frontiers of Badakshân, where it turns sharply southward. Ptolemy does not stand alone in making



this mistake, for Arrian places the sources in the lower spurs of the Paropanisos, and he is here at one with Mela (lib. III, c. vii, 6), Strabo (lib. XV, c. ii, 8), Curtius (lib. VIII, c. ix, 3) and other ancient writers. In fact, it was not ascertained until modern times whence the Indus actually came. His next error has reference to the length of the Indus valley as measured from the mouth of the Indus to its point of junction with the Kâbul river. This he makes to be 11 degrees, while in point of fact it is somewhat less than 10. This error is, however, trivial as compared with the next by which the junction of the Indus with the united stream of the Panjâb rivers is made to take place at the distance of only one degree below its junction with the Kâbul river, instead of at the distance of six degrees or halfway between the upper junction and the sea. This egregious error not only vitiates the whole of his delineation of the river system of the Panjâb, but as it exaggerates by more than 300 miles the distance between the lower junction and the sea, it obscures and confuses all his geography of the Indus valley, and so dislocates the positions named in his tables, that they can only in a few exceptional cases be identified.²²

²² "It is hard enough," says Major-General Haig, "to have to contend with the vagueness, inconsistencies and contradictions of the old writers; but these are as nothing compared with the obstacles which the physical characteristics of the country itself oppose to the enquirer. For ages the Indus has been pushing its bed across the valley from east to west, generally by the gradual process of erosion, which effectually wipes out every trace of town and village on its banks; but at times also by a more or less sudden shifting of its waters into



All the large tributaries of the Indus, with the exception of the Kâbul river, join it on its left or eastern side. Their number is stated by Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 33) and by Arrian (lib. V, c. vi) to be 15, but by Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx, 23) to be 19. The most of them are mentioned in one of the hymns of the *Rig Veda* (X, 75) of which the following passages are the most pertinent to our subject:—

1. "Each set of seven [*streams*] has followed a threefold course. The Sindhu surpasses the other rivers in impetuosity.

2. Varuna hollowed out the channels of thy course, O Sindhu, when thou didst rush to thy contests. Thou flowest from [*the heights of*] the earth, over a downward slope, when thou ledest the van of those streams.

4. To thee, O Sindhu, the [*other streams*] rush . . . Like a warrior king [*in the centre of his army*] thou ledest the two wings of thy host when thou strugglest forward to the van of these torrents.

5. Receive favourably this my hymn, O Gaṅgâ, Yamunâ, Sarasvatî, Śutudri, Parashñi; hear, O Marudvṛidhâ, with the Asikni, and Vitastâ, and thou Arjikiyâ with the Sushômâ.

entirely new channels, leaving large tracts of country to go to waste, and forcing the inhabitants of many a populous place to abandon their old homes, and follow the river in search of new settlements. . . . Perhaps the retiring stream will leave behind it vast quantities of drift-sand which is swept by the high winds over the surrounding country . . . where the explorer may search in vain for any record of the past. I have had, as an enquirer, experience of the difficulties here described." (*J. R. A. S. N. S.* vol. XVI, p. 281).



6. Unite first in thy course with the Trishtâ-mâ, the Sasartû, the Rasâ and the Śvêti; thou meetest the Gomati, and the Krumu, with the Kubhâ, and the Mehatnû, and with them are borne onward as on the same car." (See *Journ. R. A. S., N. S.*, Vol. XV, pp. 359-60).

As Ptolemy makes the Kôa join the Indus, it must be identified with the Kâbul river, the only large affluent which the Indus receives from the west. Other classical writers call it the Kôphên or Kôphês, in accordance with its Sanskrit name the Kubhâ. Ptolemy's name, it must however be noted, is not applicable to the Kâbul river throughout its whole course, but only after it has been joined by the River Kâmah, otherwise called the Kunâr. This river, which is inferior neither in size nor in length to the arm which comes from Kâbul, is regarded as the main stream by the natives of the country, who call the course of the united streams either the Kâmah or the Kunâr indifferently, as far as the entrance into the plain of Peshâwar. The Kâmah has its sources high up in the north at the foot of the plateau of Pâmîr, not far from the sources of the Oxus, and this suits Ptolemy's description of the Kôa as a river which has its sources in the eastern extremity of Paropanisos, and which joins the Indus after receiving the Souastos or the river of Swât. Kôa is very probably a curtailed form of the name. The Persians appear to have called it the Khoaspês, that being the name of the river on which Susa, their capital city, stood. Under this name it is mentioned by Aristotle (*Meteorolog.* lib. I, c. xiii) who lived long enough to enter in his



later writings some of the new knowledge which the expedition of his illustrious pupil had opened up regarding Eastern Countries. It is mentioned also by Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 26) who followed here the authority of Aristoboulos, one of the companions and one of the historians of the expedition of Alexander, and by Curtius (lib. VIII, c. x), Strabo *l. c.* states that it joins the Kôphês near Plemyrion, after passing by another city, Gorys, in its course through Bandobênê and Gandaritis. The Kôa of Ptolemy is not to be confounded with the Khôês of Arrian (lib. IV, c. xxiii, 2), which must be identified with a river joining the Kôphês higher up its course, viz. that which is formed by the junction of the Alishang and the Alingar. The Euaspla of the latter writer (lib. IV, c. xxiv, 1) is probably only an altered form of Khoaspês.

The identification of the Kôphês and its numerous affluents has been a subject that has much exercised the pens of the learned. They are now unanimous in taking the Kôphês to be the Kâbul river²³ but there are still some important points on which they differ. In the foregoing notice I have adopted as preferable the views of Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp. 26—34): *Conf.* Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. III, pp. 127-8; Wilson, *Ariana Antiqua*, pp. 138—188. Benfey's *Indien*, pp. 44—46, Cunningham, *Geog. of Anc. India*, pp. 37, 38.

Souastôs:—All the authorities are at one in identifying the Souastôs with the Swât river—the principal tributary of the Landai or river of Pañjkora (the Gaurî of Sanskrit), which is the

²³ Rennell identified it with the Gomul and D'Anville with the Argandâb.



last of the great affluents that the Kābul river receives from the east before it falls into the Indus. The Souastos, though a small stream, is yet of old renown, being the Śvétī of the Vedic hymn already quoted, and the Suvāstu of the *Mahābhārata* (VI, ix, 333), where it is mentioned in conjunction with the Gaurī. Its name figures also in the list of Indian rivers which Arrian (*Indika*, sec. 4) has preserved from the lost work of Megasthenēs. Here it is mentioned in conjunction with the Malamantos and the Garoia, which latter is of course the Gaurī. Arrian thus makes the Souastos and the Gouraios to be different rivers, but in another passage of his works (*Anab.* lib. IV, c. xxv) he seems to have fallen into the mistake of making them identical. It is surprising, as Lassen has remarked, that Ptolemy should notice the Souastos, and yet say nothing about the Garoia, especially as he mentions the district of Goryaia, which is called after it, and as he must have known of its existence from the historians of Alexander. He has also, it may be noted, placed the sources of the Souastos too far north.

The five great rivers which watered the region of the Panjāb bear the following names in Ptolemy: Bidaspēs, Sandabal, Adris or Rhonadis, Bibasis and Zaradros. This region in early times was called the country of the seven rivers—Sapta Sindhu, a name which, as Sir H. Rawlinson has pointed out, belonged primarily to the seven head streams of the Oxus. As there were only five large streams in the locality in India to which the name was applied, the number was made up to seven by adding smaller affluents or lower branches of combined



streams, to which new names were given. The Vedic Āryans, however, as Mr. Thomas remarks, could never satisfactorily make up the sacred seven without the aid of the comparatively insignificant Sarasvatī, a river which no longer exists. These rivers are notably erratic, having more than once changed their bed since Vedic times.

Bidaspês:—This is now the Jhelam or river of Behat, the most western of the five rivers. It drains the whole of the valley of Kaśmīr, and empties into the Akesinês or Chenâb. Ptolemy, however, calls their united stream the *Bidaspês*. By the natives of Kaśmīr it is called the *Bedasta*, which is but a slightly altered form of its Sanskrit name the *Vitastâ*, meaning 'wide-spread.' The classical writers, with the sole exception of our author, call it the *Hydaspês*, which is not so close to the original as his *Bidaspês*. It was on the left bank of this river that Alexander defeated Pôros and built (on the battle-field) the city of *Nikaia* in commemoration of his victory.

Sandabal is an evident mistake of the copyist for *Sandabaga*. The word in this corrected form is a close transliteration of *Chandrabhâgâ* (*lunae portio*), one of the Sanskrit names of the River Chenâb. In the Vedic hymn which has been quoted it is called the *Asiknī*, 'dark-coloured,' whence the name given to it by the Greeks in Alexander's time, the *Akesinês*. It is said that the followers of the great conqueror discerned an evil omen in the name of *Chandrabhâgâ* on account of its near similarity to their own word *Androphagos* or *Alexandrophagos*, 'devourer of Alexander' and hence



preferred calling it by the more ancient of its two names. It is the largest of all the streams of the Pañchanada. Vigne says that Chandra-bhâgâ is the name of a small lake from which the river issues. Pliny has distorted the form Chandabaga into Cantabra or Cantaba (lib. VI, c. xx). According to the historians of Alexander the confluence of this river with the Hydaspês produced dangerous rapids, with prodigious eddies and loud roaring waves, but according to Burnes their accounts are greatly exaggerated. In Alexander's time the Akesinês joined the Indus near Uehh, but the point of junction is now much lower down.

The Adris or Rhouadis is the Râvi, a confluent of the Akesinês, but according to Ptolemy of the Bidaspês. The name Râvi is an abridged form of the Sanskrit Airâvatî. It is called by Arrian (*Anab.* lib. VI, c. viii), the Hydraôtês, and by Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 21) the Hyarôtis. Arrian (*Indik.* sec. 4) assigns to it three tributaries—the Hyphasis, the Saranges and Neudros. This is not quite correct, as the Hyphasis joins the Akesinês below the junction of the Hydraôtês.

The Bibasis is the river now called the Beiäs, the Vipâsâ of Sanskrit. This word "Vipâsâ" means 'uncorded,' and the river is said to have been so called because it *destroyed the cord* with which the sage Vasishṭha had intended to hang himself. It is called the Hyphasis by Arrian (*Anab.* lib. VI, c. viii), and Diodôros (lib. XVII, c. xciii), the Hypasis by Pliny (lib. VII, c. xvii, 20) and Curtius (lib. IX, c. i), and the Hypanis by Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 17) and some other writers.



It falls into the Śatadru. It was the river which marked the limit of Alexander's advance into India.

27. Sources of the River

Zaradros	132°	36°
Confluence of the Kôa and Indus	124°	31°
Confluence of the Kôa and Souastos	122° 30'	31° 40'
Confluence of the Zaradros and Indus	124°	30°
Confluence of the Zaradros and Bidaspês	125°	30°
Confluence of the Zaradros and Bibasis	131°	34°
Confluence of the Bidaspês and Adris	126° 30'	31° 30'
Confluence of the Bidaspês and Sandabal	126° 40'	32° 40'

The Zaradros is the Satlaj, the most easterly of the five rivers. It is called in Sanskrit the Śatadru, *i.e.*, *flowing in a hundred (branches)*. Pliny (lib. VI, c. xvii) calls it the Hesydrus, Zadrades is another reading of the name in Ptolemy. The Satlaj, before joining the Indus, receives the Chenâb, and so all the waters of the Pañchanâda.

With regard to the nomenclature and relative importance of the rivers of the Panjâb the following remarks of V. de Saint-Martin may be cited:—

“As regards the Hyphasis, or more correctly the Hypasis, the extended application of this name till the stream approaches the Indus, is



contrary to the notions which we draw from Sanskrit sources, according to which the Vipâsâ loses its name in the Śatadru (Satlaj), a river which is otherwise of greater importance than the Vipâsâ. Nevertheless the assertion of our author by itself points to a local notion which is confirmed by a passage in the chronicles of Sindh, where the name of the Beiah which is the form of the Sanskrit Vipâsâ in Musalmân authors and in actual use, is equally applied to the lower course of the Satlaj till it unites with the Chenâb not far from the Indus. Arrian, more exact here, or at least more circumstantial than Strabo and the other geographers, informs us that of all the group of the Indus affluents the Akesinês was the most considerable. It was the Akesinês which carried to the Indus the combined waters of the Hydaspês of the Hydraôtês and of the Hyphasis, and each of these streams lost its name in uniting with the Akesinês (Arr. *Anab.* lib. VI, c. v). This view of the general hydrography of the Panjâb is in entire agreement with facts, and with the actual nomenclature. It is correctly recognized that the Chenâb is in effect the most considerable stream of the Panjâb, and its name successively absorbs the names of the Jhelam, the Râvi, and the Gharra or lower Satlaj, before its junction with the Indus opposite Mittankôt. Ptolemy here differs from Arrian and the current ideas on the subject. With him it is not the Akesinês (or, as he calls it, the Sandabala for Sandabaga) which carries to the Indus the waters of the Panjâb. It is the Bidaspês (Vitastâ). Ptolemy departs again in another point from the nomen-



clature of the historians who preceded him in applying to the Gharra or lower Satlaj the name of Zaradros, and not, as did Arrian that of Hyphasis. Zadadros is the Śutudrī or Śatadru of the Sanskrit nomenclature, a name which common usage since the Musalmān ascendancy has strangely disfigured into Satlaj. No mention is made of this river in the memoirs relating to the expedition of Alexander, and Megasthenēs, it would appear, was the first who made its existence known. The application moreover of the two names of Zadadros and Bibasis to the united current of the Śatadru and the Vipāśā is justified by the usage equally variable of the natives along the banks, while in the ancient Sanskrit writings the Śatadru goes, as in Ptolemy, to join the Indus. It may be added that certain particularities in the texts of Arrian and Ptolemy suggest the idea that formerly several arms of the Hyphasis existed which went to join, it may be, the Hydraôtēs, or, it may be, the lower Akesinēs above the principal confluent of the Hyphasis, an idea which the actual examination of the locality appears to confirm. This point merits attention because the obscurities or apparent contradictions in the text of the two authors would here find an easy explanation" (pp. 129-131, also pp. 396-402).

Junction of the Kōa and Indus—Ptolemy fixes the point of junction in latitude 31° , but the real latitude is $33^{\circ} 54'$. Here the Indus is 872 miles distant from its source, and 942 miles from the sea. The confluence takes place amidst numerous rocks and is therefore turbulent and attended with great noise.



Junction of the Zaradros and Indus:— Ptolemy fixes this great junction in latitude 30° , the real latitude being however $28^{\circ} 55'$. It takes place about 3 miles below Miṭankôt, at a distance of about 490 miles below the junction with the Kâbul River.

Divarication of the Indus towards Mt. Vindion:—The Indus below its junction with the Kâbul river frequently throws out branches (e.g. the Nara) which join it again before reaching the sea, and to such branches Ptolemy gives the name of *ἐκτροπαί*. "It is doubtful," Saint-Martin observes, "whether Ptolemy had formed quite a clear idea of this configuration of the valley, and had always distinguished properly the affluents from the branches. Thus one does not quite precisely see what he means by the expression which he frequently employs *ἡ πηγὴ τῆς ἐκτροπῆς*. What he designates thereby must be undoubtedly the streams or currents which descend from the lateral region, and which come to lose themselves in the branches of the river. But the expression, which is familiar to him, is not the less ambiguous and altogether improper"—(p. 235 n.) The branch here mentioned, Lassen (*Ind. Alt.* vol. III, pp. 121, 129) takes to be the Lavanî river. "Ptolemy," he says, "in contradiction to fact makes a tributary flow to it from the Vindhya Mountains. His error is without doubt occasioned by this, that the Lavanî river, which has its source in the Arâvalî chain falls into the salt lake, the Rin or Iriṇa, into which also the eastern arm of the Indus discharges."

Divarication of the Indus into Arakhôsia:—



Lassen (vol. III, p. 128), takes this to be the Gomāl rather than the Korum river. These rivers are both mentioned in the Vedic hymn, where the former appears as the Gômati and the latter as the Krumu.

Branch of the Kôa towards the Paropanisadai:—This is probably the upper Kôphên, which joins the Kôa (Kunâr river) from Kâbul.

Divarication of the Indus towards the Arbita mountains:—Between the Lower Indus and the river called anciently the Arabis or Arbis, was located a tribe of Indian origin called variously the Arabii, the Arbies, the Arabitae, the Ambritae and the Arbiti. There can be no doubt therefore that by the Arbita Mountains Ptolemy designates the range of hills in the territory of that tribe, now called the Hâla Mountains. Towards the northern extremity of this range the Indus receives a tributary called the Gandava, and this we may take to be what Ptolemy calls the divarication of the Indus towards the range. It may perhaps, however, be the Western Nara that is indicated.

Divarication of the Indus into the Paropanisadai:—To judge from the figures in the table this would appear to be a tributary of the Indus joining it from the west a little above its junction with the Kôa or Kâbul river. There is, however, no stream, even of the least note, answering to the description.

28. Divarication (*ἐκτροπή*) from the Indus running towards Mt. Ouindion 123° 29° 30'
The source of (tributary joining) the Divarication 127° 27°



Divarication of the Indus towards Arakhôsia	121° 30'	27° 30'
Divarication of the Kôa to- wards the Paropanisadai ...	121° 30'	33°
The source of (tributary join- ing) the Divarication	115°	24° 30'
Divarication of the Indus to- wards the Arbata Mountains	117°	25° 10'
Divarication of the Indus towards the Paropanisadai.	124° 30'	31° 20'
Divarication of the Indus into the Sagapa mouth	113° 40'	23° 15'
From the Sagapa into the Indus	111°	21° 30'
Divarication of the Indus into the Khrysoun (or Golden) mouth	112° 30'	22°
Divarication of the Indus into the Khariphon mouth	113° 30'	22° 20'
From the Khariphon to the Sapara	112° 30'	21° 45'
Divarication of the same River Khariphon into the Sabalaessa mouth.....	113°	21° 20'
Divarication from the River Khariphon into the Lôn- bare mouth	113° 20'	21° 40'
29. Of the streams which join the Gangês the order is this :—		
Sources of the River Dia- mouna.....	134° 30'	36°



Sources of the Ganges itself...	136°	37°
Sources of the River Sarabos	140°	36°
Junction of the Diamouna and Ganges	136°	34°
Junction of the Sarabos and Ganges	136° 30'	32° 30'

Ptolemy's description of the Ganges is very meagre as compared with his description of the Indus. He mentions by name only 3 of its affluents, although Arrian (quoting from Megasthenès) enumerates no fewer than 17, and Pliny 19. The latitude of its source, G a n g o t r i, which is in the territory of Garhwal, is 30° 54', or more than 6 degrees further south than its position as given in the table. The name of the river, the G a n g â, is supposed to be from a root *gam*, 'to go,' reduplicated, and therefore to mean the 'Go—go.' The tributaries mentioned by Arrian are these: the Kâinas, Erannoboas, Kossoanos, Sônos, Sittokatis, Solomatis, Kondokhates Sambos, Magon, Agoranis, Omalis, Kommenases, Kakkouthis, Andomatis, Amystis, Oxymagis and the Errhenysis. The two added by Pliny are the Prinas and Jomanes. Regarding these names the following remarks may be quoted from Yule:—
"Among rivers, some of the most difficult names are in the list which Pliny and Arrian have taken from Megasthenès, of affluents of the Gangês. This list was got apparently at Palibothra (Patna), and if streams in the vicinity of that city occupy an undue space in the list, this is natural. Thus Magona and Errhenysis,—Mohana and Nirañjana, join to form the river flowing past Gayâ, famous



CSL

in Buddhist legend under the second name. The navigable Prinas or Pinnas is perhaps Punyâ, now Pân-pân, one of the same cluster. Sonus instead of being a duplicate of Eramnoboas, may be a branch of the Gayâ river, still called Sonâ. Andomatis flowing from the Madiandini, i.e., "Meridionales" is perhaps the Andhela, one of the names of the Chandan river of Bhâgalpûr. Kainas, navigable, is not likely to be the Ken of Bundêlkhand, the old form of which is Karnavati, but more probably the Kayâna or Kohâna of Gorakhpûr. It is now a tributary of the lower Ghâgrâ, but the lower course of that river has shifted much, and the map suggests that both the Rapti (Solomatis of Lassen) and Kayâna may have entered the Ganges directly." For the identification of the other rivers in the list see my article in the *Indian Antiquary*, vol. V, p. 331.

Diamouna:—In this it is easy to recognize the Yamunâ, the river which after passing Dehli, Mathurâ, Âgrâ, and other places, joins the Ganges, of which it is the largest affluent at Allâhâbâd. It rises from hot springs amid Himâlayan snows, not far westward from the sources of the Ganges. Arrian singularly enough has omitted it from his list of the Ganges affluents, but it is no doubt the river which he subsequently mentions as the *Jobares* and which flows, he says, through the country of the Sourasenoî, an Indian tribe possessing two large cities, Methora and Kleisobara (Kṛishnapura?) Pliny (lib. VI, c. xix) calls it the *Jomanes*, and states that it flows into the Ganges through the Palibothri, between the towns of Methora and Chrysobara (Kṛishnapura?) The



Ganges at its junction with the Jamnâ and a third but imaginary river called the Sarasvati, which is supposed to join it underground is called the Trivêṇī, i.e., 'triple plait' from the intermingling of the three streams.

Sarabos :—This is the great river of Kôsala, that is now called the Sarayu or Sarju, and also the Gharghara or Ghogra. It rises in the Himâlayas, a little to the north-east of the sources of the Ganges, and joins that river on its left side in latitude $25^{\circ} 46'$, a little above the junction of the Sôn with their united stream. Cunningham regards the Solomatis mentioned in Arrian's list of the tributaries of the Ganges as being the Sarayu under a different name, but Lassen takes it to be the Rapti, a large affluent of the same river from Gôrahpur. The name, he thinks, is a transliteration or rather abbreviation of Śarāvati, the name of a city of Kôsala mentioned by Kalidâsa. The river on which the city stood is nowhere mentioned, but its name was in all probability the same as that of the city (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 671).

Mouth of the River Sôa :—This river can be no other than the Sôn (the Sônos of Arrian's list) which falls into the Ganges about 16 miles above Patna in lat. $25^{\circ} 37'$. It rises in Gôndwana in the territory of Nâgpur, on the elevated tableland of Amarakantaka, about 4 or 5 miles east of the source of the Narmadâ. It would appear that in former times it joined the Ganges in the immediate neighbourhood of Patna, the modern representative of the Palibothra or Palimbothra of the classical writers. The lat. of the source is $22^{\circ} 41'$; in Ptolemy 23° .



30. Divarication from the Ganges towards the Onindion range to the mouth of the River Sôa136° 10' 31° 30'

The sources of the river ...131° 28°

Divarication of the Ganges
towards the Ouxenton range142° 28°

The sources of the divarication137° 23°

Divarication from the Ganges
into the Kambyson Mouth146° 22°

Divarication from the Ganges
into the Pseudostomos146° 30' 20°

Divarication from the Gan-
ges into the Antibolê Mouth146° 30' 21°

Divarication from the Kamby-
son River into the Mega
Mouth 145° 20°

Divarication from the Mega
Mouth into the Kambéri-
khon Mouth145° 30' 19° 30'

The divarication towards the Ouxenton range:—By this unnamed river, as Lassen has pointed out (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, pp. 130, 131) Ptolemy must have meant the Dharmôdaya of the Hindus, although he has assigned far too high a latitude for its junction with the Ganges, 28° instead of only 22° 13'. It is, however, the only considerable stream which flows to the Ganges from the Bear Mountains. It passes Ramgarh and Bardhwân, and joins the Hughli not far from the sea, a little to the east of Tamluk. It is commonly called the Damuda River.

The mouths of the Ganges:—In addition to



the remarks already made regarding these mouths I may here quote a passage from Wilford on this topic: "Ptolemy's description," he says (*Asiat. Researches*, vol. XIV, pp. 464-6) "of the Delta of the Ganges is by no means a bad one, if we reject the latitudes and longitudes, which I always do, and adhere solely to his narrative, which is plain enough. He begins with the western branch of the Ganges or Bhâgîrathî, and says that it sends one branch to the right or towards the west, and another towards the east, or to the left. This takes place at Trivênî, so called from three rivers parting, in three different directions, and it is a most sacred place. The branch which goes towards the right is the famous Sarasvatî; and Ptolemy says that it flows into the Kambyson mouth, or the mouth of the Jelasor river, called in Sanskrit Śaktimatî, synonymous with Kambu or Kambuj, or the river of shells. This communication does not exist, but it was believed to exist, till the country was surveyed. This branch sends another arm, says our author, which affords a passage into the great mouth, or that of the Bhâgîrathî or Ganges. This supposed branch is the Rûpanârâyaṇa, which, if the Sarasvatî ever flowed into the Kambyson mouth, must of course have sprung from it, and it was then natural to suppose that it did so. M. D'Anville has brought the Sarasvatî into the Jelasor river in his maps, and supposed that the communication took place a little above a village called Danton, and if we look into the *Bengal Atlas*, we shall perceive that during the rains, at least, it is possible to go by water, from Hughli, through



the Sarasvatî, and many other rivers, to within a few miles of Danton, and the Jelasor river. The river, which according to Ptolemy branches out towards the east, or to the left, and goes into the Kambarikan mouth is the Junnâ, called in Bengal Jubunâ. For the Ganges, the Junnâ and the Sarasvatî unite at the Northern Trivêni or Allâhâbâd, and part afterwards at this Trivêni near Hughli . . . called in the spoken dialects Terboni. Though the Junnâ falls into the Kambarikan mouth, it does by no means form it; for it obviously derives its name from the Kambâdârâ or Kambâraka river, as I observed before. Ptolemy says that the Ganges sends an arm towards the east or to the left, directly to the false mouth or Hariṇaghaṭṭâ. From this springs another branch to Antibolê, which of course is the Dhâkkâ branch called the Padmâ or Puddâgângâ. This is a mistake, but of no great consequence, as the outlines remain the same. It is the Paddâ or Dhâkkâ branch, which sends an arm into the Hariṇaghaṭṭâ. The branching out is near Kasti and Komarkalli, and under various appellations it goes into the Hariṇaghaṭṭâ mouth."

Besides the tributaries of the Ganges already mentioned, Ptolemy refers to two others which it receives from the range of Bêpyrrhos. These are not named, but one is certainly the Kauśiki and the other ought to be either the Gaṇḍakî or the Tistâ.

31. And of the other rivers the positions are thus :

The sources of the River Na-

mados in the Ouindion range 27°

26° 30'



The bend of the river at Sérípala	116° 30'	22°
Its confluence with the River Môphis	115°	18° 30'
32. Sources of the River Nanagouna from the Ouindion range	132°	26° 30'
Where it bifurcates into the Goaris and Binda	114°	16°
33. Sources of the Pseudos- tomos from the Bêttigô range.....	123°	21°
The point where it turns	118° 30'	17° 15'
34. Sources of the River Baris in the Bêttigô range ...	127°	26° 30'
Sources of the River Sôlèn in the Bêttigô range.....	127°	20° 30'
The point where it turns.....	124°	18°
35. Sources of the River Khabéros in the Adeisathros range	132°	22°
36. Sources of the River Tyna in the Oroudian (or Arouëdan) Mountains	133°	17°
37. Sources of the River Maisôlos in the same moun- tains	134° 30'	17° 30'
38. Sources of the River Manda in the same moun- tains	136° 30'	16° 30'
39. Sources of the River Toundis in the Ouxenton range.....	137°	22° 30'



40. Sources of the River
Dôsârôn in the same range ...140° 24°
41. Sources of the River
Adamas in the same range ...142° 24°

These rivers have been all already noticed, with the exception of the Môphis. This is now the Mahî, a considerable river which flows into the Gulf of Khambât at its northern extremity at a distance of about 35 miles north from the estuary of the Narmâda. Ptolemy is in error in making the two rivers join each other. The Môphis is mentioned in the *Periplûs* as the Maïs. In this list the spelling of the names of two of the rivers of Orissa has been slightly changed, the Manada into Manda and Tyndis into Toundis.

Ptolemy proceeds now (following as much as possible the order already observed) to give a list of the different territories and peoples of India classified according to the river-basins, together with the towns belonging to each territory and each people (§§42—93), and closes the chapter by mentioning the small islands that lay adjacent to the coast. He begins with the basin of the Kôphês, part of which he had already described in the 6th Book.

42. The order of the territories in this division (India intra Gangem) and of their cities or villages is as follows:—

Below the sources of the Kôa are located the Lambatai, and their mountain region extends upwards to that of the Kômédai.



Below the sources of the Souastos is Souastênê.

Below those of the Indus are the Daradrai, in whose country the mountains are of surpassing height.

Below the sources of the Bidaspês and of the Sandabal and of the Adris is Kaspeiria.

Below the sources of the Bibasis and of the Zaradros and of the Diamouna and of the Ganges is Kyлиндrinê, and below the Lambatai and Souastênê is Gôryaia.

Ptolemy's description of the regions watered by the Kôphên and its tributaries given here and in the preceding book may well strike us with surprise, whether we consider the great copiousness of its details, or the way in which its parts have been connected and arranged. It is evident that he was indebted for his materials here chiefly to native sources of information and itineraries of merchants or caravans, and that he did not much consult the records, whether historical or geographical, of Alexander's expedition, else he would not have failed to mention such places as Alexandria, under Kaukasos, Massaga, Nysa, Bazira, the rock Aörnôs, and other localities made memorable by that expedition.

In describing the basin of the Kôphên he divides it into two distinct regions—the high region and the lower, a distinction which had been made by the contemporaries of Alexander. The high region formed the country of the Paropanisadaï, and this Ptolemy has described in the 18th chapter of the 6th Book. He now describes the



lower region which he regards as a part of India. (V. Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp. 62-3).

The Lambatai were the inhabitants of the district now called Lamghân, a small territory lying along the northern bank of the Kâbul river bounded on the west by the Alingâr and Kunâr rivers, and on the north by the snowy mountains. Lamghân was visited in the middle of the 7th century by Hiuen Tsiang, who calls it Lan-po, and notes that its distance eastward from Kapisênê, to which before his time it had become subject, was 600 *li* (equal to 100 miles). The name of the people is met with in the *Mahâbhârata* and in the *Paurânîk* lists under the form Lampâka. Cunningham would therefore correct Ptolemy's Lambatai to Lambagai by the slight change of T for L. A minute account of this little district is given in the *Memoirs of the Emperor Baber*, who states that it was called after Lamech, the father of Noah. The *Dictionary* of Hémachandra, which mentions the Lampâka, gives as another name of the people that of the Murânda. Their language is Pushtu in its basis. (See Cunningham's *Geog. of Anc. India*, pp. 42-3; Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp. 74-5; also his *L'Asie Central*, p. 48; Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. I, p. 422.

Souastênê designates the basin of the Souastos, which, as has already been noticed, is the river now called the river of Swât. The full form of the name is Śubhavastu, which by the usual mode of contraction becomes Subhâstu or Suvâstu. Souastênê is not the indigenous name of the district, but one evidently formed for it by the Greeks. It is the country now inhabited



by the warlike tribes of the Yuzofzaïs which appears to have been called in ancient times with reference to the rich verdure and fertility of its valleys Udyâna, that is, 'a garden' or 'park.' It was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who calls it the kingdom of U-chang-na.

The Daradrai:—Ptolemy has somewhat disfigured the name of these mountaineers, who are mentioned in the *Mahâbhârata* and in the *Chronicle of Kâsmîr* as the Darada. They inhabited the mountain-region which lay to the east of the Lambatai and of Souastêné, and to the north of the uppermost part of the course of the Indus along the north-west frontier of Kâsmir. This was the region made so famous by the story of the gold-digging ants first published to the west by Hérodotos (lib. III, c. cii), and afterwards repeated by Megasthenés, whose version of it is to be found in Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 44) and in Arrian's *Indika* (sec. 15) and also in Pliny (lib. VI, c. xxi and lib. XI, c. xxxvi). The name of the people in Strabo is Derdai, in Pliny Dardae, and in Dionys. Periég. (v. 1138) Dardanoi. Their country still bears their name, being called Dardistân. The Sanskrit word *darad* among other meanings has that of 'mountain.' As the regions along the banks of the Upper Indus produced gold of a good quality, which found its way to India and Persia, and other countries farther west, it has been supposed that the Indus was one of the four rivers of Paradise mentioned in the book of *Genesis*, viz., the Pishon, "which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold; and the gold of that land is good." This opinion has been advocated by



scholars of high name and authority. Havilah they take to be in a much altered form, the Sanskrit *sarôvara*, 'a lake,' with reference perhaps to the lake in Tibet called *Manasarôvara*. Boscawen, however, has pointed out that there was a river called the *Pisanu*, belonging to the region between Nineveh and Babylon, where he locates paradise.

Kaspeiria:—The name and the position concur in indicating this to be the valley of *Kaśmîr*, a name which, according to Burnouf, is a contraction of *Kaśyapamîra*, which is thought with good reason to be the original whence came the *Kaspapyros* of the old Geographer *Hekataios* and the *Kaspatyros* of *Hêrodotos* (lib. III, c. cii), who tells us (lib. IV, c. xlv) that it was from the city of that name and from the *Paktyikan* land that *Skylax* the *Karyandian* started on his voyage of discovery down the *Indus* in order to ascertain for *Darius* where that river entered the sea. It cannot be determined with certainty where that city should be located, but there can be no good reason, as *Wilson* has shown (in opposition to the views of *Wilford*, *Heeren*, *Mannert*, and *Wahl*) for fixing it on any other river than the *Indus*. "We have no traces," he says, "of any such place as *Kaspatyros* west of the *Indus*. *Alexander* and his generals met with no such city, nor is there any other notice of it in this direction. On the east of the river we have some vestige of it in oriental appellations, and *Kaspatyros* is connected apparently with *Kaśmîr*. The preferable reading of the name is *Kaspa-pyrus*. It was so styled by *Hecataeus*, and the alteration is probably



an error. Now Kaśyapa-pur, the city of Kaśyapa, is, according to Sanskrit writers, the original designation of Kaśmīr; not of the province of the present day, but of the kingdom in its palmy state, when it comprehended great part of the Panjâb, and extended no doubt as far as, if not beyond, the Indus."—*Ar. Antiq.*, p. 137.

In the time of Ptolemy the kingdom of Kaśmīr was the most powerful state in all India. The dominions subject to its sceptre reached as far south as the range of the Vindhya and embraced, together with the extensive mountain region wherein the great rivers of the Panjâb had their sources, a great part of the Panjâb itself, and the countries which lay along the courses of the Jamnâ and the Upper Ganges. So much we learn from Ptolemy's description which is quite in harmony with what is to be found recorded in the *Rājatarāṅgīnī*, regarding the period which a little preceded that in which Ptolemy wrote—that the throne of Kaśmīr was then occupied by a warlike monarch called Mēghâvâhana who carried his conquests to a great distance southward (*Rājatar.* vol. III, pp. 27 sqq.) The valley proper of Kaśmīr was the region watered by the Bidaspês (Jhelam) in the upper part of its course. Ptolemy assigns to it also the sources of the Sandabal (Chenâb) and of the Rhoadis (Râvi) and thus includes within it the provinces of the lower Himâlayan range that lay between Kaśmīr and the Satlaj.

Kylindrinê designated the region of lofty mountains wherein the Vipâśâ, the Śataḍru, the Jamnâ and the Ganges had their sources. The



inhabitants called *Kulinda* are mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* in a long list there given of tribes dwelling between *Mēru* and *Mandara* and upon the *Śailōdā* river, under the shadow of the *Bambu* forests, whose kings presented lumps of ant-gold at the solemnity of the inauguration of *Yudhisṭhira* as universal emperor. *Cunningham* would identify *Kylindrinē* with "the ancient kingdom of *Jālandhara* which since the occupation of the plains by the *Muhammadans* has been confined almost entirely to its hill territories, which were generally known by the name of *Kāngra*, after its most celebrated fortress." *Saint-Martin*, however, is unable to accept this identification. A territory of the name of *Kuluta*, which was formed by the upper part of the basin of the *Vipāśā*, and which may be included in the *Kylin-drinē* of *Ptolemy*, is mentioned in a list of the *Varāha Saṁhitā*. *Kuluta* was visited by the Chinese pilgrim, *Hiuen Tsiang*, who transcribes the name *K'iu-lu-to*, a name which still exists under the slightly modified form of *Koluta*. (See *Lassen, Ind. Alt.* vol. I, p. 547; *Wilson, Ar. Antiq.* p. 135 n.; *Saint-Martin, Etude*, 217; *Cunningham, Geog.* pp. 136—138.)

Gōryaia designates the territory traversed by the *Gouraios* or river of *Ghor*, which, as has already been noticed, is the affluent of the *Kābul* river now called the *Landāi*, formed by the junction of the river of *Pañjkora* and the river of *Swāt*. *Alexander* on his march to *India* passed through *Gōryaia*, and having crossed the *River Gouraios* entered the territory of the *Assakēnoi*. The passage of the river is thus de-



scribed by Arrian (*Anab.* lib. IV, c. xxv): "Alexander now advanced with a view to attack the Assakênoi, and led his army through the territory of the Gouraioi. He had great difficulty in crossing the Gouraios, the eponymous river of the country, on account of the depth and impetuosity of the stream, and also because the bottom was so strewn with pebbles that the men when wading through could hardly keep their feet." It can scarcely be doubted that the Gouraios is the Gaurî mentioned in the 6th Book of the *Mahâbhârata* along with the Suvâstu and the Kampanâ. Arrian's notion that it gave its name to the country by which it flowed has been assented to by Lassen but has been controverted by Saint-Martin, who says (p. 33), "the name of the Gouraioi did not come, as one would be inclined to believe, and as without doubt the Greeks thought, from the river of Gur which watered their territory; the numerous and once powerful tribe of Ghorî, of which a portion occupies still to this day the same district, to the west of the Landaï, can advance a better claim to the attribution of the ancient classical name." In a note to this passage he says: "Kur, with the signification of 'river,' *courant*, is a primitive term common to most of the dialects of the Indo-Germanic family. Hence the name of Kur (Greek, *Kúpos*, *Kúppos*, Lat. Cyrus) common to different rivers of Asia. . . . This name (of Ghorîs or Gûrs) ought to have originally the signification of 'mountaineers.' It is at least a remarkable fact that all the mountain region adjacent to the south of the Western Hindû-kôh and its prolongation in the direction of Herât



have borne or still bear the names of Gûr, Ghôr, or Ghaur, Gurkân, Garjistân, &c. Let us add that *garayo* in Zend signifies 'mountains.' "

43. And the cities are these :—

Kaisana	120°	34° 20'
Barborana	120° 15'	33° 40'
Gôrya	122°	34° 45'
Nagara or Dionysopolis	121° 45'	33°
Drastoka	120° 30'	32° 30'

Kaisana, Barborana and Drastoka are places unknown, but as the same names occur in the list of the towns of the Paropanisadai (lib. VI, c. xviii, 4) it is not improbable, as Saint-Martin conjectures, that the repetition was not made by Ptolemy himself, but through a careless error on the part of some copyist of his works. Cunningham thinks that Drastoka may have designated a town, in one of the *darâs* or 'valleys' of the Koh-Dâman, and that Baborana may be Parwân, a place of some consequence on the left bank of the Ghorband river in the neighbourhood of Opiân or Alexandria Opiane. Kaisana he takes to be the Cartana of Pliny (lib. VI, c. xxiii) according to whom it was situated at the foot of the Caucasus and not far from Alexandria, whilst according to Ptolemy it was on the right bank of the Pânjshir river. These data, he says, point to Bêgrâm, which is situated on the right bank of the Pânjshir and Ghorband rivers immediately at the foot of the Kohistân hills, and within 6 miles of Opiân. Bêgrâm also answers the description which Pliny gives of Cartana as *Tetragonis*, or the 'square;' for Masson, in his account of the ruins especially



notices "some mounds of great magnitude, and accurately describing a square of considerable dimensions." A coin of Eukratidês has on it the legend Karisiye Nagara or city of Karisi (*Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 26-29).

Gòrya:—Saint-Martin thinks that the position of this ancient city may be indicated by the situation of Mola-gouri, a place on the right or western bank of the River Landai, as marked in one of Court's maps in the *Jour. Beng. As. Soc.*, vol. VIII, p. 34).

Nagara or Dionysopolis:—Lassen has identified this with Nanghenbar, the Nagara-hâra of Sanskrit, a place mentioned under this name in the *Paurânîk* Geography, and also in a Buddhistic inscription thought to belong to the 9th century which was found in Behar. The city was visited by Hinen Tsiang, who calls it Naki-lo-ho. It was the capital of a kingdom of the same name, which before the time of the pilgrim had become subject to Kapiśa, a state which adjoined it on the west. Its territory consisted of a narrow strip of land which stretched along the southern bank of the Kâbul river from about Jagdalak as far westward as the Khaibar Pass. The city was called also Udyânapura, that is, 'the city of gardens,' and this name the Greeks, from some resemblance in the sound translated into Dionysopolis (a purely Greek compound, signifying 'the city of Dionysos,' the god of wine), with some reference no doubt to legends which had been brought from the regions of Paropanisos by the companions of Alexander. This name in a mutilated form is found in-



scribed on a medal of Dionysios, one of the Greek kings, who possessed the province of what is now called Afghanistan in the 2nd century B.C. Some traces of the name of Udyânapura still exist, for, as we learn from Masson, "tradition affirms that the city on the plain of Jalâlâbâd was called A j ũ n a," and the Emperor Baber mentions in his *Memoirs* a place called Adinapur, which, as the same author has pointed out, is now Bala-bâgh, a village distant about 13 miles westward from Jalâlâbâd near the banks of the Surkhrud, a small tributary of the Kâbul river.

As regards the site of N a g a r a h â r a, this was first indicated by Masson, and afterwards fixed with greater precision by Mr. Simpson, who having been quartered for four months at Jalâlâbâd during the late Afghân war took the opportunity of investigating the antiquities of the neighbourhood, which are chiefly of a Buddhist character. He has given an account of his researches in a paper read before the Royal Asiatic Society, and published in the Society's *Journal* (Vol. XIII, pp. 183—207). He there states that he found at a distance of 4 or 5 miles west from Jalâlâbâd numerous remains of what must have been an ancient city, while there was no other place in all the vicinity where he could discover such marked evidences of a city having existed. The ruins in question lay along the right bank of a stream called the Surkhâb, that rushed down from the lofty heights of the Sufaid-koh, and reached to its point of junction with the Kâbul river. The correctness of the identification he could not doubt, since the word 'Nagrak,'



'Nagarat,' or 'Nagara' was still applied to the ruins by the natives on the spot, and since the site also fulfilled all the conditions which were required to make it answer to the description of the position of the old city as given by Hiuen Tsiang. (See Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 335; Saint-Martin's *Asie Centrale*, pp. 52—56; Cunningham, *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 44—46; Masson, *Various Journeys*, vol. III, p. 164).

44. Between the Sonastos and the Indus the Gandarai and these cities:—

Proklaïs	123°	32°
Naulibi	124° 20'	33° 20'

The Gandarai:—Gandhâra is a name of high antiquity, as it occurs in one of the Vedic hymns where a wife is represented as saying with reference to her husband, "I shall always be for him a Gandhâra ewe." It is mentioned frequently in the *Mahâbhârata* and other post-Vedic works, and from these we learn that it contained the two royal cities of Takshâšilâ (Taxila) and Pushkarâvatî (Peukelaôtis) the former situated to the east and the latter to the west of the Indus. It would therefore appear that in early times the Gandhâric territory lay on both sides of that river, though in subsequent times it was confined to the western side. According to Strabo the country of the Gandarai, which he calls Gandaritis, lay between the Khoaspês and the Indus, and along the River Kôphês. The name is not mentioned by any of the historians of Alexander, but it must nevertheless have been known to the Greeks as early as the times of Hekataios, who, as we



learn from Stephanos of Byzantion, calls Kaspapyros a Gandaric city. Hérodotos mentions the Gandarioi (Book III, c. xci) who includes them in the 7th Satrapy of Darius, along with the Sattagydoi, the Dadikai and the Aparytai. In the days of Aśoka and some of his immediate successors Gandhāra was one of the most flourishing seats of Buddhism. It was accordingly visited both by Fa-hian and Hiuen Tsiang, who found it to contain in a state of ruin many monuments of the past ascendancy of their faith. From data supplied by the narratives of these pilgrims Cunningham has deduced as the boundaries of Gandhāra, which they call Kien-to-lo, on the west Lamghān and Jalālābād, on the north the hills of Swāt and Bunir, on the east the Indus, and on the south the hills of Kālabāgh. "Within these limits," he observes, "stood several of the most renowned places of ancient India, some celebrated in the stirring history of Alexander's exploits, and others famous in the miraculous legends of Buddha, and in the subsequent history of Buddhism under the Indo-Scythian prince Kanishka." (*Geog. of Ind.*, p. 48.) Opinions have varied much with regard to the position of the Gandarioi. Rennell placed them on the west of Baktria in the province afterwards called Margiana, while Wilson (*Ar. Antiq.*, p. 131) took them to be the people south of the Hindū-kūsh, from about the modern Kandahār to the Indus, and extending into the Panjāb and to Kaśmīr. There is, however, no connexion between the names of Gandaria and Kandahār.

Proklaïs is the ancient capital of Gandhāra,



situated to the west of the Indus, which was mentioned in the preceding remarks under its Sanskrit name *Pushkalāvati*, which means 'abounding in the lotus.' Its name is given variously by the Greek writers as *Peukelaôtis*, *Peukolaitis*, *Peukelas*, and *Proklaïs*, the last form being common to Ptolemy with the author of the *Periplûs*. The first form is a transliteration of the Pâli *Pukhalaoti*; the form *Peukelas* which is used by Arrian is taken by Cunningham to be a close transcript of the Pâli *Pukkala*, and the *Proklaïs* of Ptolemy to be perhaps an attempt to give the Hindî name of *Pokhar* instead of the Sanskrit *Pushkara*. Arrian describes *Peukelas* as a very large and populous city lying near the Indus, and the capital of a prince called *Astês*. Ptolemy defines its position with more accuracy, as being on the eastern bank of the river of *Souastênê*. The *Periplûs* informs us that it traded in spikenard of various kinds, and in *kostus* and *bdellium*, which it received from different adjacent countries for transmission to the coast of India. It has been identified with *Hasht-nagar* (*i.e.*, *eight cities*) which lies at a distance of about 17 miles from *Parashâwar* (*Peshâwar*). Perhaps, as Cunningham has suggested, *Hasht-nagar* may mean not 'eight cities' but 'the city of *Astês*.'

Naulibi:—"It is probable," says Cunningham, "that *Naulibi* is *Nilâb*, an important town which gave its name to the Indus; but if so it is wrongly placed by Ptolemy, as *Nilâb* is to the South of the *Kôphês*" (*Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, p. 48).

45. Between the Indus and the *Bidaspês*



towards the Indus the Arsa territory and these cities :—

Ithagouros	125° 40'	33° 20'
Taxiala	125°	32° 15'

Arsa represents the Sanskrit Uraśa, the name of a district which, according to Cunningham, is to be identified with the modern district of Rash in Dhantāwar to the west of Muzafarābād, and which included all the hilly country between the Indus and Kaśmīr as far south as the boundary of Aṭak. It was visited by Hien Tsiang, who calls it U-la-shi and places it between Taxila and Kaśmīr. Pliny, borrowing from Megasthenēs, mentions a people belonging to these parts called the Arsagalitae. The first part of the name answers letter for letter to the name in Ptolemy, and the latter part may point to the tribe Ghilet or Ghilghit, the Gahalata of Sanskrit. (V. Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp. 59-60). Uraśa is mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* and once and again in the *Rājatarāṅgiṇī*.

Ithagouros:—The Ithagouroi are mentioned by Ptolemy (lib. VI, c. xvi) as a people of Sérīka, neighbouring on the Issédones and Throanoi. Saint-Martin takes them to be the Dagors or Dangors, one of the tribes of the Daradas.

Taxiala is generally written as Taxila by the classical authors. Its name in Sanskrit is Taksha-śilā, a compound which means 'hewn rock' or 'hewn stone.' Wilson thinks it may have been so called from its having been built of that material instead of brick or mud, like most other cities in India, but Cunningham prefers to ascribe



to the name a legendary origin. The Pâli form of the name as found in a copper-plate inscription is *Takhasila*, which sufficiently accounts for the *Taxila* of the Greeks. The city is described by *Arrian* (*Anab.* lib. V, c. viii) as great and wealthy, and as the most populous that lay between the *Indus* and the *Hydaspês*. Both *Strabo* and *Hien Tsiang* praise the fertility of its soil, and the latter specially notices the number of its springs and watercourses. *Pliny* calls it a famous city, and states that it was situated on a level where the hills sunk down into the plains. It was beyond doubt one of the most ancient cities in all India, and is mentioned in both of the great national Epics. At the time of the *Makedonian* invasion it was ruled by a prince called *Taxilês*, who tendered a voluntary submission of himself and his kingdom to the great conqueror. About 80 years afterwards it was taken by *Aśôka*, the son of *Vindusâra*, who subsequently succeeded his father on the throne of *Magadha* and established *Buddhism* as the state religion throughout his wide dominions. In the early part of the 2nd century B.C. it had become a province of the *Græco-Baktrian* monarchy. It soon changed masters however, for in 126 B.C. the *Indo-Skythian* *Sus* or *Abars* acquired it by conquest, and retained it in their hands till it was wrested from them by a different tribe of the same nationality, under the celebrated *Kanishka*. Near the middle of the first century A.D. *Apollonius* of *Tyana* and his companion *Damis* are said to have visited it, and described it as being about the size of *Nineveh*, walled like a Greek city, and as



the residence of a sovereign who ruled over what of old was the kingdom of Póros. Its streets were narrow, but well arranged, and such altogether as reminded the travellers of Athens. Outside the walls was a beautiful temple of porphyry, wherein was a shrine, round which were hung pictures on copper tablets representing the feats of Alexander and Póros. (Priaulx's *Apolon.*, pp. 13 sqq.) The next visitors we hear of were the Chinese pilgrims Fa-hian in 400 and Hiuen Tsiang, first in 630, and afterwards in 643. To them, as to all Buddhists, the place was especially interesting, as it was the scene of one of Buddha's most meritorious acts of alms-giving, when he bestowed his very head in charity. After this we lose sight altogether of Taxila, and do not even know how or when its ruin was accomplished. Its fate is one of the most striking instances of a peculiarity observable in Indian history, that of the rapidity with which some of its greatest capitals have perished, and the completeness with which even their very names have been obliterated from living memory. That it was destroyed long before the Muhammadan invasion may be inferred from the fact that its name has not been found to occur in any Muhammadan author who has written upon India, even though his account of it begins from the middle of the tenth century. Even Albirúni, who was born in the valley of the Indus, and wrote so early as the time of Mahmúd of Ghazni, makes no mention of the place, though his work abounds with valuable information on points of geography. The site of Taxila has been identified by



Cunningham, who has given an account of his explorations in his *Ancient Geography of India* (pp. 104—124). The ruins, he says, cover an area of six square miles, and are more extensive, more interesting, and in much better preservation than those of any other ancient place in the Panjâb. These ruins are at a place called Shâh-dhêri, which is just one mile from Kâla-ka-serai, a town lying to the eastward of the Indus, from which it is distant a three days' journey. Pliny says only a two days' journey, but he under-estimated the distance between Peukelaôtis and Taxila, whence his error.

46. Around the Bidaspês, the country of the Pandoôuoi, in which are these cities:—

Labaka	127° 30'	34° 15'
Sagala, otherwise called Euthy- mêdia	126° 20'	32°
Boukephala	125° 30'	30° 20'
Iômoussa	124° 15'	30°

The Country of the Pandoôuoi:—The Pândya country here indicated is that which formed the original seat of the Pândavas or Lunar race, whose war with the Kauravas or Solar race is the subject of the *Mahâbhârata*. The Pândavas figure not only in the heroic legends of India, but also in its real history,—princes of their line having obtained for themselves sovereignties in various parts of the country, in Râjputâna, in the Panjâb, on the banks of the Ganges, and the very south of the Peninsula. From a passage in the *Lalitavistara* we learn that at the time of the birth of Śâkyamuni a Pândava



dynasty reigned at Hastinâpura, a city on the Upper Ganges, about sixty miles to the north-east of Dehli. Megasthenês, as cited by Pliny, mentions a great Pâñḍava kingdom in the region of the Jamnâ, of which Mathurâ was probably the capital. According to Râjput tradition the celebrated Vikramâditya, who reigned at Ujjain (the Ozênê of the Greeks) about half a century B. C., and whose name designates an epoch in use among the Hindûs, was a Pâñḍava prince. From the 8th to the 12th century of our era Pâñḍavas ruled in Indraprastha, a city which stood on or near the site of Dehli. When all this is considered it certainly seems surprising, as Saint-Martin has observed (*Étude*, 206 n.) that the name of the Pandus is not met with up to the present time on any historic monument of the north of India except in two votive inscriptions of Buddhist *stûpas* at Bhilsa. See also *Étude*, pp. 205, 206.

L a b a k a :—"This is, perhaps," says the same author (p. 222), "the same place as a town of Lohkot (Lavakôṭa in Sanskrit) which makes a great figure in the Râjput annals among the cities of the Panjâb, but its position is not known for certain. Wilford, we know not on what authority, identified it with Lâhor, and Tod admits his opinion without examining it."

S a g a l a, called also E u t h y m ê d i a :—Sagala or Sangala (as Arrian less correctly gives the name) is the Sanskrit Sâkala or Sakala, which in its Prakrit form corresponds exactly to the name in Ptolemy. This city is mentioned frequently in the *Mahâbhârata*, from which we learn that it was the



capital of the M a d r a nation, and lay to the west of the Râvî. Arrian (*Anab.* lib. V, cc. xxi, xxii) placed it to the east of the river, and this error on his part has led to a variety of erroneous identifications. Alexander, he tells us, after crossing the Hydraôtês (Râvî) at once pressed forward to Sangala on learning that the Kathaians and other warlike tribes had occupied that stronghold for the purpose of opposing his advance to the Ganges. In reality, however, Alexander on this occasion had to deal with an enemy that threatened his rear, and not with an enemy in front. He was in consequence compelled, instead of advancing eastward, to retrace his steps and recross the Hydraôtês. The error here made by Arrian was detected by General Cunningham, who, with the help of data supplied by Hiuen Tsiang discovered the exact site which Sagala had occupied. This is as nearly as possible where *Sangla-wala-hîba* or 'Sanglala hill' now stands. This Sangala is a hill with traces of buildings and with a sheet of water on one side of it. It thus answers closely to the description of the ancient Sangala in Arrian and Curtius, both of whom represent it as built on a hill and as protected on one side from attacks by a lake or marsh of considerable depth. The hill is about 60 miles distant from Lâhor, where Alexander probably was when the news about the Kathaians reached him. This distance is such as an army by rapid marching could accomplish in 3 days, and, as we learn that Alexander reached Sangala on the evening of the third after he had left the Hydraôtês, we have here a strongly confirmative proof of the correctness of the identi-



fiction. The Makedonians destroyed Sagala, but it was rebuilt by Dêmétrios, one of the Græco-Baktrian kings, who in honour of his father Euthydêmos called it Euthydêmia. From this it would appear that the reading *Euthymêdia* as given in Nobbe's and other texts, is erroneous—(see Cunningham's *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 180—187) cf. Saint-Martin, pp. 103—108).

47. The regions extending thence towards the east are possessed by the *Kaspeiraioi*, and to them belong these cities:—

48. Salagissa	129° 30'	34° 30'
Astrassos	131° 15'	34° 15'
Labokla	128° -	33° 20'
Batanagra	130°	33° 30'
Arispara	130°	32° 50'
Amakatis	128° 15'	32° 20'
Ostobalasarâ	129°	32°
49. Kaspeira	127°	31° 15'
Pasikana	128° 30'	31° 15'
Daidala	128°	30° 30'
Ardonê	126° 15'	30° 10'
Indabara.....	127° 15'	30°
Liganeira	125° 30'	29°
Khonnamagara	128°	29° 20'
50. Modoura, the city of		
the gods	125°	27° 30'
Gagasmira	126° 40'	27° 30'
Êrarasa, a Metropolis	123°	26°
Kognandaua	124°	26°

Boukephala:—Alexander, after the battle



on the western bank of the Hydaspês in which he defeated Pôros, ordered two cities to be built, one Nikaia, so called in honour of his victory (*niké*), and the other Boukephala, so called in honour of his favourite horse, Boukephalos, that died here either of old age and fatigue, or from wounds received in the battle. From the conflicting accounts given by the Greek writers it is difficult to determine where the latter city stood. If we follow Plutarch we must place it on the eastern bank of the Hydaspês, for he states (*Vita Alexandro*) that Boukephalos was killed in the battle, and that the city was built on the place where he fell and was buried. If again we follow Strabo (lib. XV, c. i, 29) we must place it on the west bank at the point where Alexander crossed the river which in all probability was at Dilâwar. If finally we follow Arrian we must place it on the same bank, but some miles farther down the river at Jalâlpur, where Alexander had pitched his camp, and this was probably the real site. Boukephala seems to have retained its historical importance much longer than its sister city, for besides being mentioned here by Ptolemy it is noticed also in Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx) who says that it was the chief of three cities that belonged to the Asini, and in the *Periplûs* (sec. 47) and elsewhere. Nikaia, on the other hand, is not mentioned by any author of the Roman period except Strabo, and that only when he is referring to the times of Alexander. The name is variously written Boukephala, Boukephalos, Boukephalia, and Boukephaleia. Some authors added to it the surname of Alexandria, and in the *Peutinger*



Tables it appears as Alexandria Bucefalos. The horse Boukephalos was so named from his 'brow' being very broad, like that of an 'ox.' For a discussion on the site of Boukephala see Cunningham's *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 159 sqq.

Iômoussa is probably Jamma, a place of great antiquity, whose chiefs were reckoned at one time among the five great rājas of the north. It doubtless lay on the great highway that led from the Indus to Palibothra.

List of cities of the *Kaspeiraioi*:—This long list contains but very few names that can be recognized with certainty. It was perhaps carelessly transcribed by the copyists, or Ptolemy himself may have taken it from some work the text of which had been already corrupted. Be that as it may, we may safely infer from the constancy with which the figures of latitude in the list decrease, that the towns enumerated were so many successive stages on some line of road that traversed the country from the Indus to Mathurā on the Jamnā. Salagissa, Arispara, Pasikana, Liganeira, Khonnamagara and Kognandaua are past all recognition; no plausible conjecture has been made as to how they are to be identified.

Astrassos:—This name resembles the Atrasa of Idrisi, who mentions it as a great city of the Kanauj Empire (*Étude*, p. 226).

Labokla:—Lassen identified this with Lāhor, the capital of the Panjāb (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 152). Thornton and Cunningham confirm this identification. The city is said to have been founded by Lava or Lo, the son of Rāma, after whom it was



named Lohāwar. The *Labo* in Labo-kla must be taken to represent the name of Lava. As for the terminal *kla*, Cunningham (*Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, p. 198) would alter it to *laka* thus, making the whole name Labolaka for Lavālaka or 'the abode of Lava.'

Batanağra:—Ptolemy places this 2 degrees to the east of Labokla, but Saint-Martin (p. 226) does not hesitate to identify it with Bhatnair (for Bhaṭṭanagara) 'the town of the Bhatīs' though it lies nearly three degrees south of Lāhor. Yule accepts this identification. A different reading is Katanagara.

Amakatis (v. l. Amakastis).—According to the table this place lay to the S.E. of Labokla but its place in the map is to the S.W. of it. Cunningham (pp. 195—197) locates it near Shekolpur to the south of which are two ruined mounds which are apparently the remains of ancient cities. These are called Amba and Kāpi respectively, and are said to have been called after a brother and a sister, whose names are combined in the following couplet:—

Amba-Kapa pai larai

Kalpi bahin chhurāwan ai.

When strife arose 'tween Amb and Kāp

Their sister Kalpi made it up.

"The junction of the two names," Cunningham remarks, "is probably as old as the time of Ptolemy, who places a town named Amakatis or Amakapis to the west of the Rāvi, and in the immediate neighbourhood of Labokla or Lāhor." The distance of the mounds referred to from Lāhor is about 25 miles.



Ostobalasarā (v. l. Stobolasara) Saint-Martin has identified this with Thanesar (Sthānêśvara in Sanskrit) a very ancient city, celebrated in the heroic legends of the Pāṇḍavas. Cunningham however thinks that Thanesar is Ptolemy's Bātāṅkaīsarā and suggests that we should read Satan-aisara to make the name approach nearer to the Sanskrit Sthānêśvara—the Sa-ta-ni-shi-fa-lo of Hiuen Tsiang (p. 331).

Kaspeira:—"If this name," says Saint-Martin (p. 226) "is to be applied, as seems natural, to the capital of Kāśmīr, it has been badly placed in the series, having been inserted probably by the ancient Latin copyists."

Daídala:—An Indian city of this name is mentioned by Stephanos of Byzantion, but he locates it in the west. Curtius also has a Daedala (lib. VIII, c. x), a region which according to his account was traversed by Alexander before he crossed the Khoaspês and laid siege to Mazaga. Yule in his map places it doubtfully at Dudhal on the Khaghar river to the east of Bhatneer, near the edge of the great desert.

Ardonê:—Ahroni, according to Yule, a place destroyed by Timûr on his march, situated between the Khaghar and Chitang rivers, both of which lose themselves in the great desert.

Indabara is undoubtedly the ancient Indraprastha, a name which in the common dialects is changed into Indabatta (Indopat), and which becomes almost Indabara in the cerebral pronunciation of the last syllable. The site of this city was in the neighbourhood of Dehli. It was the capital city of the Pāṇḍavas. The Prākṛit



form of the name is *Indrabat̥ṭha*. (Lassen, vol. III, p. 151).

Modoura, the city of the gods.—There is no difficulty in identifying this with *Mathurâ* (*Muttra*) one of the most sacred cities in all India, and renowned as the birthplace of *Kṛishṇa*. Its temples struck *Mahmūd* of *Ghaznī* with such admiration that he resolved to adorn his own capital in a similar style. The name is written by the Greeks *Methora* as well as *Modoura*. It is situated on the banks of the *Jamnâ*, higher up than *Agra*, from which it is 35 miles distant. It is said to have been founded by *Śatrughna*, the younger brother of *Râma*. As already mentioned it was a city of the *Pāṇḍavas* whose power extended far to westward.

Gagasmira:—Lassen and *Saint-Martin* agree in recognizing this as *Ajmir*. *Yule*, however, objects to this identification on the ground that the first syllable is left unaccounted for, and proposes *Jajhar* as a substitute. *Gegasius*, he argues, represents in *Plutarch* *Yayâti*, the great ancestor of the Lunar race, while *Jajhpūr* in *Orissa* was properly *Yayâtipūra*. Hence probably in *Jajhar*, which is near *Dehli*, we have the representative of *Gagasmira*.

Erarasa:—*Ptolemy* calls this a metropolis. It appears, says *Yule*, to be *Girirâja*, 'royal hill,' and may be *Goverdhan* which was so called, and was a capital in legendary times (*Ind. Antiq.*, vol. I, p. 23). *Saint-Martin* suggests *Vârânasi*, now *Banâras*, which was also a capital. He thinks that this name and the next, which ends the list, were additions of the Roman copyists.



51. Still further to the east than the Kaspeiraioi are the Gymnosophistai, and after these around the Ganges further north are the Daitikhai with these towns:—

Konta	133° 30'	34° 40'
Margara	135°	34°
Batangkaissara and east of the river.....	132° 40'	33° 20'
Passala	137°	34° 15'
Orza	136°	33° 20'

Gymnosophistai:—This Greek word means 'Naked philosophers,' and did not designate any ethnic or political section of the population, but a community of religious ascetics or hermits located along the Ganges probably, as Yule thinks in the neighbourhood of Hardwâr and also according to Benfey, of Dehli, *Indien*, p. 95. For an account of the Gymnosophists see *Ind. Antiq.*, vol. VI, pp. 242—244.

Daitikhai:—This name is supposed to represent the Sanskrit *jatika*, which means 'wearing twisted or plaited hair.' The name does not occur in the lists in this form but Kern, as Yule states, has among tribes in the north-east "Demons with elf locks" which is represented in Wilford by *Jati-dhara*.

Konta, says Saint-Martin (*Étude*, p. 321) is probably Kuṇḍâ on the left bank of the Jammâ to the south-east of Saharanpûr.

Margara:—Perhaps, according to the same authority, Marhâra near the Kalindî River to the north-east of Agra.



Batangkaissara:—Yule objecting to Saint-Martin's identification of this place with Bhatkashaur in Saharanpur pargana, on the ground of its being a modern combination, locates it, but doubtingly, at Kesarwa east of the Jamnâ, where the position suits fairly.

Passala:—Pliny mentions a people called Passalae, who may be recognized as the inhabitants of Pañchâla or the region that lay between the Ganges and the Jamnâ, and whose power, according to the *Mahâbhârata*, extended from the Himâlayas to the Chambal River. Passala we may assume was the capital of this important state, and may now, as Saint-Martin thinks, be represented by Bisauli. This was formerly a considerable town of Rohilkhand, 30 miles from Sambhal towards the south-east, and at a like distance from the eastern bank of the Ganges.

Orza is perhaps Sarsi situated on the Râm-gangâ river in the lower part of its course.

52. Below these are the Anikhai with these towns:—

Persakra.....	134°	32° 40'
Sannaba.....	135°	32° 30'
Toana to the east of the river...	136° 30'	32°

53. Below these Prasiakê with these towns:—

Sambalaka.....	132° 15'	31° 50'
Adisdara.....	136°	31° 30'
Kanagora.....	135°	30° 40'
Kindia.....	137°	30° 20'
Sagala, and east of the river...	139°	30° 20'



Aninakha	137° 20'	31° 40'
Koangka	138° 20'	31° 30'

Anikhai (v. ll. Nanikhai, Manikhai):— This name cannot be traced to its source. The people it designated must have been a petty tribe, as they had only 3 towns, and their territory must have lain principally on the south bank of the Jamnâ. Their towns cannot be identified. The correct reading of their name is probably *Manikhai*, as there is a town on the Ganges in the district which they must have occupied called Manikpur. There is further a tribe belonging to the Central Himâlaya region having a name slightly similar, Manga or Mangars, and the *Âin-i-Akbarî* mentions a tribe of Manneyeh which had once been powerful in the neighbourhood of Dehli (*Étude*, p. 322). The form Nanikha would suggest a people named in the *Mahâbhârata* and the *Purânas*, the Naimishas who lived in the region of the Jamnâ.

Prasiakê.—This word transliterates the Sanskrit *Prâchyaka* which means 'eastern' and denoted generally the country along the Ganges. It was the country of the Prasii, whose capital was Palibothra, now Pâtnâ, and who in the times immediately subsequent to the Makedonian invasion had spread their empire from the mouths of the Ganges to the regions beyond the Indus. The Prasiakê of Ptolemy however was a territory of very limited dimensions, and of uncertain boundaries. Though seven of its towns are enumerated Palibothra is not among them, but is mentioned afterwards as the capital of the Mandalai and placed more than 3 degrees farther south than



the most southern of them all. Yule remarks upon this: "Where the tables detail cities that are in Prasiakê, cities among the Poruari, &c., we must not assume that the cities named were really in the territories named; whilst we see as a sure fact in various instances that they were not. Thus the Mandalae, displaced as we have mentioned, embrace Palibothra, which was notoriously the city of the Prasii; while Prasiakê is shoved up stream to make room for them. Lassen has so much faith in the uncorrected Ptolemy that he accepts this, and finds some reason why Prasiakê is not the land of the Prasii but something else."

Sambalaka is Sambhal, already mentioned as a town of Rohilkhand. Sambalaka or Sambhala is the name of several countries in India, but there is only this one town of the name that is met with in the Eastern parts. It is a very ancient town and on the same parallel as Dehli.

Adisâra :—This has been satisfactorily identified with Ahichhatra, a city of great antiquity, which figures in history so early as the 14th century B.C. At this time it was the capital of Northern Pañchâla. The form of the name in Ptolemy by a slight alteration becomes *Adisadra*, and this approximates closely to the original form. Another city so called belonged to Central India, and this appears in Ptolemy as *Adeisathra*, which he places in the country of the Bêtigoi. The meaning of the name Ahi-chhatra is 'serpent umbrella' and is explained by a local legend concerning Âdi-Râja and the serpent demon, that while the Râja was asleep a serpent formed



a canopy over him with its expanded hood. The fort is sometimes called Adikoṭ, though the commoner name is Ahi-chhatar, sometimes written Abikshêtra. The place was visited by Hiuen Tsiang. In modern times it was first visited by Captain Hodgson, who describes it as the ruins of an ancient fortress several miles in circumference, which appears to have had 34 bastions, and is known in the neighbourhood by the name of the Pāṇḍu's Fort. It was visited afterwards by Cunningham (*Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, pp. 359—363).

Kanagora:—This, as Saint-Martin points out, may be a corruption for Kanagoza, a form of Kanyākubja or Kanauj. This city of old renown was situated on the banks of the Kālinadī, a branch of the Ganges, in the modern district of Farrukhābād. The name applies not only to the city itself but also to its dependencies and to the surrounding district. The etymology (*kanyā*, 'a girl,' and *kubja*, 'round-shouldered' or 'crooked') refers to a legend concerning the hundred daughters of Kuśanābha, the king of the city, who were all rendered crooked by Vāyu for non-compliance with his licentious desires (see also Beal, *Buddhist Records*, vol. I, p. 209). The ruins of the ancient city are said to occupy a site larger than that of London. The name recurs in another list of towns under the form Kanogiza, and is there far displaced.

Kindia may be identified with Kant, an ancient city of Rohilkhand, the Shāhjahānpur of the present day. Yule hesitates whether to identify it thus or with Mirzapur on the Ganges.

Sagala:—"Sagala," says Saint-Martin (*Étude*,



p. 326) "would carry us to a town of Sakula of Saghêla, of which mention is made in the Buddhist Chronicles of Ceylon among the royal cities of the North of India, and which Turnour believes to be the same town as Kuśinagara, celebrated as the place where Buddha Śākyamuni obtained *Nirvāṇa*. Such an identification would carry us to the eastern extremity of Kōśala, not far from the River Gaṇḍakī.

Koangka ought to represent the Sanskrit *kanaka*, 'gold.' Mention is made of a town called in the Buddhistic legends *Kanaka-vatī* (abounding in gold), but no indication is given as to where its locality was (*Étude*, p. 326).

54. South of this *Saurabatis* with these towns:—

Empêlathra	130°	30°
Nadoubandagar.....	138° 40'	29°
Tamasis	133°	29°
Kouraporeina	130°	29°

Saurabatis:—This division is placed below *Prasiakê*. The ordinary reading is *Sandrabatis*, which is a transliteration of the Sanskrit *Chandravatī*. The original, Saint-Martin suggests, may have been *Chhatravatī*, which is used as a synonym of *Ahikshêtra*, and applies to that part of the territory of *Pañchâla*, which lies to the east of the Ganges. He thinks it more than probable that *Sandrabatis*, placed as it is just after a group of towns, two of which belong to *Ahikshêtra*, does not differ from this *Chhatravatī*, the only country of the name known to Sanskrit Geography in the Gangetic region. None of the



four towns can be identified. (See Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. I, p. 602; *Étude*, p. 326). Yule, however, points out that this territory is one of those which the endeavour to make Ptolemy's names cover the whole of India has greatly dislocated, transporting it from the S. W. of Râjputâna to the vicinity of Bahâr. His map locates Sandra-bitis (Chandrabati) between the River Mahî and the Ârâvalî mountains.

55. And farther, all the country along the rest of the course of the Indus is called by the general name of Indo-Skythia. Of this the insular portion formed by the bifurcation of the river towards its mouth is Patalênê, and the region above this is Abiria, and the region about the mouths of the Indus and Gulf of Kanthi is Syrastrênê. The towns of Indo-Skythia are these: to the west of the river at some distance therefrom:—

56. Artoarta	121° 30'	31° 15'
Andrapana.....	121° 15'	30° 40'
Sabana	122° 20'	32°
Banagara	122° 15'	30° 40'
Kodrana.....	121° 15'	29° 20'

Ptolemy from his excursion to the Upper Ganges now reverts to the Indus and completes its geography by describing Indo-Skythia, a vast region which comprised all the countries traversed by the Indus, from where it is joined by the river of Kâbul onward to the ocean. We have already pointed out how Ptolemy's description is here vitiated by his making the combined stream of the Panjâb



rivers join the Indus only one degree below its junction with the Kābul, instead of six degrees, or half way between that point and the ocean. The egregious error he has here committed seems altogether inexcusable, for whatever may have been the sources from which he drew his information, he evidently neglected the most accurate and the most valuable of all—the records, namely, of the Makedonian invasion as transmitted in writings of unimpeachable credit. At best, however, it must be allowed the determination of sites in the Indus valley is beset with peculiar uncertainty. The towns being but very slightly built are seldom of more than ephemeral duration, and if, as often happens they are destroyed by inundations, every trace is lost of their ever having existed. The river besides frequently changes its course and leaves the towns which it abandons to sink into decay and utter oblivion.²⁴ Such places again as still exist after escaping these and other casualties, are now known under names either altogether different from the ancient, or so much changed as to be hardly recognizable. This instability of the nomenclature is due to the frequency with which the valley has been conquered by foreigners. The period at

²⁴ Aristoboulos as we learn from Strabo (L. V. XV, c. i. 19) when sent into this part of India saw a tract of land deserted which contained 1,000 cities with their dependent villages, the Indus having left its proper channel, was diverted into another, on the left hand much deeper, and precipitated itself into it like a cataract so that it no longer watered the country by the usual inundation on the right hand, from which it had receded, and this was elevated above the level, not only of the new channel of the river, but above that of the (new) inundation.



which the Skythians first appeared in the valley which was destined to bear their name for several centuries has been ascertained with precision from Chinese sources. We thence gather that a wandering horde of Tibetan extraction called Yuei-chi or Ye-tha in the 2nd century B. C. left Tangut, their native country, and, advancing westward found for themselves a new home amid the pasture-lands of Zungaria. Here they had been settled for about thirty years when the invasion of a new horde compelled them to migrate to the Steppes which lay to the north of the Jaxartes. In these new seats they halted for only two years, and in the year 128 B. C. they crossed over to the southern bank of the Jaxartes where they made themselves masters of the rich provinces between that river and the Oxus, which had lately before belonged to the Grecian kings of Baktriana. This new conquest did not long satisfy their ambition, and they continued to advance southwards till they had overrun in succession Eastern Baktriana, the basin of the Kôphês, the basin of the Etymander with Arakhôsia, and finally the valley of the Indus and Syrastrênê. This great horde of the Yetha was divided into several tribes, whereof the most powerful was that called in the Chinese annals Kwei-shwang. It acquired the supremacy over the other tribes, and gave its name to the kingdom of the Yetha. They are identical with the Kushâns. The great King Kanishka, who was converted to Buddhism and protected that faith was a Kushan. He reigned in the first century of the Christian era and ruled from Baktriana to



Kāśmir, and from the Oxus to Surāshtra. These Kushans of the Panjāb and the Indus are no others than the Indo-Skythians of the Greeks. In the *Rājatarāṅginī* they are called Sāka and Turushka (Turks). Their prosperity could not have been of very long duration, for the author of the *Periplus*, who wrote about half a century after Kanishka's time mentions that "Minnagar, the metropolis of Skythia, was governed by Parthian princes" and this statement is confirmed by Parthian coins being found everywhere in this part of the country. Max Müller, in noticing that the presence of Turanian tribes in India as recorded by Chinese historians is fully confirmed by coins and inscriptions and the traditional history of the country such as it is, adds that nothing attests the presence of these tribes more clearly than the blank in the Brahmanical literature of India from the first century before to the 3rd after our æra. He proposes therefore to divide Sanskrit literature into two—the one (which he would call the ancient and natural) *before*, and the other (which he would call the modern and artificial) *after* the Turanian invasion. In his Indo-Skythia Ptolemy includes Patalênê, Abiria and Syrastrênê. The name does not occur in Roman authors.

Patalênê, so called from its capital Patala, was the delta at the mouth of the Indus. It was not quite so large as the Egyptian delta with which the classical writers frequently compare it. Before its conquest by the Skythians it had been subject to the Græco-Baktrian kings. Its reduction to



their authority is attributed by Strabo (lib. XI, c. xii, 1) to Menander or to D  metrios, the son of Euthyd  mos.

Abiria:--The country of the Abh  ras (the Ahirs of common speech) lay to the east of the Indus, above where it bifurcates to form the delta. In Sanskrit works their name is employed to designate generally the pastoral tribes that inhabit the lower districts of the North-West as far as Sindh. That Abiria is the Ophir of Scripture is an opinion that has been maintained by scholars of eminence.

Syrastr  n   represents the Sanskrit Sur  shtra (the modern Sorath) which is the name in the *Mah  bh  rata* and the *Pur  nas* for the Peninsula of Gujar  t. In after times it was called Valabh  . Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx) in his enumeration of the tribes of this part of India mentions the Horatae, who have, he says, a fine city, defended by marshes, wherein are kept man-eating crocodiles that prevent all entrance except by a single bridge. The name of this people is no doubt a corruption of Sorath. They have an inveterate propensity to sound the letter *S* as an *H*.

Ptolemy distributes into six groups the names of the 41 places which he specifies as belonging to the Indus valley and its neighbourhood. The towns of the second group indicate by their relative positions that they were successive stages on the great caravan route which ran parallel with the western bank of the river all the way from the K  ph  s junction downward to the coast. The towns of the fourth group were in like manner



successive stages on another caravan route, that which on the eastern side of the river traversed the country from the great confluence with the combined rivers of the Panjâb downward to the Delta. The towns of the first group (5 in number) belonged to the upper part of the valley, and were situated near the Kôphês junction. They are mentioned in a list by themselves, as they did not lie on the great line of communication above mentioned. The third group consists of the two towns which were the chief marts of commerce in the Delta. The towns of the fifth group (7 in number) lay at distances more or less considerable from the eastern side of the Delta. The towns of the sixth group were included in the territory of the Khatriaiôî, which extended on both sides of the river from its confluence with the Panjâb rivers as far as the Delta. None of them can now be identified (See *Étude*, pp. 234 sqq.) and of the first group—Artoarta, Sabana, Kodrana cannot be identified.

Andrapana:—Cunningham (p. 86) thinks this is probably Draband, or Derâband, near Dera-Ismail-Khân.

Banagara (for Bana-nagara):—Banna or Banu is often cited as the name of a town and a district that lay on the line of communication between Kâbul and the Indus. It was visited both by Fa-hian and Hiuên Tsiang. The former calls the country Po-na, i.e., Bana. The latter calls it Fa-la-na, whence Cunningham conjectures that the original name was Varana or Barna. It consisted of the lower half of the valley of the Kuram river, and was distant from Lamghân a



15 days' journey southward. It is one of the largest, richest and most populous districts to the west of the Indus.—(See *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 84-86).

57. And along the river:—

Embolima	124°	31°
Pentagramma	124°	30° 20'
Asigramma	123°	29° 30'
Tiausa	121° 30'	28° 50'
Aristobathra	120°	27° 30'
Azika	119° 20'	27°
58. Pardabathra	117°	23° 30'
Piska	116° 30'	25°
Pasipêda	114° 30'	24°
Sousikana	112°	22° 20'
Bônis	111°	21° 30'
Kôlaka	110° 30'	20° 40'

Embolima was situated on the Indus at a point about 60 miles above Atçak, where the river escapes with great impetuosity from a long and narrow gorge, which the ancients mistook for its source. Here, on the western bank, rises the fort of Amb, now in ruins, crowning a position of remarkable strength, and facing the small town of Derbend, which lies on the opposite side of the river. The name of Amb suggested that it might represent the first part of the name of Emb-olima, and this supposition was raised to certitude when it was discovered that another ruin not far off, crowning a pinnacle of the same hill on which Amb is seated, preserves to this day in the tradition of the inhabitants the



name of Bahmah. Embolima is mentioned by Arrian (lib. IV, c. xxvii) who represents it as situated at no great distance from the rock of Aornos—which as Abbott has shown, was Mount Mahâban, a hill abutting on the western bank of the Indus, about eight miles west from Embolima. It is called by Curtius Ecbolima (*Anab.* lib. VIII, c. xii) but he gives its position wrongly—at sixteen days' march from the Indus. Ptolemy assigns to it the same latitude and longitude which he assigns to the point where the Kâbul river and Indus unite. It was erroneously supposed that Embolima was a word of Greek origin from ἐκβολή, 'the mouth of a river' (conf. Cunningham, *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 52 ff.).

Pentagramma:—To the north of the Kôphês at a distance of about forty miles S.W. from Embolima is a place called Panjptr, which agrees closely both in its position and the signification of its name (5 towns) with the Pentagramma of Ptolemy.

Asigramma and the five towns that come after it cannot be identified.

Pasipêda:—Saint-Martin thinks this may be the Besmeïd of the Arab Geographers, which, as they tell us was a town of considerable importance, lying east of the Indus on the route from Mansûra to Multân. Its name is not to be found in any existing map; but as the Arab itineraries all concur in placing it between Rond (now Roda) and Multân, at a three days' journey from the former, and a two days' journey from the latter, we may determine its situation to have been as far down the river as Mithankôt, where the great con-



fluence now takes place. If the fact that Besmeid was on the eastern side of the river staggers our faith in this identification, Saint-Martin would remind us that this part of the tables is far from presenting us with a complete or systematic treatment of the subject, and that the only way open to us of restoring some part at least of these lists is to have recourse to synonyms. He contends that when we find in the Arab itineraries (which are documents of the same nature precisely as those which Ptolemy made use of) names resembling each other placed in corresponding directions, we ought to attach more weight to such coincidences than to the contradictions real, or apparent, which present themselves in the text of our author. Analogous transpositions occur in other lists, as, for instance, in the list of places in the Narmadâ basin. Cunningham, thinking it strange that a notable place of great antiquity like Schwân, which he identifies with *Sindomana*, should not be mentioned by Ptolemy under any recognizable name, hazards the conjecture that it may be either his *Piska* or *Pasipêda*. "If we take," he says, "Haidarâbâd as the most probable head of the Delta in ancient times, then Ptolemy's *Sydros*, which is on the eastern bank of the Indus, may perhaps be identified with the old site of Mattali, 12 miles above Haidarâbâd and his *Pasipêda* with Sehwan. The identification of Ptolemy's *Oskana* with the *Oxykanus* or *Portikanus* of Alexander and with the great mound of Mahorta of the present day is I think almost certain. If so, either *Piska* or *Pasipêda* must be Schwân."

Sousikana.:—It is generally agreed that this



is a corrupt reading for Musikana, the royal city of Musikanos, who figures so conspicuously in the records of the Makedonian Invasion, and whose kingdom was described to Alexander as being the richest and most populous in all India. Cunningham (p. 257) identifies this place with Alor, which was for many ages the capital of the powerful kingdom of Upper Sindh. Its ruins, as he informs us, are situated to the south of a gap in the low range of limestone hills which stretches southwards from Bakhar for about 20 miles until it is lost in the broad belt of sand-hills which bound the Nâra or old bed of the Indus on the west. Through this gap a branch of the Indus once flowed which protected the city on the north-west. To the north-east it was covered by a second branch of the river which flowed nearly at right angles to the other at a distance of three miles. When Alôr was deserted by the river, it was supplanted by the strong fort of Bakhar (p. 258). The same author thinks it probable that Alôr may be the Binagara of Ptolemy, as it is placed on the Indus to the eastward of Oskana, which appears to be the Oxykanus of Arrian and Curtius.

Bônîs:—The table places this at the point of bifurcation of the western mouth of the river and an interior arm of it. Arab geographers mention a town called Bania in Lower Sindh, situated at the distance of a single journey below Mansurâ. This double indication would appear to suit very well with Banna, which stands at the point where the Piniari separates from the principal arm about 25 miles above Thattha. Its



position is however on the eastern bank of the river. (*Etude*, pp. 238, 239.)

Kôlaka or Kôlala is probably identical with the Krôkala of Arrian's *Indika* (sec. 21), which mentions it as a small sandy island where the fleet of Nearkhos remained at anchor for one day. It lay in the bay of Karâchi, which is situated in a district called Karkalla even now.

59. And in the islands formed by the river are these towns :—

Patala.....	112° 30'	21°
Barbarei.....	113° 15'	22° 30'

60. And east of the river at some distance therefrom are these towns :—

Xodrakê	116°	24°
Sarbana	116°	22° 50'
Auxoamis	115° 30'	22° 20'
Asinda	114° 15'	22°
Orbadarou or Ordabari.....	115°	22°
Theophila	114° 15'	21° 10'
Astakapra	114° 40'	20° 15'

Patala as we learn from Arrian was the greatest city in the parts of the country about the mouths of the Indus. It was situated, he expressly states, at the head of the Delta where the two great arms of the Indus dispart. This indication would of itself have sufficed for its identification, had the river continued to flow in its ancient channels. It has, however, frequently changed its course, and from time to time shifted the point of bifurcation. Hence the question regarding the site of Patala has occasioned much



controversy. Rennell and Vincent, followed by Burnes and Ritter, placed it at Thatta; Droysen, Benfey, Saint-Martin and Cunningham, at Haidarâbâd (the Nirankot of Arab writers), and McMurdo, followed by Wilson and Lassen, at a place about 90 miles to the north-east of Haidarâbâd. The last supposition is quite untenable, while the arguments in favour of Haidarâbâd, which at one time was called Pâtalapur²⁵ appear to be quite conclusive. (See Saint-Martin, pp. 180 ff., Cunningham, pp. 279—287). Patala figures conspicuously in the history of the Macedonian invasion. In its spacious docks Alexander found suitable accommodation for his fleet which had descended the Indus, and here he remained with it for a considerable time. Seeing how advantageously it was situated for strategy as well as commerce, he strengthened it with a citadel, and made it a military centre for controlling the warlike tribes in its neighbourhood. Before finally leaving India he made two excursions from it to the ocean, sailing first down the western and then down the eastern arm of the river. Pâtâla in Sanskrit mythology was the name of the lowest of the seven regions in the interior of the earth, and hence may have been applied to denote generally the parts where the sun descends into the under world, the land of the west, as in contrast to Prâchayaka, the land of the east. *Pâtâla* in Sanskrit means 'the

²⁵ "The Brahmans of Sehvn have stated to us that according to local legends recorded in their Sanskrit books Kaboul is the ancient *Chichapolapoura*; Multân, Prahlâdpur; Tattah, Dêval, Haidarâbâd, Nêran, and more anciently Pâtalपुरi." Dr. J. Wilson, *Journ. Bombay Asiat. Soc.*, vol. III, 1850, p. 77.



trumpet-flower,' and Cunningham thinks that the Delta may have been so called from some resemblance in its shape to that of this flower. The classic writers generally spell the name as Pattala.

Barbarei.—The position of Barbarei, like that of Patala, has been the subject of much discussion. The table of Ptolemy places it to the north of that city, but erroneously, since Barbarei was a maritime port. It is mentioned in the *Periplus* under the name of Barbarikon, as situated on the middle mouth of the Indus. D'Anville in opposition to all the data placed it at Debal Sindhi, the great emporium of the Indus during the middle ages, or at Karachi, while Elliot, followed by Cunningham, placed it at an ancient city, of which some ruins are still to be found, called Bambhara, and situated almost midway between Karachi and Thatta on the old western branch of the river which Alexander reconnoitred. Burnes again, followed by Ritter, placed it at Richel, and Saint-Martin a little further still to the east at Bandar Vikkar on the Hajamari mouth, which has at several periods been the main channel of the river.

Xodrakê and Sarbana or Sardana.—As the towns in this list are given in their order from north to south, and as Astakapra, the most southern, was situated on the coast of the peninsula of Gujarât, right opposite the mouth of the river Narmadâ, the position of Xodrakê and the other places in the list must be sought for in the neighbourhood of the Raṅ of Kachh. Xodrakê and Sarbana have not been identified, but Yule doubt-



ingly places the latter on the Sambhar Lake. Lassen takes Xodrake to be the capital of the Xudraka, and locates it in the corner of land between the Vitastá and Chandrabhâgá (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 145).

Asinda, according to Saint-Martin, may perhaps be Sidhpur (Siddhapura), a town on the river Sarasvatî, which rising in the Âravâlis empties into the Gulf of Kachh (pp. 246-247).

Auxoamis or *Axumis*:—The same authority would identify this with Sûmî, a place of importance and seat of a Muḥammadan chief, lying a little to the east of the Sarasvatî and distant about twenty-five miles from the sea. Yule however suggests that Ajmir may be its modern representation.

Orbadarou or *Ordabari*:—Yule doubtfully identifies this with Arbuda or Mount Abû, the principal summit of the Âravâlis. Pliny mentions alongside of the *Horatae* (in Gujarât) the *Odomboerae* which may perhaps be a different form of the same word. The name *Uḍumbara* is one well-known in Sanskrit antiquity, and designated a royal race mentioned in the *Harivaṅśa*.

Theophila:—This is a Greek compound meaning 'dear to God,' and is no doubt a translation of some indigenous name. Lassen has suggested that of Sardhur, in its Sanskrit form *Surâdara*, which means 'adoration of the gods.' Sardhur is situated in a valley of the Rêvata mountains so celebrated in the legends of Krishṇa. Yule suggests Dewaliya, a place on the isthmus, which connects the peninsula with the mainland. Dr. Burgess, Thán, the chief town of a district



traditionally known as Deva-Pañchâl, lying a little further west than Dewaliya. Col. Watson writes:—"The only places I can think of for Theophila are—1. Gândi, the ancient Gundigaḍh, one and a half or two miles further up the Hathap river, of which city Hastakavapra was the port. This city was one of the halting-places of the Bhaunagar Brâhmanas ere they came to Gogha. It was no doubt by them considered dear to the gods. It was connected with Hastakavapra and was a city of renown and ancient. 2. Pardwa or Priyadêva, an old village, about four or five miles west of Hathap. It is said to have been contemporary with Valabhî, and there is an ancient Jain temple there, and it is said that the Jains of Gundigaḍh had their chief temple there. 3. Dêvagana, an ancient village at the foot of the west slopes of the Khôkras about 18 miles from Hâthap to the westward."

Astakapra:—This is mentioned in the *Periplus* (sec. 41), as being near a promontory on the eastern side of the peninsula which directly confronted the mouth of the Narmadâ on the opposite side of the gulf. It has been satisfactorily identified with Hastakavapra, a name which occurs in a copper-plate grant of Dhruvasêna I, of Valabhî, and which is now represented by Hathab near Bhavnagar. Bühler thinks that the Greek form is not derived immediately from the Sanskrit, but from an intermediate old Prakrit word Hastakampra. (See *Ind. Ant.*, vol. V, pp. 204, 314.)

61. Along the river are these towns:—

Panasa	122° 30'	29°
Boudaia	121° 15'	28° 15'



Naagramma	120°	27°
Kamigara	119°	26° 20'
Binagara	118°	25° 20'
Parabali	116° 30'	24° 30'
Sydros	114°	21° 20'
Epitausa.....	113° 45'	22° 30'
Xcana.....	113° 30'	21° 30'

Panasa:—The table places Panasa one degree farther south than the confluence of the Zardros and the Indus. Ptolemy, as we have seen, egregiously misplaced this confluence, and we cannot therefore from this indication learn more than that Panasa must have been situated lower down the Indus than Pasipêda (Besmaid) and Alexandria of the Malli which lay near the confluence. A trace of its name Saint-Martin thinks is preserved in that of Osanpur, a town on the left of the river, 21 miles below Mittankôt.

Boudaia:—According to Saint-Martin this is very probably the same place as a fort of Budhya or Bodhpur, mentioned in the Arab chronicles of the conquest of Upper Sindh and situated probably between Alôr and Mittankôt. Yule identifies it with Budhia, a place to the west of the Indus and south from the Bolan Pass.

Naagramma:—This Yule identifies with Naoshera, a place about 20 miles to the south of Besmaid. Both words mean the same, 'new town.'

Kamigara:—The ruins of Arôr which are visible at a distance of four miles to the south-east of Kori, are still known in the neighbourhood under the name of Kaman. If to this word we add



the common Indian affix *nagar*—'city,' we have a near approach to the Kamigara of Ptolemy.

Binagara:—This some take to be a less correct form than *Minagara* given in the *Periplus*, where it is mentioned as the metropolis of Skythia, but under the government of Parthian princes, who were constantly at feud with each other for the supremacy. Its position is very uncertain. Cunningham would identify it with Alôr. Yule, following McMurdo, places it much further south near Brâhmanâbâd, which is some distance north from Haidarâbâd. The *Periplus* states that it lay in the interior above Barbarikon (sec. 38).

Xoana:—Yule suggests that this may be Sewana, a place in the country of the Bhaulingas, between the desert and the Arâvalis.

62. The parts east of Indo-Skythia along the coast belong to the country of *Larike*, and here in the interior to the west of the river *Namados* is a mart of commerce, the city of *Barygaza* $113^{\circ} 15'$ $17^{\circ} 20'$

63. To the east of the river:—

<i>Agrinagara</i>	$118^{\circ} 15'$	$22^{\circ} 30'$
<i>Siripalla</i>	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$21^{\circ} 30'$
<i>Bammogoura</i>	116°	$20^{\circ} 45'$
<i>Sazantion</i>	$115^{\circ} 30'$	$20^{\circ} 30'$
<i>Zérogerei</i>	$116^{\circ} 20'$	$19^{\circ} 50'$
<i>Ozênê</i> , the capital of <i>Tias-</i> <i>tanes</i>	117°	20°
<i>Minagara</i>	$115^{\circ} 10'$	$19^{\circ} 30'$
<i>Tiatoura</i>	$115^{\circ} 50'$	$18^{\circ} 50'$
<i>Nasika</i>	114°	17°



Lariké:—Lárdésa was an early name for the territory of Gujarât and the Northern Konkan. The name long survived, for the sea to the west of that coast was in the early Muḥammadan time called the sea of Lâr, and the language spoken on its shores was called by Mas'ûdi, Lâri (Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. II, p. 353, n.). Ptolemy's Lariké was a political rather than a geographical division and as such comprehended in addition to the part of the sea-board to which the name was strictly applicable, an extensive inland territory, rich in agricultural and commercial products, and possessing large and flourishing towns, acquired no doubt by military conquest.

Barygaza, now Bharôch, which is still a large city, situated about 30 miles from the sea on the north side of the river Narmadâ, and on an elevated mound supposed to be artificial, raised about 80 feet above the level of the sea. The place is repeatedly mentioned in the *Periplus*. At the time when that work was written, it was the greatest seat of commerce in Western India, and the capital of a powerful and flourishing state. The etymology of the name is thus explained by Dr. John Wilson (*Indian Castes*, vol. II, p. 113): "The Bhârgavas derive their designation from Bhârgava, the adjective form of Bhrîgu, the name of one of the ancient Rishis. Their chief habitat is the district of Bharôch, which must have got its name from a colony of the school of Bhrîgu having been early established in this Kshêtra, probably granted to them by some conqueror of the district. In the name Barugaza given to it by Ptolemy, we have a



Greek corruption of Bhrigukshêtra (the territory of Bhrigu) or Bhrigukachha, 'the tongue-land' of Bhrigu." The illiterate Gujarâtis pronounce Bhrigukshêtra as Bargacha, and hence the Greek form of the name.

Agri-nagara:—This means 'the town of the Agri.' Yule places it at Âgar, about 30 miles to the N. E. of Ujjain.

Siripalla:—A place of this name (spelt Sêripala) has already been mentioned as situated where the Namados (Narmadâ) changes the direction of its course. Lassen therefore locates it in the neighbourhood of Haump, where the river turns to southward.

Bamogoura:—In Yule's map this is identified with Pavangurh, a hill to the north of the Narmadâ.

Sazantion:—This may perhaps be identical with Sajintra, a small place some distance north from the upper extremity of the Bay of Khambât.

Zêrogerêi:—This is referred by Yule to Dhâr, a place S. W. of Ozênê, about one degree.

Ozênê:—This is a transliteration of Ujjainî, the Sanskrit name of the old and famous city of Avantî, still called Ujjain. It was the capital of the celebrated Vikramâditya, who having expelled the Skythians and thereafter established his power over the greater part of India, restored the Hindû monarchy to its ancient splendour. It was one of the seven sacred cities of the Hindûs, and the first meridian of their astronomers. We learn from the *Mahavânâsa* that Aśôka, the grandson of Chandragupta (Sandrakottos) was sent by his father the king of



Pataliputra (Patna) to be the viceroy of Ujjain, and also that about two centuries later (B.C. 95) a certain Buddhist high priest took with him 40,000 disciples from the Dakkhinagiri temple at Ujjain to Ceylon to assist there in laying the foundation stone of the great Dāgaba at Anurādhapura. Half a century later than this is the date of the expulsion of the Skythians by Vikramāditya, which forms the era in Indian Chronology called *Samvat* (57 B.C.) The next notice of Ujjain is to be found in the *Periplus* where we read (Sec. 48) "Eastward from Barygaza is a city called Ozênê, formerly the capital where the king resided. From this place is brought down to Barygaza every commodity for local consumption or export to other parts of India, onyx-stones, porcelain, fine muslins, mallow-tinted cottons and the ordinary kinds in great quantities. It imports from the upper country through Proklais for transport to the coast, spikenard, kostos and bdellium." From this we see that about a century and a half after Vikramāditya's era Ujjain was still a flourishing city, though it had lost something of its former importance and dignity from being no longer the residence of the sovereign. The ancient city no longer exists, but its ruins can be traced at the distance of a mile from its modern successor. Ptolemy tells us that in his time Ozênê was the capital of Tiastanês. This name transliterates Chashtāna, one which is found on coins and the cave temple inscriptions of Western India. This prince appears probably to have been the founder of the Kshatrapa dynasty of Western India (see *Ind. All.*, vol. III, p. 171).



Minagara is mentioned in the *Periplus*, where its name is more correctly given as Minnagar, i.e., 'the city of the Min' or Skythians. This Minagara appears to have been the residence of the sovereign of Barygaza. Ptolemy places it about 2 degrees to the S. W. of Ozênê. Yule remarks that it is probably the Manekir of Mas'û-di, who describes it as a city lying far inland and among mountains. Benfey doubts whether there were in reality two cities of this name, and thinks that the double mention of Minnagar in the *Periplus* is quite compatible with the supposition that there was but one city so called. (*Indien*, p. 91).

Tiatoura:—This would transliterate with Chittur, which, however, lies too far north for the position assigned to Tiatoura. Yule suggests, but doubtingly, its identity with Chandur. This however lies much too far south.

Nasika has preserved its name unaltered to the present day, distant 116 miles N. E. from Bombay. Its latitude is 20° N., but in Ptolemy only 17°. It was one of the most sacred seats of Brâhmanism. It has also important Buddhistic remains, being noted for a group of rock-temples. The word *nasikâ* means in Sanskrit 'nose.'

64. The parts farther inland are possessed by the Poulindai Agriophagoi, and beyond them are the Khatriai oi, to whom belong these cities, lying some east and some west of the Indus:—

Nigranigramma.....	124°	28° 15'
Antakhara	122°	27° 20'
Soudasanna	123°	26° 50'



Syrnisika	121°	26° 30'
Patistama	121°	25°
Tisapatinga	123°	24° 20'

The 'Poulindai' Agriophagoi are described as occupying the parts northward of those just mentioned. Pulinda is a name applied in Hindû works to a variety of aboriginal races. Agriophagoi is a Greek epithet, and indicates that the Pulinda was a tribe that subsisted on raw flesh and roots or wild fruits. In Yule's map they are located to the N. E. of the Ran of Kachh, lying between the Khatriaioi in the north and Larikê in the south. Another tribe of this name lived about the central parts of the Vindhya.

Khatriaioi:—According to Greek writers the people that held the territory comprised between the Hydraôtês (Râvi) and the Hyphasis (Biyas) were the Kathaioi, whose capital was Sangala. The *Mahabharata*, and the Pâli Buddhist works speak of Sangala as the capital of the Madras, a powerful people often called also the Bâhikas. Lassen, in order to explain the substitution of name, supposes that the mixture of the Madras with the inferior castes had led them to assume the name of Khattrias (Kshatriya, the warrior caste), in token of their degradation, but this is by no means probable. The name is still found spread over an immense area in the N. W. of India, from the Hindû-kôh as far as Bengal, and from Nêpâl to Gujarât, under forms slightly variant, Kathis, Kattis, Kathias, Kattris, Khattris, Khetars, Kattaour, Kattair, Kattaks, and others.



One of these tribes, the Kâthiis, issuing from the lower parts of the Panjâb, established themselves in Surâshtra, and gave the name of Kâthiâvad to the great peninsula of Gujarât. (*Étude*, p. 104).

The six towns mentioned in section 64 can none of them be identified.

65. But again, the country between Mount Sardônyx and Mount Bêtigô belongs to the Tabasoi, a great race, while the country beyond them as far as the Vindhya range, along the eastern bank of the Namados, belongs to the Prapiôtai, who include the Rhamnai, and whose towns are these:—

Kognabanda	120° 15'	23°
Ozoabis	120° 30'	23° 40'
Ostha	122° 30'	23° 30'
Kôsa, where are diamonds ..	121° 20'	22° 30'

Tabasoi is not an ethnic name, but designates a community of religious ascetics, and represents the Sanskrit *Tâpasâs*, from *tapas* 'heat' or 'religious austerity.' The haunts of these devotees may be assigned to the valley of the Tâpti or Tâpi (the Nanagouna of Ptolemy) to the south of the more western portion of the Vindhyas that produced the sardonyx.

Prapiôtai:—Lassen locates this people, including the subject race called the Rhamnai, in the upper half of the Narnadâ valley. From the circumstance that diamonds were found near Kôsa, one of their towns, he infers that their territory extended as far as the Upper Varadâ, where diamond mines were known to have existed. Kôsa was probably situated in the



neighbourhood of Baital, north of the sources of the Tâpti and the Varadâ.

Rhamnai:—The name of this people is one of the oldest in Indian ethnography. Their early seat was in the land of the Ôreitai and Arabitai beyond the Indus, where they had a capital called Rhambakia. As they were connected by race with the Brahui, whose speech must be considered as belonging to the Dêkhan group of languages, we have here, says Lassen (*Ind. Alt.* vol. III, p. 174), a fresh proof confirming the view that before the arrival of the Aryans all India, together with Gedrôsia, was inhabited by the tribes of the same widely diffused aboriginal race, and that the Rhamnai, who had at one time been settled in Gedrôsia, had wandered thence as far as the Vindhya mountains. Yule conjectures that the Rhamnai may perhaps be associated with Râmagiri, now Râmtek, a famous holy place near Nâgpûr. The towns of the Prapiôtai, four in number, cannot with certainty be identified.

66. About the Nanagonna are the Phylitai and the Bêtigoi, including the Kandaloï along the country of the Phylitai and the river, and the Ambastai along the country of the Bêtigoi and the mountain range, and the following towns:—

67. Agara	129° 20'	25°
Adeisathra	128° 30'	24° 30'
Soara ..	124° 20'	24°
Nygdosora.....	125°	23°
Anara.....	122° 30'	22° 20'



The Phyllitai occupied the banks of the Tapti lower down than the Rhamnai, and extended northward to the Sâtpura range. Lassen considers their name as a transliteration of Bhilla, with an appended Greek termination. The Bhills are a well-known wild tribe spread to this day not only on the Upper Narmadâ and the parts of the Vindhya chain adjoining, but wider still towards the south and west. In Ptolemy's time their seats appear to have been further to the east than at present. Yule thinks it not impossible that the Phyllitai and the Drilophyllitai may represent the Puṇḍa, a name which, as has already been stated, is given in Hindû works to a variety of aboriginal races. According to Caldwell (*Drav. Gram.*, p. 464) the name *Bhilla* (*vil, bil*) means 'a bow.'

Bêttigoi is the correct reading, and if the name denotes, as it is natural to suppose, the people living near Mount Bêttigô, then Ptolemy has altogether displaced them, for their real seats were in the country between the Koimbatour Gap and the southern extremity of the Peninsula.

Kandaloi:—Lassen suspects that the reading here should be Gondaloi, as the Gonds (who are nearly identical with the Khands) are an ancient race that belonged to the parts here indicated. Yule, however, points out that Kuntaladésâ and the Kantalas appear frequently in lists and in inscriptions. The country was that, he adds, of which Kalyân was in after days the capital (*Elliot, Jour. R. As. S.* vol. IV, p. 3).

Ambastai:—These represent the Ambashtha



of Sanskrit, a people mentioned in the Epics, where it is said that they fought with the club for a weapon. In the *Laws of Manu* the name is applied to one of the mixed castes which practised the healing art. A people called Ambautai are mentioned by our author as settled in the east of the country of the Paropanisadai. Lassen thinks these may have been connected in some way with the Ambastai. Their locality is quite uncertain. In Yule's map they are placed doubtfully to the south of the sources of the Mahânadi of Orissa.

Of the four towns, Agara, Soara, Nygdosora and Anara, in section 67, nothing is known.

Adeisathra:—It would appear that there were two places in Ancient India which bore the name of Ahichhatra, the one called by Ptolemy Adisara (for Adisadra), and the other as here, Adeisathra. Adisara, as has been already shown, was a city of Rohilkhand. Adeisathra, on the other hand, lay near to the centre of India. Yule quotes authorities which seem to place it, he says, near the Vindhya or the Narmadâ. He refers also to an inscription which mentions it as on the Sindhu River, which he takes to be either the Kâli-sindh of Mâlwa, or the Little Kâli-sindh further west, which seems to be the Sindhu of the *Méghadûta*. Ptolemy, singularly enough, disjoins Adeisathra from the territory of the Adeisathroi, where we would naturally expect him to place it. Probably, as Yule remarks, he took the name of the people from some Pauranic ethnic list and the name of the city from a traveller's route, and thus failed to make them fall into proper relation to each other.



CSL

68. Between Mount Bättigô and Adeisathros are the Sôrainomads, with these towns :—

Sangamarta	133°	21°
Sôra, the capital of Arkatos	130°	21°

69. Again to the east of the Vindhya range is the territory of the (Biolingaior) Bôlingai, with these towns :—

Stagabaza or Bastagaza	133°	28° 30'
Bardaôtis	137° 30'	28° 30'

Sôra designates the northern portion of the Tamiḷ country. The name in Sanskrit is Chôla, in Telugu Chola, but in Tamiḷ Sôra or Chôra. Sôra is called the capital of Arkatos. This must be an error, for there can be little doubt that Arkatos was not the name of a prince, but of a city, the Ârkâḍ of the present day. This is so suitably situated, Caldwell remarks, as to suggest at once this identification, apart even from the close agreement as far as the sound is concerned. The name is properly Âr-kâḍ, and means 'the six forests.' The Hindûs of the place regard it as an ancient city, although it is not mentioned by name in the *Purâṇas* (*Drav. Gram.*, Introd. pp. 95, 96). There is a tradition that the inhabitants of that part of the country between Madras and the Ghâts including Ârkâḍ as its centre were Kurûmbar, or wandering shepherds, for several centuries after the Christian era. Cunningham takes Arkatos to be the name of a prince, and inclines to identify Sôra with Zora or Jora (the Jorampur of the maps) an old town lying immediately under the walls of



Karnul. The Sôrai he takes to be the Suari (*Geog.* p. 547).

Biolingai or **Bôlingai**:—Ptolemy has transplanted this people from their proper seats, which lay where the Arâvali range slopes westward towards the Indus, and placed them to the east of the Vindhyas. He has left us however the means of correcting his error, for he makes them next neighbours to the Pôrvaroî, whose position can be fixed with some certainty. Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx) mentions the Bolingae and locates them properly. According to Pânini, **Bhau lingi** was the seat of one of the branches of the great tribe of the Śalvas or Śâlvas.

Stagabaza:—Yule conjectures this may be Bhôjapûr, which he says was a site of extreme antiquity, on the upper stream of the Bêtwâ, where are remains of vast hydraulic works ascribed to a king Bhôja (*J. A. S. Beng.* vol. XVI, p. 740). To account for the first part of the name *staga* he suggests the query: Tatakâ-Bhôja, the 'tank' or 'lake' of Bhoja?

Barda ôtis:—This may be taken to represent the Sanskrit Bhadrâvatî, a name, says Yule, famed in the Epic legends, and claimed by many cities. Cunningham, he adds, is disposed to identify it with the remarkable remains (pre-Ptolemaic) discovered at Bharâod, west of Rêwâ.

70. Beyond these is the country of the Pôrouaroî with these towns:—

Bridama	134° 30'	27° 30'
Tholoubana	136° 20'	27°
Malaita	136° 30'	25° 50'



71. Beyond these as far as the Ouxentos range are the Adeisathroi with these towns:—

Maleiba	140°	27° 20'
Aspathis.....	138° 30'	25° 20'
Panassa	137° 40'	24° 30'
Sagéda, the Metropolis	133°	23° 30'
Balantipyrgon	136° 30'	23° 30'

Pôrouaroi (Pôrvvaroi):—This is the famous race of the Pauravas, which after the time of Alexander was all predominant in Râjasthâna under the name of the Pramâras. The race figures conspicuously both in the legendary and real history of the North of India. It is mentioned in the hymns of the *Veda*, and frequently in the *Mahâbhârata*, where the first kings of the Lunar race are represented as being Pauravas that reigned over the realms included between the Upper Ganges and the Yamunâ. The later legends are silent concerning them, but they appear again in real history and with fresh distinction, for the gallant Pôros, who so intrepidly contended against Alexander on the banks of the Hydaspês, was the chief of a branch of the Paurava whose dominions lay to the west of that river, and that other Pôros who went on an embassy to Augustus and boasted himself to be the lord paramount of 600 vassal kings was also of the same exalted lineage. Even at the present day some of the noblest houses reigning in different parts of Râjasthân claim to be descended from the Pauravas, while the songs of the national bards still extol the vanished grandeur and the



power and glory of this ancient race. Saint-Martin locates the Pôronaroi of the text in the west of Upper India, in the very heart of the Râjput country, though the table would lead us to place them much farther to the east. In the position indicated the name even of the Pôrouaroi is found almost without alteration in the Purvar of the inscriptions, in the Pôravars of the Jain clans, as much as in the designation spread everywhere of Povars and of Pouârs, forms variously altered, but still closely approaching the classic Paurava (*Étude*, pp. 357 sqq.)

The names of the three towns assigned to the Pôrvaroi,—Bridama, Tholoubana and Malaita designate obscure localities, and their position can but be conjectured. Saint-Martin suggests that the first may be Dildana, the second Doblana, and the third Plaita, all being places in Râjputâna. Yule, however, for Bridama proposes Bardâwad, a place in a straight line from Indôr to Nimach, and for Malaita,—Maltaun; this place is in the British territory of Sagâr and Narmadâ, on the south declivity of the Naral Pass.

Adeisathroi:—It has already been pointed out that as Ptolemy has assigned the sources of the Khabêris (the Kâvêri) to his Mount Adeisathros, we must identify that range with the section of the Western Ghâts which extends immediately northward from the Koimbatour Gap. He places Adeisathros however in the central parts of India, and here accordingly we must look for the cities of the eponymous people. Five are mentioned, but Sagêda only, which was the metropolis, can be identified with some certainty. The name



represents the Sâkêta of Sanskrit. Sâkêta was another name for A y ô d h y â on the Sarayû, a city of vast extent and famous as the capital of the kings of the Solar race and as the residence for some years of Sâkyamuni, the founder of Buddhism. The Sagêda of our text was however a different city, identified by Dr. F. Hall with Têwar, near Jabalpûr, the capital of the Chêdi, a people of Bandêlakhand renowned in Epic poetry. Cunningham thinks it highly probable that the old form of the name of this people was Changêdi and may be preserved in the Sagêda of Ptolemy and in the Chi-ki-tho of Hiuen Tsiang in Central India, near the Narmadâ. He says:—
“The identification which I have proposed of Ptolemy’s Sagêda Metropolis with Chêdi appears to me to be almost certain. In the first place, Sagêda is the capital of the Adeisathroi which I take to be a Greek rendering of Hayakshêtra or the country of the Hayas or Haihayas. It adjoins the country of the Bêtigoi, whom I would identify with the people of Vakâṭaka, whose capital was Bhândak. One of the towns in their country, situated near the upper course of the Sôn, is named Balantipyrgon, or Balampyrgon. This I take to be the famous Fort of Bândogarh, which we know formed part of the Chêdi dominions. To the north-east was Panassa, which most probably preserves the name of some town on the Parnâsâ or Banâs River, a tributary which joins the Sôn to the north-east of Bândogarh. To the north of the Adeisathroi, Ptolemy places the Pôrourai or Parihârs, in their towns named Tholoubana, Bridama, and Malaita. The



first I would identify with Boriban (Bahuriband) by reading Oöloubana or Voloubana. The second must be Bilhâri; and the last may be Lameta, which gives its name to the Ghât on the Narmadâ, opposite Têwar, and may thus stand for Tripura itself. All these identifications hold so well together, and mutually support each other, that I have little doubt of their correctness." *Archæolog. Surv. of Ind.* vol. IX, pp. 55—57.

Panassa:—This in Yule's map is doubtfully placed at Panna, a decaying town in Bandelakhand with diamond mines in the neighbourhood. In the same map Baland is suggested as the representative of Balantipyrgon.

72. Farther east than the Adeisathroi towards the Ganges are the Mandalai with this city:—

Asthagoura142° 25°

73. And on the river itself these towns:—

Sambalaka141° 29° 30'

Sigalla 142° 28°

Palimbothra, the Royal resi-

dence143° 27°

Tamalitês144° 30' 26° 30'

Oreophanta146° 30' 24° 30'

74. In like manner the parts under Mount Bâtigô are occupied by the Brakhmanai Magoi as far as the Batai with this city:—

Brakhmê128° 19°

75. The parts under the range of Adeisathros as far as the Arouraioi are occupied by the Badiamaioi with this city:—

Tathilba134° 18° 50'



76. The parts under the Ouxentos range are occupied by the Drilophyllitai, with these cities:—

Sibrion	139°	22° 20'
Opotoura	137° 30'	21° 40'
Ozoana	138° 15'	20° 30'

Mandalai:—The territory of the Mandalai lay in that upland region where the Sôn and the Narmadâ have their sources. Here a town situated on the latter river still bears the name Mandalâ. It is about 50 miles distant from Jabalpûr to the south-east, and is of some historic note. Ptolemy has, however, assigned to the Mandalai dominions far beyond their proper limits, for to judge from the towns which he gives them they must have occupied all the right bank of the Ganges from its confluence with the Jamnâ downwards to the Bay of Bengal. But that this is improbable may be inferred from the fact that Palimbothra (Pâtṇâ) which the table makes to be one of their cities, did not belong to them, but was the capital of Prasiakê, which, as has already been remarked, is pushed far too high up the river. Tamalitês, moreover, which has been satisfactorily identified with Tamluk, a river port about 35 miles S. W. from Calcutta possessed, according to Wilford, a large territory of its own. The table also places it only half a degree more to the southward than Palimbothra, while in reality it is more than 3 or 4 deg. Cunningham inclines to identify with the Mandalai the Mundas of Chutia Nâgpur, whose language and country, he says, are called



Mundala, and also with the Malli of Pliny (lib. VI. c. xxi.)—*Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, pp. 508, 509.

Sambalaka:—A city of the same name attributed to Prasiakê (sec. 53) has been already identified with Sambhal in Rohilkhand. The Sambalaka of the Mandalai may perhaps be Sambhalpur on the Upper Mahânadî, the capital of a district which produces the finest diamonds in the world.

Sigalla:—This name has a suspicious likeness to Sagala, the name of the city to the west of Lâhor, which was besieged and taken by Alexander, and which Ptolemy has erroneously placed in Prasiakê (sec. 53).

Palimbothra:—The more usual form of the name is Palibothra, a transcription of Pâliputra, the spoken form of Pâṭaliputra, the ancient capital of Magadha, and a name still frequently applied to the city of Pâṭnâ which is its modern representative. In the times of Chandragupta (the Sandrokottos of the Greeks) and the kings of his dynasty, Palibothra was the capital of a great empire which extended from the mouths of the Ganges to the regions beyond the Indus. Remains of the wooden wall by which the city, as we learn from Strabo, was defended, were discovered a few years ago in Pâṭnâ (by workmen engaged in digging a tank) at a depth of from 12 to 15 feet below the surface of the ground. Palimbothra, as we have noticed, did not belong to the Mandalai but to the Prasioi.

Tamalîtês represents the Sanskrit Tâmrâ-lipti, the modern Tamruk, a town lying in a low



and damp situation on a broad reach or bay of the Rāpnārāyan River, 12 miles above its junction with the Hughli mouth of the Ganges. The Pāli form of the name was Tāmalitti, and this accounts for the form in Greek. Pliny mentions a people called Taluctae belonging to this part of India, and the similarity of the name leaves little doubt of their identity with the people whose capital was Tamluk. This place, in ancient times, was the great emporium of the trade between the Ganges and Ceylon. We have already pointed out how wide Ptolemy was of the mark in fixing its situation relatively to Palimbothra.

Brakhmanai Magoi:—Mr. J. Campbell has suggested to me that by Brakhmanai Magoi may be meant 'sons of the Brāhman,' that is, Canarese Brāhman, whose forefathers married women of the country, the word *magoi* representing the Canarese *maga*, 'a son.' The term, he says, is still in common use, added to the name of castes, as Haiga-Makalu (*makalu*—plural of *maga*) i.e. Haiga Brāhman. Lassen supposed that Ptolemy, by adding *Magoi* to the name of these Brāhman, meant to imply either that they were a colony of Persian priests settled in India, or that they were Brāhman who had adopted the tenets of the Magi, and expresses his surprise that Ptolemy should have been led into making such an unwarrantable supposition. The country occupied by these Brāhman was about the upper Kāvêri, and extended from Mount Bêttigò eastward as far as the Batai.

Brakhmê:—"Can this," asks Caldwell, "be Brahmadêsam, an ancient town on the Tāmra-



parñi, not far from the foot of the Podigei Mount (Mt. Bêttigô) which I have found referred to in several ancient inscriptions?"

Badiamaioi:—There is in the district of Belgaum a town and hill-fort on the route from Kalâdgi to Balâri, not far from the Mâlprabhâ, a tributary of the Krishnâ, called Badâmi, and here we may locate the Bâdiamaioi. Tathilba, their capital, cannot be recognized.

Drilophyllitai:—These are placed by Ptolemy at the foot of the Ouxentos, and probably had their seats to the south-west of that range. Their name indicates them to have been a branch of the Phyllitai, the Bhills, or perhaps Pulindas. Lassen would explain the first part of their name from the Sanskrit *dridha* (strong) by the change of the *dh* into the liquid. Ozonana, one of their three towns is, perhaps, Seoni, a place about 60 miles N. E. from Nâgpur.

77. Further east than these towards the Ganges are the Kokkonagai with this city:—

Dôsara142° 30' 22° 30'

78. And on the river farther west:—

Kartinaga146° 23°

Kartasina146° 21° 40'

79. Under the Maisôloi the Salakênôï towards the Oroudian (or Arouraian) Mountains with these cities:—

Bênagouron140° 20° 15'

Kastra138° 19° 30'

Magaris137° 30' 18° 20'



80. Towards the Ganges River the Sabarai, in whose country the diamond is found in great abundance, their towns are :—

Tasopion	140° 30'	22°
Karikardama.....	141°	20° 15'

81. All the country about the mouths of the Ganges is occupied by the Gangaridai with this city :—

Gangê, the Royal residence...	146°	19° 15'
-------------------------------	------	---------

Kokkonagai:—Lassen locates this tribe in Chutia Nâgpur, identifying Dôsara with Doesâ in the hill country, between the upper courses of the Vaitarani and Suvarnarékha. He explains their name to mean the people of the mountains where the *lôka* grows,—*kôka* being the name of a kind of palm-tree. Yule suggests that the name may represent the Sanskrit Kâkamukha, which means 'crow-faced,' and was the name of a mythical race. He places them on the Upper Mahânadi and farther west than Lassen. The table gives them two towns near the Ganges.

Kartinaga and Kartasina :—The former, Yule thinks, may be Karnagarh near Bhâgalpur, perhaps an ancient site, regarding which he refers to the *Jour. E. As. Soc.* vol. XVIII, p. 395; Kartasina he takes to be Karnasônagarh, another ancient site near Berhampur (*J. R. A. S. N. S.*, vol. VI, p. 248 and *J. As. S. Beng.*, vol. XXII, p. 281).

Salakênôï :—This people may be located to the west of the Gôdâvari, inland on the north-western borders of Maisôlia. Their name, Lassen



thought (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 176) might be connected with the Sanskrit word *Sāla*, the Sāl tree. Yule suggests that it may represent the Sanskrit Saurikirṇa. None of their towns can be recognized.

Sabarai:—The Sabarai of Ptolemy Cunningham takes to be the Suari of Pliny, and he would identify both with the aboriginal Śavaras or Suars, a wild race who live in the woods and jungles without any fixed habitations, and whose country extended as far southward as the Pennār River. These Śavaras or Suars are only a single branch of a widely spread race found in large numbers to the S. W. of Gwalior and Narwar and S. Rājputāna, where they are known as Surrius. Yule places them farther north in Dōsarêṇê, towards the territory of Sambhalpur, which, as we have already remarked, produced the finest diamonds in the world. Their towns have not been identified.

Gangaridai:—This great people occupied all the country about the mouths of the Ganges. Their capital was Gangê, described in the *Periplus* as an important seat of commerce on the Ganges. They are mentioned by Virgil (*Georg.* III, l. 27), by Valerius Flaccus (*Argon.* lib. VI, l. 66), and by Curtius (lib. IX, c. ii) who places them along with the Pharrasii (Prasii) on the eastern bank of the Ganges. They are called by Pliny (lib. VI, c. lxy) the Gangaridae Calingae, and placed by him at the furthest extremity of the Ganges region, as is indicated by the expression *gens novissima*, which he applies to them. They must have been a powerful people, to judge from the military force



which Pliny reports them to have maintained, and their territory could scarcely have been restricted to the marshy jungles at the mouth of the river now known as the Sundarbans, but must have comprised a considerable portion of the province of Bengal. This is the view taken by Saint-Martin. Bengal, he says, represents, at least in a general way, the country of the Gangaridae, and the city which Pliny speaks of as their capital, Parthalis can only be Vardhana, a place which flourished in ancient times, and is now known as Bardhwan. The name of the Gangaridai has nothing in Sanskrit to correspond with it, nor can it be a word, as Lassen supposed, of purely Greek formation, for the people were mentioned under this name to Alexander by one of the princes in the North-west of India. The synonymous term which Sanskrit fails to supply is found among the aboriginal tribes belonging to the region occupied by the Gangaridai, the name being preserved almost identically in that of the Gônghris of S. Bahâr, with whom were connected the Gaugayis of North-western, and the Gaugrâr of Eastern Bengal, these designations being but variations of the name which was originally common to them all.

G a n g ê :—Various sites have been proposed for Gangê. Heeren placed it near Duliapur, a village about 40 miles S. E. of Calcutta on a branch of the Isamati River; Wilford at the confluence of the Ganges and Brahmaputra, where, he says, there was a town called in Sanskrit Hastimalla, and (in the spoken dialect Hâthimalla, from elephants being picquetted there; Murray at



Chittagong; Taylor on the site of the ancient Hindu Capital of Baṅga (Bengal) which lies in the neighbourhood of Sonargâon (Suvarnagrâma), a place 12 miles to the S. E. of Dhakka; Cunningham at Jêsor; and others further west, near Calcutta, or about 30 miles higher up the Hughli, somewhere near Chinsurâ. Another Gangê is mentioned by Artemidoros above or to the N. W. of Palibothra, and this Wilford identifies with Prayâg, i.e., Allahâbâd, but Groskurd with Anupshahr.

Ptolemy now leaves the Gangetic regions and describes the inland parts of the territories along the Western Coast of the Peninsula.

82. In the parts of Ariakê which still remain to be described are the following inland cities and villages: to the west of the Bênda these cities:—

Malippala	119° 30'	20° 15'
Sarisabis	119° 30'	20°
Tagara	118°	19° 20'
Baithana (the royal seat of [Siro])		
Ptolemaios or Polemaios)...	117°	18° 30'
Deopali or Deopala	115° 40'	17° 50'
Gamaliba	115° 15'	17° 20'
Omênogara	114°	16° 20'

83. Between the Bênda and Pseudostomos :

Nagarouris (or Nagarouraris)	120°	20° 15'
Tabasô	121° 30'	20° 40'
Indê	123°	20° 45'
Tiripangalida,.....	121° 15'	19° 40'



Hippokoura, the royal seat of

Balekourros	119° 45'	19° 10'
Souboutton.....	120° 15'	19° 10'
Sirimalaga	119° 20'	18° 30'
Kalligeris	118°	18°
Modogoulla	119°	18°
Petirgala	117° 45'	17° 15'
Banaouasei.....	116°	16° 45'

Seven cities are enumerated in *Ariakê*, as lying to the west of the *Bênda*, and regarding four of these, *Malippala*, *Sarisabis*, *Gamaliba* and *Omênogara*, nothing is known. The *Periplûs* (sec. 51) notices *Tagara* and *Baithana* in a passage which may be quoted: "In *Dakhinabades* itself there are two very important seats of commerce, *Paithana* towards the south of *Barygaza*, from which it is distant a twenty days' journey, and eastward from this about a ten days' journey is another very large city, *Tagara*. From these parts goods are transported on waggons to *Barygaza* through difficult regions that have no road worth calling such. From *Paithana* great quantities of onyx-stones and from *Tagara* large supplies of common cotton-cloth, muslins of all kinds, mallow-tinted cottons and various other articles of local production imported into it from the maritime districts."

Baithana is the *Paithana* of the above extract, and the *Paithân* of the present day, a town of *Haidarâbâd*, or the territory of the *Nizam*, on the left bank of the river *Gôdâvari*, in latitude 19° 29' or about a degree further north than it is placed by *Ptolemy*. *Paithana* is the *Prâkrit* form



of the Sanskrit *Pratishṭhāna*, the name of the capital of Śālivāhana. Ptolemy calls it the capital of Siroptolemaios or Siropolemaios, a name which represents the Sanskrit Śrī-Pulômāvit, the Pulumāyi of the Nasik Cave and Amarāvati Stūpa Inscriptions, a king of the great Andhra dynasty.

Tagara :—The name is found in inscriptions under the form *Tagarapura* (*J. E. A. S.* vol. IV, p. 34). Ptolemy places it to the north-east of Baithana and the *Periplūs*, as we see from the extract, to the east of it at the distance of a ten days' journey. Wilford, Vincent, Mannert, Ritter and others take it to be Dēvagadh, now Daulatābād, which was the seat of a sovereign even in 1293, and is situated not far from Ēlura, so famous for its excavated temples. But if Baithana be Paithan, Tagara cannot be Dēvagadh, unless the distance is wrongly given. There is, moreover, nothing to show that Dēvagadh was connected with the Tagarapura of the inscriptions. Paṇḍit Bhagvānlāl identified Tagara with Junnar, a place of considerable importance, situated to the north of Pūnā. He pointed out that the Sanskrit name of Tagara was Trigiri a compound meaning 'three hills,' and that as Junnar stood on a high site between three hills this identification was probably correct. Junnar however lies to the westward of Paithan. Yule places Tagara at Kulburga, which lies to the south-east of Paithan, at a distance of about 150 miles, which would fairly represent a ten days' journey, the distance given in the *Periplūs*. Grant Duff would identify it with a place near Bhîr on the Gôdāvarî, and Fleet with Kolhâpur. The Silahâra



princes or chiefs who formed three distinct branches of a dynasty that ruled over two parts of the Konkan and the country about Kolhâpur style themselves, 'The Lords of the excellent city of Tagara.' If, says Prof. Bhandârkar, the name of Tagara has undergone corruption, it would take the form, according to the laws of Prâkrit speech, of Târur or Têrur, and he therefore asks 'can it be the modern Dârur or Dhârur in the Nizam's dominions, 25 miles east of Grant Duff's Bliir, and 70 miles S. E. of Paithan?' (see Muller's *Geog. Græc. Minor.* vol. I, p. 294, n.; Elphinstone's *History of India*, p. 223; Burgess, *Arch. Surv. W. Ind.* vol. III, p. 54; and *Bombay Gazetteer*, vol. XIII, pt. ii, p. 423, n.). Mr. Campbell is of opinion that the maritime districts from which local products were brought to Tagara and thence exported to Barygaza, lay on the coast of Bengal, and not on the Konkan coast, from which there was easy transit by sea to the great northern emporium in the Gulf of Khambât, while the transit by land through Tagara could not be accomplished without encountering the most formidable obstacles.

Deopali:—This name means 'the city of God,' and Deopali may therefore perhaps be Dêvagadh, the two names having the same meaning.

Tabasô:—This would seem to be a city of the Tabasoi, already mentioned as a large community, of Brâhman ascetics.

Hippokoura:—A town of this name has already been mentioned as a seaport to the south of Simylla. This Hippokoura lay inland, and was



the capital of the southern parts of Ariakês, as Paithana was the capital of the northern. Its position is uncertain. Yule places it doubtfully at Kalyân, a place about half a degree to the west of Bidar, and at some distance south from the river Mañjirâ. Ptolemy calls it the capital of Baleokouros. Bhândârkar conjectures this to have been the Viñivâyakura, a name found upon two other Andhra coins discovered at Kôlhâpur. There is no other clue to its identification, but see Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. III, pp. 179, 185.

Sirimalaga may perhaps be Mâlkhêd, a town in Haidarâbâd, situated on a tributary of the Bhîmâ, in lat. $17^{\circ} 8'$ and long. $77^{\circ} 12'$. The first part of the word *Siri* probably represents the Sanskrit honorific prefix *śrī*.

Kalligeris:—Perhaps Kaṇhagiri, a place about $\frac{1}{2}$ a degree to the south of Mûdgal.

Modogoulla:—There can be little doubt that this is Mûdgal, a town in the Haidarâbâd districts,—lat. $16^{\circ} 2'$, long. $76^{\circ} 26'$,—N. W. from Balâri. Petirgala cannot be identified.

Banaouasei:—This place is mentioned in the *Mahāvânso*, in the Pâli form Wanawâsi, by which a city or district is designated. Banaouasei must beyond doubt have been the capital of this country, and is identical with the modern Banavâsi, situated on the upper Varadâ, a tributary of the Tungabhadrá. Saint-Martin thinks that it was the city visited by Hiuen Tsiang, and called by him Kon-kin-na-pu-lo, *i.e.*, Konkaraṇapura; Cunningham is of opinion that both the bearing and the distance point to Ânagundi, but Dr. Burgess suggests Kôkanûr for Kôn-kin-na-pu-lo.



f 84. The inland cities of the Pirates are these:—

Olokhoira	114°	15°
Mousopallé, the metropolis ..	115° 30'	15° 45'

85. Inland cities of Limyrikê, to the west of the Pseudostomos are these:—

Naroulla	117° 45'	15° 50'
Kouba	117°	15°
Paloura	117° 51'	14° 40'

86. Between the Pseudostomos and the Baris, these cities:—

Pasagê	124° 50'	19° 50'
Mastanour	121° 30'	18° 40'
Kourellour	119°	17° 30'
Pounnata, where is beryl ...	121° 20'	17° 30'
Aloê	120° 20'	17°

Karoura, the royal seat of

Kêrobothros	119°	16° 20'
Arembour	121°	16° 20'
Bideris	119°	15° 50'
Pantipolis	118°	15° 20'
Adarima	119° 30'	15° 40'
Koreour	120°	15°

87. Inland town of the Aïoi:—

Morounda	121° 20'	14° 20'
----------------	----------	---------

The dominion of the sea appears to have satisfied the ambition of the pirates, as they possessed on shore only a narrow strip of territory enclosed between the line of coast and the western declivities of the Ghâts. Their capital, Mousopallé, Yule places at Miraj, a town near the Krishnâ, but doubtfully. Their other town, Olokhoira,



is probably Khêdâ, a town in the district of Ratnagiri in lat. $17^{\circ} 44'$ long. $73^{\circ} 30'$. As Khêdâ is the name of several other places in this part of the country, *Olo*, whatever it may mean, may have been in old times prefixed to this particular Khêdâ for the sake of distinction.

Kouba:—This is generally taken to be Goa or Govâ, the capital of the Portuguese possessions in India, and there can be little doubt of the correctness of the identification. The two towns Naroulla and Paloura, which Ptolemy places with Kouba to the west of the Pseudostomos, cannot be identified. To judge from his figures of longitude, Paloura lay $15'$ farther east than Kouba, but as he makes the coast run eastward instead of southward, it must be considered to have lain south of Kouba. The name is Tamil, and means, according to Caldwell (*Introd.* p. 104) 'Milk town.' It is remarkable, he observes, how many names of places in Southern India mentioned by Ptolemy end in *ούρ* or *ούρα* = 'a town.' There are 23 such places in all.

Pasagê:—According to Yule's map this represents Palsagi, the old name of a place now called Halsi, south-east of Goa, from which it is distant somewhat under a degree.

Mastanour and Kourellour cannot be identified.

Pounnata has not yet been identified, though Ptolemy gives a sort of clue in stating that it produced the beryl. Yule places it in his map near Seringapatam. (See *Ind. Ant.* vol. XII, p. 13).

Alôê:—This may be Yellapur, a small town in North Canara, in lat. $14^{\circ} 56'$ long. $74^{\circ} 43'$.



Karoura:—"Karoura," says Caldwell, "is mentioned in Tamil traditions as the ancient capital of the Chêra, Kêra, or Kêrala kings, and is generally identified with Karûr, an important town in the Koimbatar district, originally included in the Chêra kingdom. It is situated on the left bank of the river Amarâvati, a tributary of the Kâvêri, near a large fort now in ruins. Ptolemy notes that Karoura was the capital of Kêrobothros, *i.e.*, Kêralaputra (Cherapati?) Karûra means 'the black town,' and I consider it identical with Kâragam, and Kadâram, names of places which I have frequently found in the Tamil country, and which are evidently the poetical equivalents of Karûr. The meaning of each of the names is the same. Ptolemy's word Karoura represents the Tamil name of the place with perfect accuracy." (*Introd.* pp. 96, 97).

Arembour:—Lassen compares this name with Oorumparum, but the situation of the place so called (lat. $11^{\circ} 12'$ long. $76^{\circ} 16'$) does not suit well the position of Arembour as given by Ptolemy.

Bideris:—Perhaps Erod or Yirodu in the district of Koimbatar (lat. $11^{\circ} 20'$ long. $77^{\circ} 46'$) near the Kâvêri.

Pantipolis, according to Yule, represents the obsolete name Pantiyapura, which he places at Hangal, in the Dhârwâd district.

Morounda:—This is the only inland city of the Aïoi named by Ptolemy. It has not been identified.

The concluding tables enumerate the inland towns belonging to the districts lying along the Eastern Coast of the Peninsula.



88. Inland cities of the Kareoi:—

Mendêla	123°	17° 40'
Sêlour	121° 45'	16° 30'
Tittoua	122°	15° 20'
Mantittour	123°	15° 10'

89. Inland cities of the Pandionoi:—

Tainour	124° 45'	18° 40'
Peringkarei	123° 20'	18°
Korindiour	125°	17° 40'
Tangala or Taga	123° 30'	16° 50'
Modouira, the royal city of Pandion	125°	16° 20'
Akour	124° 45'	15° 20'

90. Inland cities of the Batoi:—

Kalindoia	127° 40'	17° 30'
Bata.....	126° 30'	17°
Talara	128°	16° 45'

Inland cities of the Kareoi:—none of the four named in the table can be identified.

Peringkarei:—This town has preserved its name almost without change, being now known as Perungari, on the river Vaigai, about 40 miles lower down its course than Madurâ. With regard to this name, Caldwell remarks that if it had been written Perungkarei it would have been perfectly accurate Tamil, letter for letter. The meaning is 'great shore,' and *perum* 'great' becomes *perung* before *k*, by rule. Ptolemy places a town called Tainour at the distance of less than a degree to the north-east of Peringkarei. The direction would suit Tanjor, but the distance is more than a



degree. Ptolemy has however placed his Pering-karei quite in a wrong position with regard to Madurâ.

T a n g a l a or T a g a :—There can be little doubt that this is now represented by Diṇḍugal, an important and flourishing town lying at a distance of 32 miles north by west from Madurâ.

M o d o u r a :—This is now called Madurâ or Madurai—on the banks of the River Vaigai. It was the second capital of the Southern Pândyas; we have already noticed it in the description of the territory of this people.

B a t a :—This may perhaps be Paṭṭukôṭṭa, a small town not very far inland from the northern end of the Argolic Gulf (Palk's Passage). The other two towns of the Batoi cannot be recognized. As Pudukôṭṭa is the capital of the Tondiman Râja, Lassen has suggested its identity with Bata. It is upwards of 20 miles farther inland than Paṭṭukôṭṭa.

91. Inland cities of the Paralia of the Sârêtai:—

Kaliour	129°	17° 20'
Tennagora	132°	17°
Eikour	129°	16° 40'
Orthoura, the royal city of		
Sôrnagos	130°	16° 20'
Beré	130° 20'	16° 15'
Abour	129°	16°
Karmara	130° 20'	15° 40'
Magour.....	130°	15° 15'



92. The inland cities of the Arvarnoi are these:—

Kerange	133°	16° 15'
Phrounion	132°	15°
Karigê	132° 40'	15°
Poleour.....	131° 30'	14° 40'
Pikendaka	131° 30'	14°
Iatour	132° 30'	14°
Skopoloura	134° 15'	14° 35'
Ikarta	133° 30'	13° 40'
Malanga, the royal city of Basaronagos.....	133°	13°
Kandipatna	133° 30°	12° 20'

93. The inland cities of the Maisôloi:—

Kalliga.....	138°	17°
Bardamana	136° 15'	15° 15'
Koroungkala	135°	15°
Pharytra or Pharetra.....	134° 20'	13° 20'
Pityndra, the metropolis ...	135° 20'	12° 30'

Orthoura:—Of the eight inland cities named as belonging to the maritime territory of the Sôrêtai, only two—Abour and the capital, have been identified. Abour is Âmbârdurg in N. Arkat, lat. 12° 47', long. 78° 42'. Regarding Orthoura Cunningham says: "Chôla is noticed by Ptolemy, whose *Orthura regia Sornati* must be Uriûr, the capital of Soranâtha, or the king of the Soringae, that is the Sôras, Chôras or Chôlas. Urayûr is a few miles south-south-east of Tiruchhinâpalli. The Soringae are most probably the Syrieni of Pliny, with their 300 cities, as they occupied the coast



between the Pandae and the Derangae or Dravidians."—*Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, p. 551.

Phrourion.—This is a Greek word signifying 'a garrisoned fort,' and may perhaps be meant as a translation of an indigenous name having that signification, as Durga, 'a hill-fort,' a common affix to names of places in the Peninsula.

Karigê.—This should no doubt be read Karipê under which form it can be at once identified with Kaḍapâ, a place lying 5 miles from the right bank of the Northern Pennâr on a small tributary of that river.

Pikendaka.—*Konda* is a frequent termination in the names of towns in this part of India. The letters of Pikendaka may have been transposed in copying, and its proper form may have been Pennakonda, the name of a town in the district of Balâri (lat. 14°5' long. 77° 39').

Iatour.—From Yule's map it would appear there is a place lying a degree westward from Kaḍapâ which still bears this name, Yêtûr.

Malanga.—In our notice of Melangê it was pointed out that Cunningham had fixed the locality of Malanga near Êlur, a place some distance inland about half way between the Kṛishnâ and the Gôdâvarî towards their embouchures, and in the neighbourhood of which are the remains of an old capital named Veṅgî. With regard to the king's name Bassaronaga, he thinks that this may be identified with the Pali Majêrika-nâga of the *Mahâwanso* and thus Ptolemy's Malanga would become the capital of the Nâgas of Majerika, *Anc. Geo. of Ind.*, (pp. 539, 540). In Yule's



map Malanga is placed conjecturally about two degrees farther south at Velur, near the mouth of the Pennâr.

Of the five cities attributed to the Maisôloi, only Koroungkala can be recognized. It appears to be the place now known as Worañkal, the mediæval capital of Telingana. It has but few tokens remaining to attest its former grandeur.

Pityndra, the capital of Maisôlia, was probably Dhanakataka now Dharanikôta, about 20 miles above Bêjwâdâ on the Krishnâ.

94. Islands lying near the part of India which projects *into the ocean* in the Gulf of Kanthi :—

Barakê 111° 18°

95. And along the line of coast as far as the Kolkhic Gulf :—

Milizêgyris (or Milizigêris)..	110°	12° 30'
Heptanôsia	113°	13°
Trikadiba	113° 30'	11°
Peperinê	115°	12° 40'
Trinêsia	116° 20'	12°
Leukê	118°	12°
Nanigêris.....	122°	12°

96. And in the Argaric Gulf :—

Kôry 126° 30'—13°

Barakê :—This is the name given in the *Periplus* to the Gulf of Kachh, called by our author the Gulf of Kanthi, a name which to this day is applied to the south coast of Kachh. The *Periplus* does not mention Barakê as an island, but says that the Gulf had 7 islands. Regarding



Barakê, Dr. Burgess says: "Yule places Barakê at Jaggat or Dwârakâ; Lassen also identifies it with Dwârakâ, which he places on the coast between Purbandar and Miyânî, near Śrînagar. Mula-Dwârakâ, the original site, was further east than this, but is variously placed near Mâdhupur, thirty-six miles north-west from Sômanâth-Pattan, or three miles south-west from Kôdinâr, and nineteen miles east of Sômanâth. This last spot is called Mula-Dwârakâ to this day." (*Târîkh-i-Sôrah*, Introd. p. 7).

Milizêgyris occurs in the *Periplûs* as Melizeigara, which may be identified with Jayagaḍ or Sidi-Jayagaḍ, which would appear to be the Sigerus of Pliny (lib. vi, c. 26).

Heptanêsia (or group of 7 islands) probably corresponded to the Sesikrienai of the *Periplûs*, which may be the Burnt Islands of the present day, among which the Vingôrîlâ rocks are conspicuous.

Trikadiba or 'the island Trika,'—*diba* being the Sanskrit word *dvîpa*, 'an island.'

Peperinê:—This, to judge from the name, should be an island somewhere off the coast of Cottonara, the great pepper district, as stated by Pliny (lib. VI, c. xxvi).

Trinêsia (or group of 3 islands):—Ptolemy places it off the coast of Limyrikê between Tyndis and Mouziris, but nearer the former.

Leukê:—This is a Greek word meaning 'white.' The island is placed in the *Periplûs* off the coast where Limyrikê begins and in Ptolemy near where it ends.

Nanigôris:—To judge from Ptolemy's



figures he has taken this to be an island lying between Cape Kumârî (Comorin) and Taprobanê (Ceylon).

Kôry:—It has already been noticed that Kôry was both the name of the Island of Râmêśvaram and of the promontory in which it terminated.

CAP. 2.

Position of India beyond the Ganges.

1. India beyond the Ganges is bounded on the west by the river Ganges; on the north by the parts of Skythia and Sêrikê already described, on the east by the Sinai along the Meridian, which extends from the furthest limits of Sêrikê to the Great Gulf, and also by this gulf itself, on the south by the Indian Ocean and part of the Green Sea which stretches from the island of Menouthias in a line parallel to the equator, as far as the regions which lie opposite to the Great Gulf.

India beyond the Ganges comprised with Ptolemy not only the great plain between that river and the Himâlayas, but also all south-eastern Asia, as far as the country of the Sinai (China). Concerning these vast regions Ptolemy is our only ancient authority. Strabo's knowledge of the east was limited in this direction by the Ganges, and the author of the *Periplus*, who was a later and intermediate writer, though he was aware that inhabited countries stretched far beyond that limit even onwards to the eastern end of the world, appears to have learned little more



about them than the mere fact of their existence. Ptolemy, on the other hand, supplies us with much information regarding them. He traces the line of coast as far as the Gulf of Siam (his Great Gulf) enumerating the tribes, the trading marts, the river mouths and the islands that would be passed on the way. He has also a copious nomenclature for the interior, which embraces its inhabitants, its towns, its rivers, and its mountain ranges. His conceptions were no doubt extremely confused and erroneous, and his data, in many instances, as inconsistent with each other as with the reality. Still, his description contains important elements of truth, and must have been based upon authentic information. At the same time an attentive study of his nomenclature and the accompanying indications has led to the satisfactory identification of a few of his towns, and a more considerable number of the rivers and mountains and tribes which he has specified.

His most notable error consisted in the supposition that the eastern parts of Asia were connected by continuous land with the east coast of Africa, so that, like Hipparkhos, he conceived the Indian Ocean to resemble the Mediterranean in being surrounded on all sides by land. He makes accordingly the coast of the Sinai, beyond the Gulf of Siam, turn toward the south instead of curving up towards the north. Again he represents the Malay Peninsula (his Golden Khersonese) which does not project so far as to reach the equator, extend to 4 degrees southward from it, and he mentions neither the Straits of Malacca nor the great island of Sumatra, unless indeed



CSL

his Iabadios be this island, and not Java, as is generally supposed. By the Green Sea (*Πρασώδης θάλασσα*) which formed a part of the southern boundary is meant the southern part of the Indian Ocean which stretched eastward from Cape Prasum (Cape Delgado) the most southern point on the east coast of Africa known to Ptolemy. The island of Menouthias was either Zanzibar or one of the islands adjacent to it. It is mentioned by the author of the *Periplus*.

In his description of India beyond the Ganges Ptolemy adheres to the method which he had followed in his account of India within the Ganges. He therefore begins with the coast, which he describes from the Eastern Mouth of the Ganges to the Great Promontory where India becomes conterminous with the country of the Sinai. The mountains follow, then the rivers, then the towns in the interior, and last of all the islands.

2. The seacoast of this division is thus described. In the Gangetic Gulf beyond the Mouth of the Ganges called Antibolei:—

The coast of the Airrhadoi:—

Pentapolis	150°	18°
Mouth of River Katabéda...	151° 20′	17°
Barakoura, a mart	152° 30′	16°
Mouth of the River Tokosanna	153°	14° 30′

Wilford, probably misled by a corrupt reading, took the name of the Airrhadoi to be another form of Antibole. He says (*Asiat. Research.*, Vol. XIV, p. 444) "Ptolemy says that the easternmost branch of the Ganges was called Antibolé



CSL

or Airrhadon. This last is from the Sanskrit Hradâna; and is the name of the Brahmaputra. Antibole was the name of a town situated at the confluence of several large rivers to the S. E. of Dhakka and now called Feringibazar." By the Airrhadoi, however, are undoubtedly meant the Kirâta. With regard to the position here assigned to them Lassen thus writes (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, pp. 235-237):—"By the name Kirradia Ptolemy designates the land on the coast of further India from the city of Pentapolis, perhaps the present Mirkanserai in the north, as far as the mouth of the Tokosanna or Arakan river. The name of this land indicates that it was inhabited by the Kirâta, a people which we find in the great Epic settled in the neighbourhood of the Lauhitya, or Brahmaputra, consequently somewhat further to the north than where Ptolemy locates them. Hence arises the question whether the Kirâta who, as we know, belong to the Bhoṭa, and are still found in Nâpâl had spread themselves to such a distance in earlier times, or whether their name has been erroneously applied to a different people. The last assumption is favoured by the account in the *Periplus*, according to which ships sailing northward from Dôsarênê, or the country on both sides of the Vaitarani, arrived at the land of the wild flat-nosed Kirradai, who like the other savage tribes were men-eaters. Since the author of that work did not proceed beyond Cape Comorin, and applied the name of Kirâta to a people which lived on the coast to the S. W. of the Ganges, it is certain that he had erroneously used this name to denote the wild and fabulous races. Ptolemy must have fol-



lowed him or other writers of the kind, and to the name Kirāta has given a signification which did not originate with himself. Although the Kirāta, long before the time in which he lived, had wandered from their northern Fatherland to the Himālaya and thence spread themselves to the regions on the Brahmaputra, still it is not to be believed that they should have possessed themselves of territory so far south as Chaturgrāma (Chittagong) and a part of Arakan. We can therefore scarcely be mistaken if we consider the inhabitants of this territory at that time as a people belonging to further India, and in fact as tribal relatives of the Tamerai, who possessed the mountain region that lay back in the interior, as I shall hereafter show. I here remark that between the name of the city Pentapolis, *i.e.* five cities, and the name of the most northern part of Kirradia, Chaturgrāma, *i.e.* four cities, there is a connexion that can scarcely be mistaken, since Chaturgrāma could not originally have denoted a country, but only a place which later on became the capital, though it was originally only the capital of four village communities over which a common headship was possessed, while Pentapolis was the seat of a headship over five towns or rather villages, as it can scarcely be believed that the rude tribes of Kirradia were civilized enough to possess towns. A confirmation of this view is offered by the circumstance that the Bunzu, who must have been descendants of a branch of the Tamerai, live in villages under headships. We must further state that according to the treatises used by Ptolemy the best *Malabathrum* was got from Kirradia. I



see no reason to doubt the correctness of this statement, although the trees from which this precious oil and spice were prepared and which are different kinds of the laurel, do not appear at the present day to be found in this country, since, according to the testimony of the most recent writers the botanical productions of Arakan at least have not as yet been sufficiently investigated. It can, however, be asserted that in Silhet, which is not very remote from Chaturgrāma, *Malabuthrum* is produced at this very day." Saint-Martin expresses similar views. He writes (*Étude*, pp. 343, 344). "The Kirrhadia of Ptolemy, a country mentioned also in the *Periplus* as lying west from the mouths of the Ganges and the Skyritai of Megasthenes are cantons of Kirāta, one of the branches of the aboriginal race the widest spread in Gangetic India, and the most anciently known. In different passages of the *Purānas* and of the epics their name is applied in a general manner to the barbarous tribes of the eastern frontiers of Āryavarta, and it has preserved itself in several quarters, notably in the eastern districts of Nēpāl. There is a still surviving tradition in Tripuri (Tipperah), precisely where Ptolemy places his Kirrhadia, that the first name of the country was Kirāt (*J. A. S. Beng.*, Vol. XIX., Long, *Chronicles of Tripurā*, p. 536.) The Tamerai were a tribe of the same family."

Mouth of the River Katabēda :—This may be the river of Chittagong called the Karma-phuli. The northern point of land at its mouth is, according to Wilford (*Asiat. Research.* vol. XIV, p. 445) called Pattana, and hence he thinks



that Chatgrâm or Chaturgrâm (Chittagong) is the Pentapolis of Ptolemy for Pattanphulli, which means 'flourishing seat.' The same author has proposed a different identification for the Katabêda River. "In the district of Sandowê," he says, "is a river and a town called in modern maps Sedoa for Saindwa (for Sandwipa)" and in Ptolemy S a d u s and S a d a. Between this river and Arakan there is another large one concealed behind the island of Cheduba, and the name of which is Kâtâbaidâ or Kâtâbaiza. This is the river Katâbêda of Ptolemy, which, it is true, he has placed erroneously to the north of Arakan, but as it retains its name to this day among the natives, and as it is an uncommon one in that country, we can hardly be mistaken. As that part of the country is very little frequented by seafaring people the Kâtâbaidâ is not noticed in any map or sea chart whatever. It was first brought to light by the late Mr. Burrows, an able astronomer, who visited that part of the coast by order of Government. In the language of that country *kâtâ* is a fort and Byeitzâ or Baidzâ is the name of a tribe in that country." (*Asiat. Res.*, vol. XIV, pp. 452, 453).

Barakoura:—This mart is placed in Yule's map at Râmâi, called otherwise Râmu, a town lying 68 miles S.S.E. of Chittagong.

Mouth of the Tokosanna:—This river Wilford and Lassen (*Ind. All.*, vol. III, p. 237) identified with the Arakan river. Yule prefers the Nâf, which is generally called the Teke-nâf, from the name of a tribe inhabiting its banks.



3. That of the Silver country (*Argyra*).

Sambra, a city.....	153° 30'	13° 45'
Sada, a city	154° 20°	11° 20'
Mouth of the River Sados...	153° 30'	12° 30'
Bêrabonna, a mart	155° 30'	10° 20'
The mouth of the River		
Têmala	157° 30'	10°
Têmala, a city	157° 30'	9°
The Cape beyond it	157° 20'	8°

4. That of the Bêsyngeitai Cannibals on the Sarabakic Gulf where are—

Sabara, a city	159° 30'	8° 30'
Mouth of the River Bêsynga	162° 20'	8° 25'
Bêsynga, a mart	162°	9°
Bêrabai, a city	162° 20'	6°
The Cape beyond it	159°	4° 40'

Arakan is no doubt the Silver Country, but the reason why it should have been so designated is not apparent, since silver has never so far as is known, been one of its products. It appears to have included part of the province of Pegu, which lies immediately to the south of it.

S a d a :—This town is mentioned in that part of Ptolemy's introductory book (ch. xiii, § 7) of which a translation has been given, as the first port on the eastern side of the Gangetic Gulf at which ships from Paloura on the opposite coast touched before proceeding to the more distant ports of the Golden Khersonese and the Great Gulf. It cannot be with certainty identified. "It may perhaps have been Ezata, which appears in Pegu legend as the name of a port between Pegu



and Bengal.”—Yule, quoting *J. A. S. Beng.*, vol. XXVIII, p. 476.

Bêrabonna:—The same authority suggests that this may be Sandowê, which Wilford proposed to identify with Sada.

Têmala is the name of a town, a river, and a cape. In the introductory book (c. xiii, § 8) it is called Tamala, and said to lie to the south-east of Sada, at a distance of 3500 stadia. Yule would identify it, though doubtfully, with Gwa. Lassen again places it at Cape Negrals, which is without doubt the promontory which Ptolemy says comes after Têmala.

The **Sarabakic Gulf** is now called the Gulf of Martaban:—The name (*Bêsingytai*) of the cannibals is partly preserved in that of Bassein, which designates both a town and the river which is the western arm of the *Irâwadi*. Ptolemy calls this river the *Bêsingga*. The emporium of the same name Lassen takes to be *Rangûn*, but the similarity of name points to its identification with Bassein, an important place as a military position, from its commanding the river.

Bêrabai:—Beyond this Ptolemy has a promontory of the same name, which may be Barago Point. The names at least are somewhat similar and the position answers fairly to the requirements. Lassen took *Bêrabai*, the town, to be Martaban.

5. That of the Golden Kheronese
(*Χρυσῆς Χερσονήσου*)

Takôla, a mart	160°	4° 15'
The Cape beyond it	158° 40'	2° 40'



CSL

Mouth of the River Khryso-		
nas	159°	1°
Sabana, a mart	160°	3°S.L.
Mouth of the River Palandos	161°	2°S.L.
Cape Maleou Kôlon	163°	2°S.L.
Mouth of the River Attaba	164°	1°S.L.
Kôli, a town.....	164° 20'	on the equator
Perimoula	163° 15'	2° 20'
Perimoulik Gulf.....	168° 30'	4° 15'

The Golden Khersonese denotes generally the Malay Peninsula, but more specially the Delta of the Irâwadi, which forms the province of Pegu, the Suvarnabhumi (Pali form,—*Sovan-nabhumi*) of ancient times. The Golden Region which lies beyond this, in the interior, is Burmâ, the oldest province of which, above Ava, is still, as Yule informs us, formally styled in State documents *Sonaparânta*, *i. e.* 'Golden Frontier.'²⁶

Takôla:—Rangûn, as Yule points out, or a port in that vicinity, best suits Ptolemy's position with respect to rivers, &c.,²⁷ while at the same

²⁶ Thornton notices in his *Gazetteer of India* (s. v. *Burma*) that when Colonel Burney was the resident in Ava, official communications were addressed to him under the authority of the "Founder of the great golden city of precious stones; the possessor of mines of gold, silver, rubies, amber and noble serpentine."

²⁷ Dr. Forchammer in his paper on *the First Buddhist Mission to Suvarnabhûmi*, pp. 7, 16, identifies Takôla with the Burman Kola or Kula-taik and the Talaing Taikkulâ, the ruins of which are still extant between the present Ayeththima and Kinyua, now 12 miles from the sea-shore, though it was an important seaport till the 16th century.—J. B.



time Thakalai is the legendary name of the founder of Rangûn Pagoda. There was, however, he says, down to late mediæval times, a place of note in this quarter called Takkhala, Takola, or Tagala, the exact site of which he cannot trace, though it was apparently on the Martaban side of the Sitang estuary.

Mouth of the K h r y s o a n a River:—This must be the Eastern or Rangûn mouth of the Irâwadi, for, as Yule states on the authority of Dr. F. Mason, Hmâbi immediately north of Rangûn was anciently called Suvarnanadi, *i. e.* 'Golden River,' and this is the meaning of Khrysoana.

S a b a n a :—This may be a somewhat distorted form of Suvarna, 'golden-coloured,' and the mart so called may have been situated near the mouth of the Saluen River. Yule therefore identifies it with Satung or Thatung. Lassen assigns it quite a different position, placing it in one of the small islands lying off the southern extremity of the Peninsula.

Cape M a l e o u K ô l o n :—Regarding this Yule says, "Probably the Cape at Amherst. Mr. Crawford has noticed the singular circumstance that this name is pure Javanese, signifying "Western Malays." Whether the name Malay can be so old is a question; but I observe that in Bastian's *Siamese Extracts*, the foundation of Takkhala is ascribed to the Malays." Lassen places it much further south and on the eastern coast of the Peninsula, identifying it with Cape Romania (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 232).

K ô l i :—In the *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, vol. IV, p. 639 ff, Colonel



Yule has thrown much light on Ptolemy's description of the coast from this place to Kattigara by comparing the glimpse which it gives us of the navigation to China in the 1st or 2nd century of our era with the accounts of the same navigation as made by the Arabs seven or eight centuries later. While allowing that it would be rash to dogmatize on the details of the trans-gangetic geography, he at the same time points out that the safest guide to the true interpretation of Ptolemy's data here lies in the probability that *the nautical tradition was never lost*. He calls attention also to the fact that the names on the route to the Sinae are many of them Indian, specifying as instances Sabana, Pagrasa, R. Sôbanos, Tipônobastê, Zaba, Tagora, Balonga, Sinda, Aganagara, Brama, Ambastas, Rabana, River Kottianis, Kokkonagara, &c. At Kôli the Greek and Arab routes first coincide, for, to quote his words, "I take this Kôli to be the Kalah of the Arabs, which was a month's sail from Kaulam (Quilon) in Malabar, and was a place dependent on the Mahârâja of Zâbaj (Java or the Great Islands) and near which were the mountains producing tin. Ko-lo is also mentioned in the Chinese history of the T'ang dynasty in terms indicating its position somewhere in the region of Malaka. Kalah lay on the sea of Shalâhit (which we call Straits of Malaka), but was not very far from the entrance to the sea of Kadranj, a sea which embraced the Gulf of Siam, therefore I presume that Kalah was pretty far down the Malay Peninsula. It may, however, have been Kadah, or Quedda as we write it,



for it was 10 days' voyage from Kalah to Tiyūmah (Batūmah, Koyūmah). Now the Sea of Kadranj was entered, the Perimulic Gulf of Ptolemy."

Perimulic Gulf :—Pliny mentions an Indian promontory called Perimula where there were very productive pearl fisheries (lib. VI, c. 54), and where also was a very busy mart of commerce distant from Patala, 620 Roman miles (lib. VI, c. 20). Lassen, in utter disregard of Pliny's figures indicating its position to be somewhere near Bombay, placed it on the coast of the Island of Manâr. In a note to my translation of the *Indika* of Megasthenes I suggested that Perimula may have been in the Island of Salsette. Mr. Campbell's subsequent identification of it however with Simylla (Tiamula) where there was both a cape and a great mart of trade I think preferable, and indeed quite satisfactory. But, it may be asked, how came it to pass that a place on the west coast of India should have the same name as another on the far distant Malay coast. It has been supposed by way of explanation that in very remote times a stream of emigration from the south-eastern shores of Asia flowed onward to India and other western countries, and that the names of places familiar to the emigrants in the homes they had left were given to their new settlements. There is evidence to show that such an emigration actually took place. Yule places the Malay Perimula at Pahang. The Perimulic Gulf is the Gulf of Siam, called by the Arabs, as already stated, the Sea of Kadranj. Lassen takes it to be only an indentation of the



Peninsular coast by the waters of this Gulf, which in common with most other writers he identifies with Ptolemy's Great Gulf.

6. That of the Léstai (Robber's country).

Samaradê.....	163°	4° 50'
Pagrasa.....	165°	4° 50'
Mouth of the River Sôbanos	165° 40'	4° 45'
(Fontes Fluvii) ²⁵	162° 30'	13°
Pithônobastê, a mart.....	166° 20'	4° 45'
Akadra.. ..	167°	4° 45'
Zabai, the city.....	168° 40'	40° 45'

7. That of the Great Gulf.

The Great Cape where the

Gulf begins	169° 30'	4° 15'
Thagora	168°	6°
Balonga, a Metropolis	167° 30'	7°
Throana	167°	8° 30'
Mouth of the River Doanas.	167°	10°
(Sources of a river) ²⁵	163°	27°
Kortatha, a metropolis	167°	12° 30'
Sinda, a town	167° 15'	16° 40'
Pagrasa	167° 30'	14° 30'
Mouth of the River Dôrias.	168°	15° 30'
(Sources of a river) ²⁵	163°	27°
or (Tab. Geog.)	162°	20° 28'
Aganagara	169°	16° 20'
Mouth of the River Sêros ...	171° 30'	17° 20'
(Sources of a river) ²⁵ ...170° (½ add. Tab.)		32°
(Another source) ²⁵ ...173° (½ add. Tab.)		30°
(The confluence) ²⁵	171°	27°

²⁵ Additions of the Latin Translator.



CSL

The end of the Great Gulf

towards the Sinai 173° 17° 20'

Samaradê:—This coincides with Samarat, the Buddhistic classical name of the place commonly called Ligor (*i. e.* *Nagara*, 'the city'), situated on the eastern coast of the Malay Peninsula and subject to Siam.

Mouth of the River Sôbanos:—Sôbanos is the Sanskrit *Suvarṇa*, in its Pali form *Sobanna*, which means 'golden.' One of the old cities of Siam, in the Meinam basin was called *Sobanapuri*, *i. e.* 'Gold-town.'

Pithônabastê, Yule thinks, may correspond to the Bungpasoi of our maps at the mouth of the large navigable river Bangpa-Kong. It is at the head of the Gulf of Siam eastward of Bangkok.

Akadra:—Yule would identify this with the Kadranj of the Arabs, which he places at Chantibon on the eastern coast of the gulf.

Zabai:—This city, according to Ptolemy, lay to the west of the Doanas, or Mekong river, and Yule therefore identifies it with the seaport called *Sanf* or *Chanf* by the Arab navigators. *Sanf* or *Chanf* under the limitations of the Arabic alphabet represents *Champâ*, by which the southern extremity of Cochin-China is designated. But *Champâ* lies to the south of the Mekong river, and this circumstance would seem to vitiate the identification. Yule shows, however, that in former times *Champâ* was a powerful state, possessed of a territory that extended far beyond its present limits. In the travels of Hiuen Tsiang (about A. D. 629) it is called *Mahâchampâ*. The locality of the



ancient port of Zabai or Champã is probably therefore to be sought on the west coast of Kamboja, near the Kampot, or the Kang-kae of our maps. (See *Ind. Ant.*, vol. VI, pp. 228-230).

By the Great Gulf is meant the Gulf of Siam, together with the sea that stretches beyond it towards China. The great promontory where this sea begins is that now called Cape Kamboja.

Sinda was situated on the coast near Pulo Condor, a group of islands called by the Arabs Sandar-Fulât and by Marco Polo Sondur and Condur. Yule suggests that these may be the Satyrs' Islands of Ptolemy, or that they may be his Sinda.

8. The mountains in this division are thus named :—

Bépyrrhos, whose extremities lie in	148°	34°
and.....	154°	26°
and Maiandros, whose extremities lie		
in	152°	24°
and.....	160°	16°
and Damassa (or Dobassa), whose		
extremities lie in	162°	23°
and.....	166°	33°
and the western part of Sémanthinos,		
whose extremities lie in	170°	33°
and.....	180°	26°

Bépyrrhos:—The authorities are pretty well agreed as to the identification of this range. “Bépyrrhos,” says Lassen (*Ind. Alt.*, vol I., pp. 549-50) “answers certainly to the Himâlaya from the sources of the Sarayû to those of the Tista.” “Ptolemy,” says Saint-Martin (*Étude*, p. 337)



“applies to a portion of the Himālayan chain the name of Bêpyrrhos, but with a direction to the south-east which does not exist in the axis of this grand system of mountains. In general, his notions about the Eastern Himālayas are vague and confused. It is the rivers which he indicates as flowing from each group, and not the position which he assigns to the group itself that can serve us for the purpose of identification. He makes two descend from Bêpyrrhos and run to join the Ganges. These rivers are not named, but one is certainly the Kauśikī and the other ought to be either the Gandakī or the Tista.” Yule remarks, “Ptolemy shows no conception of the great Brahmaputra valley. His Bêpyrrhos shuts in Bengal down to Maeandrus. The latter is the spinal range of Arakan (Yuma), Bêpyrrhos, so far as it corresponds to facts, must include the Sikkin Himālaya and the Gāro Hills. The name is perhaps Vipula—‘vast,’ the name of one of the mythical cosmic ranges but also a specific title of the Himālaya.”

Mount Maiandros:—From this range descend all the rivers beyond the Ganges as far as the Bêsyinga or Bassein river, the western branch of the Irāwadi. It must therefore be the Yuma chain which forms the eastern boundary of Arakan, of which the three principal rivers are the Mayu, the Kula-dan and the Lé-myo. According to Lassen Maiandros is the graecized form of Mandara, a sacred mountain in Indian mythology.

Dobassa or Damassa range:—This range contributes one of the streams which form the great river Doanas, Bêpyrrhos which is further to



the west, contributing the other confluent. A single glance at the map, Saint-Martin remarks (*Étude*, p 338), clearly shows that the reference here is to the Brahmaputra river, whose indigenous name, the Dihong, accounts readily for the word Doanas. It would be idle, he adds, to explain where errors so abound, what made Ptolemy commit the particular error of making his Doanas run into the Great Gulf instead of joining the eastern estuary of the Ganges. The Dobassa Mountains, I therefore conclude, can only be the eastern extremity of the Himâlaya, which goes to force itself like an immense promontory into the grand elbow which the Dihong or Brahmaputra forms, when it bends to the south-east to enter Asâm. If the word Dobassa is of Sanskrit origin, like other geographical appellations applied to these eastern regions, it ought to signify the 'mountains that are obscure,'—*Tâmasa Parvata*. Yule (quoting *J. A. S. Beng.* vol. XXXVII, pt. ii, p. 192) points out that the Dimasas are mentioned in a modern paper on Asâm, as a race driven down into that valley by the immigration of the Bhôtiyas. This also points to the Bhôtân Himâlayas as being the Damassa range, and shows that of the two readings, Dobassa and Damassa, the latter is preferable.

Mount Sêmanthinos is placed 10 degrees further to the east than Maiandros, and was regarded as the limit of the world in that direction. Regarding these two Sanskrit designations, Saint-Martin, after remarking that they are more mythic than real, proceeds to observe: "These Oriental countries formed one of the



CSL

horizons of the Hindu world, one of the extreme regions, where positive notions transform themselves gradually into the creations of mere fancy. This disposition was common to all the peoples of old. It is found among the nations of the east no less than in the country of Homer. Udayagiri,—the mountain of the east where the sun rises, was also placed by the Brahmanik poets very far beyond the mouths of the Ganges. The Sēmanthinôś is a mountain of the same family. It is the extreme limit of the world, it is its very girdle (*Samanta* in Sanskrit). In fine, Purānik legends without number are connected with Mandara, a great mountain of the East. The fabulous character of some of these designations possesses this interest with respect to our subject, that they indicate even better than notions of a more positive kind the primary source of the information which Ptolemy employed. The Maiandros, however, it must be observed, has a definite locality assigned it, and designates in Ptolemy the chain of heights which cover Arakan on the east.”

9. From Bēpyrrhos two rivers discharge into the Ganges, of which the more northern has its sources in 148° 33°
 and its point of junction with
 the Ganges in 140° 15' 30° 20'
 The sources of the other
 river are in 142° 27°
 and its point of junction with
 the Ganges in 144° 26°

10. From Maiandros descend the rivers beyond the Ganges as far as the Bēsunga River,



but the river Sêros flows from the range of Sêmanthinos from two sources, of which the most western lies in 170° 30' 32° and the most eastern in..... 173° 30' 30° and their confluence is in ... 171° 27°

11. From the Damassa range flow the Daonas and Dôrias (the Daonas runs as far as to Bêpyrrhos)

and the Dôrias rises in 164° 30' 28°

Of the two streams which unite to form the Daonas that from the Damassa range rises in 162° 27° 30'

that from Bêpyrrhos rises in 153° 27° 30'

The two streams unite in ... 160° 20' 19°

The river Sôbauas which flows from Maiandros rises in 163° 30' 13°

12. The rivers which having previously united flow through the Golden Khersonese from the mountain ridges, without name, which overhang the Khersonese—the one flowing into the Khersonese first detaches from it the Attabas in about 161° 2° 20' and then the Khrysoanas in about 161° 1° 20' and the other river is the Palandas.

Nearly all the rivers in the foregoing table have already been noticed, and we need here do little more than remind the reader how they have been identified. The two which flow from Bêpyrrhos into the Ganges are the Kauśikī and the Tista. The Bêsynga is the Bassein River or Western branch of the Irāwaḍī. The Sêros enters the



CSL

sea further eastward than any of the other rivers, probably in Champâ, the Zaba of Ptolemy, while Lassen identifies it with the Mekong. The Daonâs is no doubt the Brahmaputra, though Ptolemy, taking the estuary of the Mekong or Kamboja river to be its mouth, represents it as falling into the Great Gulf. It was very probably also, to judge from the close resemblance of the names when the first two letters are transposed, the Oidanes of Artemidôros, who, according to Strabo (lib. XV, c. i; 72), describes it as a river that bred crocodiles and dolphins, and that flowed into the Ganges. Curtius (lib. VIII, c. 9) mentions a river called the Dyardanes that bred the same creatures, and that was not so often heard of as the Ganges, because of its flowing through the remotest parts of India. This must have been the same river as the Oidanes or Doanas, and therefore the Brahmaputra. The Dôrias is a river that entered the Chinese Sea between the Mekong Estuary and the Séros. The Sobanas is perhaps the river Meinam on which Bangkok, the Siamese capital, stands. The Attabas is very probably the Tavoy river which, though its course is comparatively very short, is more than a mile wide at its mouth, and would therefore be reckoned a stream of importance. The similarity of the names favours this identification. The Khysoana is the eastern or Rangûn arm of the Irâwadi. The Palandas is probably the Salyuen River.

Ptolemy now proceeds to describe the interior of Transgangetic India, and begins with the tribes or nations that were located along the banks of the Ganges on its eastern side.



13. The regions of this Division lying along the course of the Ganges on its eastern side and furthest to the north are inhabited by the *G a n g a n o i*, through whose dominions flows the river *Sarabos*, and who have the following towns :—

Sapolos.....	139° 20'	35°
Storna	138° 40'	34° 40'
Heorta	138° 30'	34°
Rhappa	137° 40'	33° 40'

For *G a n g a n o i* should undoubtedly be read *T a n g a n o i*, as *Taṅgaṇa* was the name given in the heroic ages to one of the great races who occupied the regions along the eastern banks of the upper Ganges. Their territory probably stretched from the *Rāmgāṅgā* river to the upper *Sarayū*, which is the *Sarabos* of Ptolemy. Their situation cannot be more precisely defined, as none of their towns named in the table can with certainty be recognized. “Concerning the people themselves,” says Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp. 327, 328) “we are better informed. They are represented in the *Mahābhārata* as placed between the *Kirāta* and the *Kulīnda* in the highlands which protected the plains of *Kōsala* on the north. They were one of the barbarous tribes, which the Brahmanic *Āryans*, in pushing their conquests to the east of the Ganges and *Jamnā*, drove back into the *Himālayas* or towards the *Vindhya*s. It is principally in the *Vindhya* regions that the descendants of the *Taṅgaṇa* of classic times are now to be found. One of the *Rājput* tribes, well-known in the present day under the name of *Taṅk* or *Toṅk* is



settled in Rohilkhand, the very district where the *Mahābhārata* locates the Taṅgaṇa and Ptolemy his Tanganoi. These Tank Rājputs extend westward to a part of the Doāb, and even as far as Gujarāt, but it is in the race of the Daṅgayas, spread over the entire length of the Vindhya Mountains and the adjacent territory from the southern borders of the ancient Magadha to the heart of Mālwa to the north of the lower Narmadā, it is in this numerous race, subdivided into clans without number, and which is called according to the districts inhabited Dhāngis, Dhāngars, Doṅga, &c. that we must search for the point of departure of the family and its primordial type. This type, which the mixture of Āryan blood has modified and ennobled in the tribes called Rājput, preserves its aboriginal type in the mass of mountain tribes, and this type is purely Mongolian, a living commentary on the appellation of Mlechha, or Barbarian, which the ancient Brahmanic books apply to the Taṅgaṇa." (Conf. *Bṛih. Saṁh.* ix, 17; x, 12; xiv, 12, 29; xvi, 6; xvii, 25; xxxi, 15 *Rāmāyaṇa* iv, 44, 20).

The towns, we have said, cannot be identified with certainty, but we may quote Wilford's views as to what places now represent them. He says (*Asiat. Research.* vol. XIV, p. 457): "The Bān or Śaraban river was formerly the bed of the Ganges and the present bed to the eastward was also once the Bān or Śaraban river. This Ptolemy mistook for the Rāmagaṅgā, called also the Bān, Śaraban and Śarāvati river, for the four towns which he places on its banks, are either on the old or the new bed of the Ganges. Storna and Sapolos



are Hastnaura, or Hastina-nagara on the old bed, and Sabal, now in ruins, on the eastern bank of the new bed, and is commonly called Sabalgarh. Hastinâpur is 24 miles S. W. of Dârânagar, and 11 to the west of the present Ganges; and it is called Hastnawer in the *Ayin Akbari*. Heorta is Awartta or Hardwâr. It is called Arate in the *Pentinger* tables, and by the Anonymous of Ravenna."

14. To the south of these are the Maroundai who reach the Gangarîdai, and have the following towns on the east of the Ganges :—

Boraita	142° 20'	29°
Kôrygaza	143° 30'	27° 15'
Kondôta	145°	26°
Kelydna	146°	25° 30'
Aganagora	146° 30'	22° 30'
Talarga	146° 40'	21° 40'

The Maroundai occupied an extensive territory, which comprised Tirhut and the country southward on the east of the Ganges, as far as the head of its delta, where they bordered with the Gangarîdai. Their name is preserved to this day in that of the Mândas, a race which originally belonged to the Hill-men of the North, and is now under various tribal designations diffused through Western Bengal and Central India, "the nucleus of the nation being the Ho or Hor tribe of Singhbhûm.²⁰ They are probably the *Monedes* of

²⁰ *J. A. S. B.*, vol. XXXV, p. 168. The Mûnda tribes as enumerated by Dalton, *id.* p. 158, are the Kuars of Pichpur, the Korewas of Sirgûja and Jaspur, the Kherias of Chutia Nâgpur, the Hor of Singhbhûm, the Bhumij of



whom Pliny speaks, in conjunction with the *Suari*. That they were connected originally with the *Muraṇḍa*, a people of *Lampāka* (*Lamghān*) at the foot of the *Hindu-Kôh* mentioned in the inscription on the *Allâhâbâd* pillar, along with the *Śaka*, as one of the nations that brought tributary gifts to the sovereign of India, is sufficiently probable³⁰; but the theory that these *Muraṇḍa* on being expelled from the valleys of the *Kôphês* by the invasion of the *Yetha*, had crossed the *Indus* and advanced southwards into India till they established themselves on the *Ganges*, in the kingdom mentioned by *Ptolemy*, is, as *Saint-Martin* has clearly proved (*Etude*, pp. 329, 330) utterly untenable, since the sovereign to whom the *Muraṇḍa* of the north sent their gifts was *Samudragupta*, who reigned subsequently to the time of *Ptolemy*, and they could not therefore have left their ancestral seats before he wrote. *Saint-Martin* further observes that not only in the case before us but in a host of analogous instances, it is certain that tribes of like name with tribes in India are met with throughout the whole extent of the region north of the *Indus*, from the eastern extremity of the *Himâlaya* as far as the *Indus* and the *Hindu-Kôh*, but this he points out is attributable to causes more general than the partial migration of certain tribes. The *Vayu Purāna* mentions the *Muraṇḍa* among the *Mlechha* tribes which gave kings to

Mānbhūm *Dhalbhūm*, and the *Sântals* of *Mānbhūm* *Singhbhūm*, *Katak*, *Hâzâribâgh* and the *Bhâgalpur* hills. The western branches are the *Bhills* of *Mâlwa* and *Kānhdés* and the *Kôlis* of *Gujarât*.

³⁰ *Mahâbh.* vii, 4847; *Reinaud*, *Mém. sur l'Inde*, p. 353 *Lassen*, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 877.—Ed.



India during the period of subversion which followed the extinction of the two great Aryan dynasties. See Cunningham, *Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, pp. 505-509, also Lassen, *Ind. All.*, vol. III, pp. 186f. 155-157, and vol. II, p. 877n.

Regarding the towns of the Maroundai, we may quote the following general observations of Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp. 331, 332). "The list of towns attributed to the Maroundai would, it might be expected, enable us to determine precisely what extent of country acknowledged in Ptolemy's time the authority of the Maranda dynasty, but the corruption of many of the names in the Greek text, the inexactitude or insufficiency of the indications and, in fine, the disappearance or change of name of old localities, render recognition often doubtful, and at times impossible." He then goes on to say: "The figures indicating the position of these towns form a series almost without any deviation of importance, and betoken therefore that we have an itinerary route which cuts obliquely all the lower half of the Gangetic region. From B o r a i t a to K e l y d n a this line follows with sufficient regularity an inclination to S. E. to the extent of about 6 degrees of a great circle. On leaving Kelydna it turns sharply to the south and continues in this direction to T a l a r g a, the last place on the list, over a distance a little under four degrees. This sudden change of direction is striking, and when we consider that the Ganges near Rājmahal alters its course just as sharply, we have here a coincidence which suggests the enquiry whether near the point where the Ganges so suddenly bends, there is a place having a name something like



Kelydua, which it may be safely assumed is a bad transcription into Greek of the Sanskrit Kâlinadî ('black river') of which the vulgar form is Kâlindî. Well then, Kâlindî is found to be a name applied to an arm of the Ganges which communicates with the Mahânandâ, and which surrounds on the north the large island formed by the Mahânandâ and Ganges, where once stood the famous city of Gâuḍa or Gaur, now in ruins. Gâuḍa was not in existence in Ptolemy's time, but there may have been there a station with which if not with the river itself the indication of the table would agree. At all events, considering the double accordance of the name and the position, it seems to me there is little room to doubt that we have there the locality of Kelydna. The existing town of Mâldâ, built quite near the site of Gaur, stands at the very confluence of the Kâlindî and Mahânandâ. This place appears to have preserved the name of the ancient Malada of the Purânîk lists, very probably the Molindai of Megasthenês. This point being settled, we are able to refer thereto the towns in the list, both those which precede and those which follow after. We shall commence with the last, the determination of which rests on data that are less vague. These are Aganagara and Talaria. The table, as we have seen, places them on a line which descends towards the sea exactly to the south of Kelydna. If, as seems quite likely, these indications have been furnished to Ptolemy by the designating of a route of commerce towards the interior, it is natural to think that this route parted from the great emporium of the Ganges (the Gangê Regia of Ptolemy, the



Ganges emporium of the *Periplus*) which should be found, as we have already said, near where Hūghli now stands. From Kelydna to this point the route descends in fact exactly to the south, following the branch of the Ganges which forms the western side of the delta. The position of Aghadīp (Agadvīpa) on the eastern bank of the river a little below Katwā, can represent quite suitably Aganagora (Aganagara); while Talarga may be taken to be a place some leagues distant from Calcutta, in the neighbourhood of Hūghli. . . . The towns which precede Kelydna are far from having the same degree of probability. We have nothing more here to serve for our guidance than the distances taken from the geographical notations, and we know how uncertain this indication is when it has no check to control it. The first position above Kelydna is Kōndota or Pōndota; the distance represented by an arc of two degrees of a great circle would conduct us to the lower Bagamati (Bhagavati). Korygaza or Sorygaza (distant $\frac{1}{2}$ degree) would come to be placed perhaps on the Gandakī, perhaps between the Gandakī and the lower Sarayū; last of all Boraita, at two degrees from Korygaza, would conduct us to the very heart of ancient Kōsala, towards the position of the existing town of Bardā. We need scarcely add, in spite of the connexion of the last two names, that we attach but a faint value to determinations which rest on data so vague." Boraita may be, however, Bharēch in Aūdī, as Yule has suggested, and with regard to Korygaza, it may be observed that the last part of the name may represent the Sanskrit *kachha*,



which means a marsh or place near a marsh, and hence Korygaza may be Gorakhpur, the situation of which is notably marshy.

15. Between the Imaös and Bépyrrhos ranges the Takoraioi are farthest north, and below them are the Korangkaloï, then the Passalai, after whom to the north of Maïandros are the Tiladai, such being the name applied to the Bêsèidai, for they are short of stature and broad and shaggy and broad-faced, but of a fair complexion.

Takoraioi:—This tribe occupied the valleys at the foot of the mountains above Eastern Kôsala and adjoined the Tanganoi. The Taṅgaṇas are mentioned among the tribes of the north in the lists of the *Bṛihat Saṁhitâ* (IX, 17; X, 12; XIV, 29). They have left numerous descendants in different parts of Gangetic India. A particular clan in Rohilkhand not far from the seats of the Takoraioi preserves still the name under the form Dakhaura (Elliot's *Supplementary Glossary of Indian terms*, p. 360), and other branches are met with near the Jamnâ and in Râjputâna. Towards the east again the Dekra form a considerable part of the population of Western Asâin (*J. A. S. Beng.*, vol. XVIII, p. 712).

Korangkaloï:—These are probably of the same stock, if not actually the same people, as Korankâra of the *Purdûas* (*Asiat. Research.*, vol. VIII), and the Kyankdanis of Shékavati. Their position is near the sources of the Gaṇḍak.

Passalai:—The Passalai here mentioned are not to be confounded with the Passalai of the Doâb.



In the name is easily to be recognized the Vaisâli of Hinen Tsiang, which was a small kingdom stretching northward from the Ganges along the banks of the river Gandak. The capital had the same name as the kingdom, and was situated in the immediate neighbourhood of Hâjipur, a station near the junction of the Gandak and Ganges, where a great fair is annually held, distant from Pâna about 20 miles. "Here we find the village of Besârî, with an old ruined fort, which is still called Raja Bisal-ka-garh, or the fort of Raja Visala, who was the reputed founder of the ancient Vaisâli." (Cunningham, *Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, p. 443).

Tiladai :—We here leave the regions adjoining the Ganges, and enter the valleys of the Brahmaputra. The Tiladai are called also Bêsadai or Basadai. Ptolemy places them above the Maiandros, and from this as well as his other indications, we must take them to be the hill-people in the vicinity of Silhet, where, as Yule remarks, the plains break into an infinity of hillocks, which are specially known as *tîla*. It is possible, he thinks, that the Tiladai occupied these *tîlas*, and also that the Tiladri hills (mentioned in the *Kshetra Samâsa*) were the same *Tîlas*. The same people is mentioned in the *Periplûs*, but under the corrupt form of Sêsatai. The picture drawn of them by the author of that work corresponds so closely with Ptolemy's, that both authors may be supposed to have drawn their information from the same source. We may quote (in the original) what each says of them :—

Periplûs : ἔθνος τι, τῶ μὲν σώματι κολοβοὶ καὶ



σφάδρα πλατυπρόσωποι, ἐννοίαις δὲ λῦστοι αὐτοῖς
[δὲ] λέγεσθαι [φασί] Σησάτας, παρομοίους ἀνημέροις.

Ptolemy : εἰσὶ γὰρ κολοβοὶ, καὶ πλατεῖς, καὶ
δασεῖς, καὶ πλατυπρόσωποι, λευκοὶ μέντοι τὰς χροάς.

*Description of the regions which extend from
the Brahmaputra to the Great Gulf.*

16. Beyond Kirrhadia, in which they
say the best *Malabathrum* is produced, the
Zamîrai, a race of cannibals, are located near
Mount Maiandros.

17. Beyond the Silver Country, in which
there are said to be very many silver mines,
(μέταλλα ἀσήμου), is situated in juxtaposition to
the Bésyngeitai, the Gold Country (Χρυσή
χώρα), in which are very many gold mines, and
whose inhabitants resemble the Zamîrai, in
being fair-complexioned, shaggy, of squat figure,
and flat-nosed.

Kirrhadia:—This has been already noticed.
With reference to its product *Malabathrum*, which
is not betel, but consists of the leaves of one or
more kinds of the cinnamon or cassia-tree. I may
quote the following passage from the *J. A. S. Beng.*,
vol. XVI, pp. 38-9:—“*Cinnamomum albiflorum* is
designated *taj*, *tejpāt* in Hindustani, the former
name being generally applied to the leaf and the
latter to the bark of the tree; *taj*, *tejpata*, or *tejapata*,
by all which names this leaf is known, is used
as a condiment in all parts of India. It is indigen-
ous in Silhet, Asām, Rungpur (the Kirrhadia of
Ptolemy), and in the valleys of the mountain-range
as far as Masuri. The dry branches and leaves



are brought annually in large quantities from the former place, and sold at a fair, which is held at Vikramapura. *Taj*, however, is a name that is also given in the eastern part of Bengal to the bark of a variety of *Cinnamomum Zeylanicum* or *Cassia lignea*, which abounds in the valleys of Kachâr, Jyntiya and Asâm." The word *Malabathrum* is a compound of *tamala* (the Sanskrit name of *Cinnamomum albiflorum*) and *pâtra*, 'a leaf.' Another derivation has been suggested *mâlâ*, 'a garland,' and *pâtra* 'a leaf.' (Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. I, p. 283 seq., and conf. Dymock's *Veget. Mat. Med.*, p. 553).

The following interesting passage describes the mode in which the Bêsadai trade in this article with the Chinese. I translate from the *Periplus*, cap. 65:—"On the confines of Thina is held an annual fair attended by a race of men called the Sôsatai, who are of a squat figure, broad-faced, and in appearance like wild beasts, though all the same they are quite mild and gentle in their disposition. They resort to this fair with their wives and children, taking great loads of produce packed in mats like the young leaves of the vine. The fair is held where their country borders on that of the Thinaï. Here, spreading out the mats they use them for lying on, and devote several days to festivity. This being over, they withdraw into their own country and the Thinaï, when they see they have gone, come forward and collecting the mats, which had been purposely left behind, extract first from the Calami (called Petroi), of which they were woven, the sinews and fibres, and then taking the leaves fold them double and roll them up into balls through which they pass the fibres of the



Calami. The balls are of three kinds, and are designated according to the size of the leaf from which they are made, *hadro*, *meso* and *mikrosphairon*. Hence there are three kinds of *Malabathrum*, and these are then carried into India by the manufacturers.

Zamûrai:—A various reading is Zamernai. It has been already stated that this was a tribe of the same family as the Kirâta, beside whom they are named in the great geographical catalogue of the *Mahabharata*. Ramifications of the Zamûrai still exist under the names of Zamarias, Tomara, &c., in the midst of the savage districts which extend to the S. and S.E. of Magadha, and to the west of the Sôn.

The silver country, it has already been noticed, is Arakan, and the gold country and copper country. Yule remarks, correspond curiously even in approximate position with the Sonaparânta (golden frontier land), and Zampadîpa of Burmese state-documents. The Malay peninsula, taken generally, has still many mines both of the precious and the useful metals.

18. And, again, between the ranges of Bêpyrrhos and Damassa, the country furthest north is inhabited by the Aninakhai (or Aminakhai), south of these the Indapraithai, after these the Ibêringai, then the Dabasai (or Damassai?), and up to Maiandros the Nangalogai, which means "the World of the Naked" (*γυμνῶν κόσμος*).

19. Between the Damassa range and the frontiers of the Sinai are located furthest



north the Kakobai; and below them the Basanârai.

20. Next comes the country of K h a l k î t i s, in which are very many copper mines. South of this, extending to the Great Gulf the K o u d o u t a i, and the B a r r h a i, and, after them the I n d o i, then the D o â n a i, along the river of the same name.

21. To these succeeds a mountainous country adjoining the country of Robbers (*Ἀπορῶν*) wherein are found elephants and tigers. The inhabitants of the Robber country are reported to be savages (*θηριώδεις*), dwelling in caves, and that have skins like the hide of the hippopotamus, which darts cannot pierce through.

Aninakhai:—The position Ptolemy assigns to them is the mountain region to the north of the Brahmaputra, corresponding to a portion of Lower Asâm.

Indaprathai:—This is a purely Hindu name. In Sanskrit documents and in inscriptions mention is made of several towns in the provinces of the Ganges, which had taken the name of the old and famous Indraprastha (the modern Delhi), and we may conclude that the Indaprâthai of the East were a Brahmanic settlement. In subsequent times Sanskrit designations spread further down into the Dekhan with the cultus, either of the Brahmans or the Buddhists. Instances in point are Modura and Kosamba, which have been already noticed. The



Indaprâthai appear to have established themselves in the districts S. of the Brahmaputra, and of the Aninakhai.

Ibêringai and Dabasai or Damassai:—The Damassai (now the Dimasas as already noticed), occupied the region extending from their homonymous mountains to the Brahmaputra, but further to the east than the Aninakhai and Ibêringai.

Nangalogai:—Many tribes still existing on the hills, east and north-east of Silhet, are called Nâgas. This name, which is given correctly in Ptolemy as Nanga, is the Indian word for *naked*, and according to Yule it is written *Nanga* in the Musalman History of Asâm. The absolute nakedness of both sexes, he says, continues in these parts to the present day. The latter half of the name *lôg* (Sanskrit *lôk*), is the Indian term for *people*, *mankind*, or *the world*, as Ptolemy has it.

With regard to the other tribes enumerated, Saint Martin remarks (*Étude*, pp. 345-6):—“The Ibêringai are still a tribe of the north just as the Dabassaç, perhaps on the mountains of the same name. There is still a tribe of Dhobas in Dinajpur, one of the districts of the north-east of Bengal, on the confines of the ancient Kâmarûpa. To the east of the Dobassa mountains, towards the frontiers of the Sinai, the tribe of the Kakobai is found to a surety in that of the Khokus, who occupy the same districts. The Basannarae, in a locality more southern, are very probably the Bhanzas, a tribe of the mountains to the south of Tippera, east of the mouth of the Brahmaputra. In the Koudoutai and the Barrhai, it is easy to



recognize, though Ptolemy carries them too far into the south, the Kolitas and the Bhars or Bhors, two of the most notable parts of the population of Western Asâm, and of the districts of Bengal that belong to Kâmarûpa. The Doânai or Daouai are perpetuated in the Zaôn of Eastern Asâm; and the name of the Lêstae, the last of the list, corresponds to all appearance to that of the Lepchhas, a well-known mountain race on the confines of Sikkim to the west of the Tistâ." For notices of the tribes which he has thus identified with those of Ptolemy, he refers to the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, vols. VI, IX, XIV, and XVIII. His identification of the Lêstai with the Lepchhas is in every way unfortunate. That the name *Λησταί* is not a transcript of any indigenous name, but the Greek name for *robbers* or *pirates*, is apparent from the fact alone that the η has the *iôta* subscribed. The Lepchhas, moreover, live among mountains, far in the interior, while Ptolemy locates his Lêstai along the shores of the Gulf of Siam.

Ptolemy gives next a list of 33 towns in the interior by way of supplement to those already mentioned as situated along the course of the Ganges, followed by a list of the towns in the Golden Khersonese:—

22. The inland towns and villages of this division (Transgangetic India), in addition to those mentioned along the Ganges are called:—

Sêlampoura	148° 30'	33° 20'
Kanogiza	143°	32°



Kassida	146°	31° 10'
Kldana	152°	31°
Asanabara	155°	31° 30'
Arkhinara	163°	31°
Ourathênai	170°	31° 20'
Souanagoura	145° 30'	29° 30'
Sagôda or Sadôga	155° 20'	29° 20'
Anina	162°	29°
Salatha	165° 40'	28° 20'

23. Rhadamarkotta,

in which is much <i>nard</i> ...	172°	28'
Athênagouron	146° 20'	27°
Maniaina (or Maniataia)	147° 15'	24° 40'
Tôsalei, a metropolis ...	150°	23° 20'
Alosanga	152°	24° 15'
Adeisaga	159° 30'	23°
Kimara.....	170°	23° 15'
Parisara	179°	21° 30'
Tougma, a metropolis...	152° 30'	22° 15'
Arisabion	158° 30'	22° 30'
Posinara	162° 15'	22° 50'
Pandasa	165°	21° 20'
Sipibêris (or Sittêbêris).	170°	23° 15'

Triglypton, called also Trilingon, capital of the kingdom 154° 18°

In this part the cocks are said to be bearded, and the crows and parrots white.

24. Lariagara	162° 30'	18° 15'
Rhingibêri	166°	18°
Agimoitha	170° 40'	18° 40'
Tomara	172°	18°



Dasana or Doana	165°	15° 20'
Mareoura, a metropolis, called also Malthoura	158°	12° 30'
Lasippa (or Lasyppa)...	161°	12° 30'
Bareukora (or Barena- thra	164° 30'	12° 50'
25. In the Golden Khersonese—		
Balongka	162°	4° 40'
Kokkonagara	160°	2°
Tharrha	162°	1° 20' S.
Palanda	161°	1° 20' S.

Regarding the foregoing long list of inland towns, the following general observations by Saint-Martin are instructive: "With Ptolemy, unfortunately," he says (*Étude*, pp. 348-9) "the correspondence of names of towns in many instances, is less easy to discover than in the case of the names of peoples or tribes. This is shown once again in the long-enough list which he adds to the names of places already mentioned under the names of the people to which they respectively belonged. To judge from the repetitions in it and the want of connexion, this list appears to have been supplied to him by a document different from the documents he had previously used, and it is precisely because he has not known how to combine its contents with the previous details that he has thus given it separately and as an appendix, although thereby obliged to go again over the same ground he had already traversed. For a country where Ptolemy had not the knowledge of it as a whole to guide him, it would be unjust to reproach him with this want of connexion in his materials, and the con-



fusion therefrom resulting; but this absence, almost absolute, of connexion does only render the task of the critic all the more laborious and unwelcome and there results from it strange mistakes for those who without sufficiently taking into account the composition of this part of the Tables, have believed they could find in the relative positions which the places have there taken a sufficient means of identification. It would only throw one into the risk of error to seek for correspondences to these obscure names, (of which there is nothing to guarantee the correctness, and where there is not a single name that is assigned to a definite territory,) in the resemblances, more or less close, which could be furnished by a topographical dictionary of India."

Sêlampoura:—This suggests Sêlempur, a place situated at some distance north of the Déva or lower Sarayû. The identity of the names is our only warrant for taking them as applying to one and the same town; but as the two places which follow belong to the same part of the country, the identification is in some measure supported. Sêlempur is situated on a tributary of the Sarayû, the little Gandak.

Kanogiza:—This is beyond doubt the famous city of Kanyakubja or Kanauj, which has already been noticed under the list of towns attributed to Prasiakô, where the name is given as Kanagora. Ptolemy, while giving here the name more correctly has put the city hopelessly out of its position with reference to the Ganges, from which he has removed it several degrees, though it stood upon its banks. Among Indian cities it ranks next in



point of antiquity to Ayôdhyâ in Audh, and it was for many centuries the Capital of North-Western India. It was then a stately city, full of incredible wealth, and its king, who was sometimes styled the Emperor of India, kept a very splendid court. Its remains are 65 miles W.N.W. from Lakhnau. The place was visited by Hiuen Tsiang in 634 A.D. Pliny (*H. N. lib. VI, c. 21*) has Calinipaxa. Conf. Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. I, p. 158; *Mahâbh.* III, 8313; *Râmâyana*, I, 34, 37.

Kassida:—Here we have another case of a recurrence of the same name in an altered form. In Sanskrit and in inscriptions Kâśi is the ordinary name of Bânâras. How Ptolemy came to lengthen the name by affixing *da* to it has not been explained. Ptolemy has mutilated Vâranâsî into Erarasa, which he calls a metropolis, and assigns to the Kaspeiraioi. Such is the view taken by Saint-Martin, but Yule, as we have seen, identifies Erarasa with Goyardhan (Girirâja). He also points out, on the authority of Dr. F. Hall that Vâranâsî was never used as a name for Bânâras.

Souanngoura:—M. Saint-Martin (*Étude*, p. 351) thinks this is a transcript of the vulgar form of Suvarṇanagara, and in this name recognizes that of one of the ancient capitals of Eastern Bengal, Suvarṇagrâma (now Sôargôen, about 12 miles from Dhakka), near the right bank of the Lower Brahmaputra.

Sagôda:—There can be no doubt of the identity of this place with Ayôdhyâ, the capital of Kôsala, under the name of Sâkêta or Sagêda. Sâkyamuni spent the last days of his life in this



CSL

city, and during his sojourn the ancient name of Ayôdhyâ gave place to that of Sâkêta, the only one current. Hindu lexicographers give Sâkêta and Kôsala (or Kôśala) as synonyms of Ayôdhyâ. The place is now called Audh, and is on the right bank of the Sarayû or Ghâghrâ, near Faizâbâd, a modern town, built from its ruins. At some distance north from Audh is the site of Śrāvastî, one of the most celebrated cities in the annals of Buddhism. For the identity of Sâkêta with Ayôdhyâ and also Viśakha see Cunningham, *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp. 401 sqq.

Rhadamarkotta (v. l. Rhandamarkotta). Saint-Martin has identified this with Raṅgâmatî, an ancient capital situated on the western bank of the lower Brahmaputra, and now called Udêpur (Udayapura,—*city of sunrise*). Yule, who agrees with this identification, gives as the Sanskrit form of the name of the place, Raṅgamrîtika. The passage about *Nard* which follows the mention of Rhadamarkotta in the majority of editions is, according to Saint-Martin (*Étude*, p. 352 and note), manifestly corrupt. Some editors, correct πολλή, *much*, into πόλεις, *cities*, and thus *Nardos* becomes the name of a town, and Rhadamarkotta the name of a district, to which *Nardos* and the towns that come after it in the Table belong. On this point we may quote a passage from Wilford, whose views regarding Rhadamarkotta were different. He says (*Asiat. Research.* vol. XIV, p. 441), Ptolemy has delineated tolerably well the two branches of the river of Âvâ and the relative situation of two towns upon them, which still retain their ancient name, only



they are transposed. Thesetwotowns are Urathêna, and Nardos or Nardon; Urathena is Rhâdana, the ancient name of Amarapur, and Nardon is Nartenh on the Kayn-dween. . . ." He says that "Nartenh was situated in the country of Rhanda-markoṭa, literally, the Fort of Randamar, after which the whole country was designated."

Tôsalei, called a Metropolis, has become of great importance since recent archæological discoveries have led to the finding of the name in the Aśôka Inscriptions on the Dhauli rock. The inscription begins thus: "By the orders of Dôvanampiya (beloved of the gods) it is enjoined to the public officers charged with the administration of the city of Tôsali," &c. Vestiges of a larger city have been discovered not far from the site of this monument, and there can be no doubt that the Tôsali of the inscription was the capital in Aśôka's time of the province of Orissa, and continued to be so till at least the time of Ptolemy. The city was situated on the margin of a pool called Kôsâlâ-Gangâ, which was an object of great religious veneration throughout all the country. It is pretty certain that relative to this circumstance is the name of Tosala-Kôsâlakas, which is found in the *Brahmânda Purâna*, which Wilford had already connected with the Tôsalê of Ptolemy. He had however been misled by the 2nd part of the word to locate the city in N. Kôsâlâ, that is Audh. An obvious objection to the locating of Tôsalê in Orissa is that Ptolemy assigns its position to the eastern side of the Ganges, and Lassen and Burnouf have thus been led to conclude that there must have been two



cities of the name. Lassen accordingly finds for Ptolemy's Tôsalé a place somewhere in the Province of Dhâkkâ. But there is no necessity for this. If we take into account that the name of Tôsalé is among those that are marked as having been added to our actual Greek texts by the old Latin translators (on what authority we know not) we shall be the less surprised to find it out of its real place. (Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp. 353-4, citing *J. A. S. Beng.*, vol. VII, pp. 435 and 442; Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 256, and vol. III, p. 158; and *Asiat. Research.* vol. VIII, p. 344).

Alosanga:—The geographical position of Alosanga places it a quarter degree to the north of the upper extremity of Mount Maindros. "By a strange fatality," says Wilford (*Asiat. Res. ut s.*, p. 390) "the northern extremity of Mount Maindros in Ptolemy's maps is brought close to the town of Alosanga, now Ellasing on the Lojung river, to the north-west of Dhakka. This mistake is entirely owing to his tables of longitude and latitude."

Tougma:—In Yule's map this is identified, but doubtfully, with Tagaung, a place in Khrysé (Burma) east from the Irâwađi and near the tropics.

Triglypton or Trilingon:—Opinions vary much as to where this capital was situated. Wilford says (*Asiat. Research.* vol. XIV, p. 450-2): "Ptolemy places on the Tokosanna, the Metropolis of the country, and calls it Trilingon, a true Sanskrit appellation. Another name for it, says our author, was Triglypton, which is an attempt to render into Greek the meaning of Trilinga or



Tri-linga, the three 'lingas' of Mahādēva; and this in Arakan is part of an extensive district in the *Parānas*, called Tri-pura, or the three towns and townships first inhabited by three Daityas. These three districts were Kamilā, Chattala and Burmānaka, or Raśāng, to be pronounced Ra-shāñh, or nearly so; it is now Arakan. Kamilla alone retains the name of Tri-pura, the two other districts having been wrested from the head Rāja. Ptolemy says that in the country of the Trilinga, there were white ravens, white parrots, and bearded cocks. The white parrot is the *kākatrod*; white ravens are to be seen occasionally in India . . . Some say that this white colour might have been artificial . . . The bearded cocks have, as it were, a collar of reversed feathers round the neck and throat, and there only, which gives it the appearance of a beard. These are found only in the houses of native princes, from whom I procured three or four; and am told that they came originally from the hills in the N. W. of India." Lassen has adopted a somewhat similar view. He says (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 233-9): "Triglyphon was probably the capital of the Silver country, Arakan of the present day. It lies, according to Ptolemy's determination, one degree further east and $3\frac{1}{2}$ degrees further north than the mouths of the Arakan river. The mouths are placed in the right direction, only the numbers are too great. It may be added that the foundation of this city, which was originally called Vaisāli, belongs to earlier times than those of Ptolemy, and no other capital is known to us in



this country. The Greek name which means 'thrice cloven,' *i.e.*, 'three-forked' or 'a trident' suits likewise with Arakan, because it lies at the projections of the delta, and the Arakan river, in the lower part of its course, splits into several arms, three of which are of superior importance. Ptolemy's remark that the cocks there are bearded and the ravens and parrots white, favours this view, for according to Blyth (*J. A. S. Beng.*, vol. XV, p. 26) there is found in Arakan a species of the Bucconidae, which on account of their beards are called by the English 'barbets,' and on the same authority we learn that what is said of the ravens and parrots is likewise correct." Cunningham again, says (*Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, pp. 518-9): "In the inscriptions of the Kalachuri, or Haihaya dynasty of Chêdi, the Râjas assume the titles of "Lords of Kâlîñjarapura, and of Trikalinga." Trikalinga, or the three Kalingas, must be the three kingdoms Dhanakataka, or Amarâvatî, on the Kṛishnâ, Andhra or Warangol, and Kalinga, or Râjamahêndri. "The name of Trikalinga is probably old, as Pliny mentions the Macco-Calingæ and the Gangarides-Calingæ as separate peoples from the Calingæ, while the *Mahâbhârata* names the Kalingas three separate times, and each time in conjunction with different peoples. As Trikalinga thus corresponds with the great province of Telingana, it seems probable that the name of Telingana may be only a slightly contracted form of Trikalingâna, or the three Kalingas. I am aware that the name is usually derived from Tri-linga, or the three *phalli* of Mahâdêva. But the mention of Macco-Calingæ and Gangarides-



Calingae by Pliny would seem to show that the three Kalīngas were known as early as the time of Megasthenēs, from whom Pliny has chiefly copied his Indian Geography. The name must therefore be older than the Phallic worship of Mahādēva in Southern India." Caldwell observes (*Dravid. Gram.*, Introd., p. 32) that though Trilingon is said to be on the Ganges, it may have been considerably to the south of it, and on the Gōdāvarī, which was always regarded by the Hindus as a branch of the Ganges, and is mythologically identical with it. The Andhras and Kalīngas, the two ancient divisions of the Telugu people are represented by the Greeks as Gangetic nations. It may be taken as certain that Triglyphon, Trilinga or Modogalinga was identical with Telingāna or Trilingam, which signifies the country of the *three līngas*. The Telugu name and language are fixed by Pliny and Ptolemy as near the mouths of the Ganges or between the Ganges and the Gōdāvarī. Modo or Modoga is equivalent to *mūda* of modern Telugu. It "means *three*." Yule again places Trilingon on the left bank of the Brahmaputrā, identifying it with Tripura (Tippera), a town in the district of the same name, 48 miles E.S.E. of Dhakka.

Rhīngibēri:—Saint-Martin and Yule, as we have seen, place Rangāmatī on the Brahmaputrā at Udipur. Wilford, however, had placed it near Chitagaon, and identified it with Ptolemy's Rhingibēri. "Ptolemy," he says (*Asiat. Res.*, vol. XIV, p. 439); "has placed the source of the Derias" (which in Wilford's opinion is the Dumurā or Dumriyā, called in the lower part of its course the



Karmaphuli) "in some country to the south of Salhata or Silhet, and he mentions two towns on its banks: Pandassa in the upper part of its course, but unknown; in the lower part Rhingibêri, now Rangâmatî near Châtgâv (Chitagaon), and Reang is the name of the country on its banks. On the lesser Dumurâ, the river Chingri of the *Bengal Atlas*, and near its source, is a town called there Reang. Rangâmatî and Rangâ-bâti, to be pronounced Rangabari, imply nearly the same thing."

Tomara was no doubt a place belonging to the Zamîrai or Tamarai, who were located inland from Kirrhadia, and inhabited the Garô Hills.

Mareoura or Malthoura:—In Yule's map this metropolis is located, but doubtfully, to the west of Tougma (Tagaon) near the western bank of the Khyendwen, the largest confluent of the Irâwadi.

Bareukora (or Bareuathra) is in Yule's map identified with Ramû, a place in the district of Chitagaon, from which it is 68 miles distant to the S.S.E. Wilford identified it with Phalgun, another name for which, according to the *Kshetra Samâsa* was Pharuigâra, and this he took to be Ptolemy's Bareukora. Phalgun he explains to be the Palong of the maps.

Kokkonagara:—Yule suggests for this Pegu. "It appears," he says, "from Târanâtha's history of Buddhism (ch. xxxix.) that the Indo-Chinese countries were in old times known collectively as Koki. In a Ceylonese account of an expedition against Râmaniyâ, supposed to be Pegu, the army captures the city of Ukkaka, and



in it the Lord of Rāmaniyā. Kokkonagara again, is perhaps the Kākula of Ibn Batuta, which was certainly a city on the Gulf of Siam, and probably an ancient foundation from Kalinga, called after Śrī-kākola there."

Tharra :—The same authority identifies this with Tharāwati at the head of the delta of the Irāwaḍī. It is one of the divisions of the Province of Pegu.

Ptolemy's description of Transgangetic India now closes with the Islands.

26. The islands of the division of India we have been describing are said to be these :

Bazakata	149° 30'	9° 30'
[Khalinê.....]	146°	9° 20']

In this island some say there is found in abundance the murex shell-fish (κόχλος) and that the inhabitants go naked, and are called Aginnatai.

27. There are three islands called Sindai, inhabited by Cannibals, of which the centre lies in..... 152° 8° 40' S.

Agathou daimonos ... 145° 15' on the equator.

28. A group of five islands, the Barousai, whose inhabitants are said to be cannibals, and the centre of which lies in 152° 20' 5° 20' S.

A group of three islands, the Sabadeibai, inhabited by cannibals, of which the centre lies in 160° 8° 30' S.

Bazakata may perhaps be the island of Cheduba, as Wilford has suggested. Lassen



takes it to be an island at the mouth of the Bassein river, near Cape Negrais, called Diamond Island. Its inhabitants are called by Ptolemy the Aginnatai, and represented as going naked. Lassen, for Aginnatai would therefore read Apinnatai, "because *apinaddha* in Sanskrit means unclothed;" but *apinaddha* means 'tied on,' clothed. Yule thinks it may perhaps be the greater of the two Andâman islands. He says (*Proc. Roy. Geog. Soc.* vol. IV, 1882, p. 654); "Proceeding further the (Greek) navigator reaches the city of Kôli or Kôlis, leaving behind him the island of Bazakota, 'Good Fortune' (*Ἀγαθὸν Δαίμονος*) and the group of the Barusæ. Here, at Kôli, which I take to be a part of the Malay peninsula, the course of the first century Greek, and of the ninth century Arab, come together." Bazakota and the Island of Good Fortune may be taken as the Great and the Little Andâman respectively. The Arab relation mentions in an unconnected notice an island called Malhân between Serendib and Kalah, *i.e.*, between Ceylon and the Malay Peninsula, which was inhabited by black and naked cannibals. "This may be another indication of the Andâman group, and the name may have been taken from Ptolemy's Maniolæ, which in his map occupy the position in question." And again: "Still further out of the way (than the Andâmâns) and difficult of access was a region of mountains containing mines of silver. The landmarks (of the Arab navigator) to reach these was a mountain called Alkhushnâmi ('the Auspicious'). "This land of silver mines is both by position and by this description identified



with the Argyrê of Ptolemy. As no silver is known to exist in that region (Arakan) it seems probable that the Arab indications to that effect were adopted from the Ptolemaic charts. And this leads me to suggest that the Jibal Khush-nâmi also was but a translation of the *Ἀγαθὸν δαίμονος νῆσος*, or isle of Good Fortune, in those maps, whilst I have thought also that the name Andâman might have been adopted from a transcript of the same name in Greek as *Ἀγ. δαίμων*."

Khalinê in Yule's map is read as Saline, and identified with the Island of Salang, close to the coast in the latitude of the Nikobar Islands.

The Sindai Islands are placed by Ptolemy about as far south as his island of Iabadios (Java) but many degrees west of them. Lassen says (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, pp. 250-1) that the northmost of the three islands must be Pulo-Rapat, on the coast of Sumatra, the middle one the more southern, Pulo Pangor, and the island of Agatho-Daimon, one of the Salat Mankala group. The name of Sindai might imply, he thinks, that Indian traders had formed a settlement there. He seems to have regarded the Island of Agatho-Daimon as belonging to the Sindai group, but this does not appear to me to be sanctioned by the text. Yule says: "Possibly Sundar-Falât, in which the latter word seems to be an Arabized plural of the Malay *Pulo* 'island' is also to be traced in *Sindae Insulae*, but I have not adopted this in the map."

The Barousai Islands:—"The (Arab) navigators," says Yule in his notes already referred to, "crossing the sea of Horkand with the west monsoon, made land at the islands of Lanja-Laŋka,



or Lika-Bâlds, where the naked inhabitants came off in their canoes bringing ambergris and coconuts for barter, a description which with the position identifies these islands with the Nikobars, Nekaveram of Marco Polo, Lâka-Vâram of Rashîdû'd-dîn, and, I can hardly hesitate to say, with the Barusæ Islands of Ptolemy."

Sabadeibai Islands:—The latter part of this name represents the Sanskrit *dwîpa*, 'an island.' The three islands of this name are probably those lying east from the more southern parts of Sumatra.

29. The island of Iabadios (or Sabadios) which means the island of Barley. It is said to be of extraordinary fertility, and to produce very much gold, and to have its capital called *Argyrê* (Silver-town) in the extreme west of it. It lies in $167^{\circ} 8^{\circ} 30' S.$ and the eastern limit lies in ... $169^{\circ} 8^{\circ} 10' S.$

30. The Islands of the Satyrs, three in number, of which the centre is in $171^{\circ} 2^{\circ} 30' S.$ The inhabitants are said to have tails like those with which Satyrs are depicted.

31. There are said to be also ten other islands forming a continuous group called Maniolai, from which ships fastened with iron nails are said to be unable to move away, (perhaps on account of the magnetic iron in the islands) and hence they are built with wooden bolts. The inhabitants are called Maniolai, and are reputed to be cannibals.

The island of Iabadios:—*Yava*, the first part



of this name, is the Sanskrit word for 'barley,' and the second part like *deiba*, *diba*, *diva*, and *div* or *diu*, represents *deīpa*, 'an island.' We have here therefore the Island of Java, which answers in most respects to Ptolemy's description of it. The following note regarding it I take from Bunbury's *History of Ancient Geography* (pp. 643-4): "The name of Java has certainly some resemblance with Labadius, supposing that to be the correct form of the name, and, what is of more consequence, Ptolemy adds that it signifies 'the island of barley,' which is really the meaning of the name of Java. The position in latitude assigned by him to the island in question ($8\frac{1}{2}$ degrees of south latitude) also agrees very well with that of Java: but his geographical notions of these countries are in general so vague and erroneous that little or no value can be attached to this coincidence. On the other hand, the abundance of gold would suit well with Sumatra, which has always been noted on that account, while there is little or no gold found in Java. The metropolis at its western extremity would thus correspond with Achin, a place that must always have been one of the principal cities of the island. In either case he had a very imperfect idea of its size, assigning it a length of only about 100 Geog. miles, while Java is 9° or 540 G. miles in length, and Sumatra more than 900 G. miles. It seems not improbable that in this case, as in several others, he mixed up particulars which really referred to the two different islands, and applied them to one only: but it is strange that if he had any information concerning such islands as Sumatra



and Java, he should have no notion that they were of very large size, at the same time that he had such greatly exaggerated ideas of the dimensions of Ceylon." Mannert took Iabadios to be the small island of Banka on the S.E. of Sumatra. For the application of the name of Java to the Island of Sumatra, see Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. II, p. 266, note 1.

Regarding the Islands of the Satyrs, Lassen says (*Ind. All.*, vol. III, p. 252): The three islands, called after the Satyrs, mark the extreme limits of the knowledge attained by Ptolemy of the Indian Archipelago. The inhabitants were called Satyrs because, according to the fabulous accounts of mariners, they had tails like the demi-gods of that name in Greek mythology. Two of these must be Madura and Bali, the largest islands on the north and east coasts of Java, and of which the first figures prominently in the oldest legends of Java; the second, on the contrary, not till later times. The third island is probably Lombok, lying near Bali in the east. A writer in Smith's *Dictionary of Classical Geography* thinks these islands were perhaps the *Anamba* group, and the Satyrs who inhabited them apes resembling men. Yule says in the notes:—"Sandar-Fulât we cannot hesitate to identify with Pulo Condor, Marco Polo's Sondur and Condur. These may also be the Satyrs' islands of Ptolemy, but they may be his Sindai, for he has a Sinda city on the coast close to this position, though his Sindai islands are dropped far way. But it would not be difficult to show that Ptolemy's islands have been located almost at random, or as from a pepper-caster."



Ptolemy locates the Maniolai Islands, of which he reckons ten, about 10 degrees eastward from Ceylon. There is no such group however to be found in that position, or near it, and we may safely conclude that the Maniolai isles are as mythical as the magnetic rocks they were said to contain. In an account of India, written at the close of the 4th or beginning of the 5th century, at the request either of Palladius or of Lausius, to whom Palladius inscribed his *Historia Lausiaca*, mention is made of these rocks: "At Muziris," says Priaulx, in his notice of this account³¹ "our traveller stayed some time, and occupied himself in studying the soil and climate of the place and the customs and manners of its inhabitants. He also made enquiries about Ceylon, and the best mode of getting there, but did not care to undertake the voyage when he heard of the dangers of the Sinhalese channel, of the thousand isles, the Maniolai which impede its navigation, and the loadstone rocks which bring disaster and wreck on all iron-bound ships." And Masû'di, who had traversed this sea, says that ships sailing on it were not fastened with iron nails, its waters so wasted them. (*The Indian Travels of Apollonius of Tyana, &c.*, p. 197). After Ptolemy's time a different position was now and again assigned to these rocks, the direction in which they were moved being more and more to westward. Priaulx (p. 247), uses this

³¹ Wilford (*As. Res.* vol. XIV, pp. 429-30), gives the fable regarding these rocks from the *Chaturvarga Chintamani*, and identifies them with those near Pärindra or the lion's place in the lion's mouth or Straits of Singapur.



CSL

as an argument in support of his contention that the Roman traffic in the eastern seas gradually declined after 273 A.D., and finally disappeared. How, otherwise, he asks, can we account for the fact that the loadstone rocks, those myths of Roman geography, which, in Ptolemy's time, the flourishing days of Roman commerce, lay some degrees eastward of Ceylon, appear A.D. 400 barring its western approach, and A.D. 560 have advanced up to the very mouth of the Arabian Gulf. But on the Terrestrial Globe of Martin Behem, Nuremberg A.D. 1492, they are called *Manillas*, and are placed immediately to the north of Java Major. Aristotle speaks of a magnetic mountain on the coast of India, and Pliny repeats the story. Klapproth states that the ancient Chinese authors also speak of magnetic mountains in the southern sea on the coasts of Tonquin and Cochin-China, and allege regarding them that if foreign ships which are bound with plates of iron approach them, such ships are there detained, and can in no case pass these places. (Tennant's *Ceylon*, vol. I, p. 444 n.) The origin of the fable, which represents the magnetic rocks as fatal to vessels fastened with iron nails, is to be traced to the peculiar mode in which the Ceylonese and Malays have at all times constructed their boats and canoes, these being put together without the use of iron nails; the planks instead being secured by wooden bolts, and stitched together with cords spun from the fibre of the coconut. "The Third Calender," in the *Arabian Nights Entertainment*, gives a lively account of his shipwreck upon the Loadstone Mountain, which he tells us was entirely covered



towards the sea with the nails that belonged to the immense number of ships which it had destroyed.

CAP. 3.

POSITION OF THE SINAI.

[11th Map of Asia.]

1. The Sinai are bounded on the north by the part of Sêrikê already indicated, on the east and south by the unknown land, on the west by India beyond the Ganges, along the line defined as far as the Great Gulf and by the Great Gulf itself, and the parts immediately adjacent thereto, and by the Wild Beast Gulf, and by that frontier of the Sinai around which are placed the Ikhthyophagoi Aithiopes, according to the following outline :—

2. After the boundary of the Gulf on the side of India the mouth of

the river Aspithra	170°	16°
Sources of the river on the eastern side of the Sêmanthinos range	180°	26°
Branma, a town.....	177°	12° 30'
The mouth of the river		
Ambastes.....	176°	10°
The sources of the river.....	179° 30'	15°
Rhabana, a town.....	177°	8° 30'
Mouth of the river Sainos ...	176° 20'	6° 30'
The Southern Cape	175° 15'	4°
The head of Wild Beast Gulf	176°	2°



The Cape of Satyrs 175° on the line
 Gulf of the Sinai³² 178° 2° 20'

3. Around the Gulf of the Sinai dwell the fish-eating Aithiopians.

Mouth of the river Kottiaris 177° 20' 7° S.

Sources of the river 180° 40' 2° S.

Where it falls into the river Sainos..... 180° on the line.

Kattigara, the port of the Sinai..... 177° 8° 30' S.

4. The most northern parts are possessed by the Sēmānthinoi, who are situated above the range that bears their name. Below them, and below the range are the Akadrai, after whom are the Aspithrai, then along the Great Gulf the Ambastai, and around the gulfs immediately adjoining the Ikhthyophagoi Sinai.

5. The interior towns of the Sinai are named thus:—

Akadra 178° 20' 21° 15'

Aspithra 175° 16°

Kokkonagara 179° 50' 2° S.

Sarata 180° 30' 4° S.

6. And the Metropolis Sinai or Thīnai 180° 40' 3° S.

which they say has neither brazen walls nor anything else worthy of note. It is encompassed on the side of Kattigara towards the west by

³² Latin Translator.



the unknown land, which encircles the Green Sea as far as Cape Prason, from which begins, as has been said, the Gulf of the Batrakheian Sea, connecting the land with Cape Rhapton, and the southern parts of Azania.

It has been pointed out how egregiously Ptolemy misconceived the configuration of the coast of Asia beyond the Great Gulf, making it run southward and then turn westward, and proceed in that direction till it reached the coast of Africa below the latitude of Zanzibar. The position, therefore of the places he names, cannot be determined with any certainty. By the Wild Beast Gulf may perhaps be meant the Gulf of Tonquin, and by the Gulf of the Sinai that part of the Chinese Sea which is beyond Hai-nan Island. The river Kottiaris may perhaps be the river of Canton. Thinaï, or Sinai, may have been Nankin, or better perhaps Si-gnan-fu, in the province of Shen-si, called by Marco Polo, by whom it was visited, Ken-jan-fu. "It was probably," says Yule (Marco Polo, vol. II, p. 21) "the most celebrated city in Chinese history and the capital of several of the most potent dynasties. In the days of its greatest fame it was called Chaggan." It appears to have been an ancient tradition that the city was surrounded by brazen walls, but this Ptolemy regarded as a mere fable. The author of the *Periplus* (c. 64), has the following notice of the place:—"There lies somewhere in the interior of Thina, a very great city, from which silk, either raw or spun or woven into cloth is carried overland to Barygaza through Baktria or by the Ganges to Limyrikê . . . Its situation is



under the Lesser Bear." Ptolemy has placed it 3 degrees south of the equator!!

CAP. 4.

POSITION OF THE ISLAND OF TAPROBANE.

[Map of Asia 12.]

1. Opposite Cape Kôry, which is in India, is the projecting point of the Island of Taprobane, which was called formerly Simonndou, and now Salikê. The inhabitants are commonly called Salai. Their heads are quite encircled with long luxuriant locks, like those of women. The country produces rice, honey, ginger, beryl, hyacinth³³ and has mines of every sort—of gold and of silver and other metals. It breeds at the same time elephants and tigers.

2. The point already referred to as lying opposite to Kôry is called North Cape (Boreion Akron) and lies 126° 12° 30'

3. The descriptive outline of the rest of the island is as follows:—

After the North Cape which
 is situated in 126° 12° 30'
 comes Cape Galiba 124° 11° 30'
 Margana, a town 123° 30' 10° 20'

³³ In one of the temples, says Kosmos, is the great hyacinth, as large as a pine-cone, the colour of fire and flashing from a distance, especially when catching the beams of the sun, a matchless sight.



Iôgana, a town	123° 20'	8° 50'
Anarismoundon, a cape	122°	7° 45'
Mouth of the River Soana...	122° 20'	6° 15'
Sources of the river	124° 30'	3°
Sindokanda, a town	122°	5°
Haven of Priapis	122°	3° 40'
4. Anoubingara	121°	2° 40'
Headland of Zeus	120° 30'	1°
Prasôdês Bay	121°	2°
Noubartha, a town	121° 40'	on the Line.
Mouth of the river Azanos...	123° 20'	1° S.
The sources of the river.....	126°	1° N.
Odôka, a town.....	123°	2° S.
Orneôn, (Birds' Point) a headland	125°	2° 30' S.
5. Dagana, a town sacred to the Moon	126°	2° S.
Korkobara, a town	127° 20'	2° 20' S.
Cape of Dionysos	130°	1° 30' S.
Kêtaion Cape	132° 30'	2° 20' S.
Mouth of the river Barakês	131° 30'	1° N.
Sources of the river	128°	2° N.
Bêkana, a town	131°	1° 20' N.
The haven of Mardos or Mardoulamnê	131°	2° 20' N.
6. Abaratha, a town ...	131°	3° 15' N.
Haven of the Sun (Heliou limên).....	130°	4°
Great Coast (Aigialos Megas)	130°	4° 20'



Prokouri, a town	131°	5° 20'
The haven of Rizala	130° 20'	6° 30'
Oxeia, a headland	130°	7° 30'
Mouth of the river Gangês	129°	7° 20'
The sources of the river...	127°	7° 15'
Spatana Haven	129°	8°
7. Nagadiba or Naga-		
dina, a town	129°	8° 30'
Pati Bay	128° 30'	9° 30'
Anoubingara, a town.....	128° 20'	9° 40'
Modouttou, a mart.....	128°	11° 20'
Mouth of the river Phasis	127°	11° 20'
The sources of the river...	126°	8°
Talakôry (or Aakotê,) a		
mart	126° 20'	11° 20'

After which the North Cape.

8. The notable mountains of the island are those called Galiba, from which flow the Phasis and the Ganges, and that called Malaia, from which flow the Soanas and the Azanos and the Barakês, and at the base of this range, towards the sea, are the feeding grounds of the elephants.

9. The most northern parts of the Island are possessed by the Galiboi and the Moudouttoi, and below these the Anourogrammoi and the Nagadiboi, and below the Anourogrammoi the Soanoi, and below the Nagadiboi the Sennai, and below these the Sandokandai, towards the west, and below these towards the feeding grounds of the elephants



the Boumasanoi, and the Parakhoi, who are towards the east, below whom are the Bôkanoi and Diordouloi, and furthest south the Rhogandanoi, and the Nagai-roi.

10. The inland towns in the island are these:—

Anourogrammon, the royal residence	124° 10'	8° 40'
Maagrammon, the metropolis	127°	7° 20'
Adeisamon	129°	5°
Podouké	124°	3° 40'
Oulispada	126° 20'	40'
Nakadouba	128° 30'	on the Line.

11. In front of Taprobané lies a group of islands which they say number 1378. Those whose names are mentioned are the following:—

Ouangalia (or Ouangana)	120° 15'	11° 20'
Kanathra	121° 40'	11° 15'
Aigidiôn	118°	8° 30'
Ornéon	119°	8° 30'
Monakhê.....	116°	4° 15'
Amminê	117°	4° 30'
12. Karkos.....	118°	40' S.
Philékos	116° 30'	2° 40' S.
Eirênê	120°	2° 30' S.
Kalandadroua	121°	5° 30' S.
Abrana	125°	4° 20' S.
Bassa	126°	6° 30' S.
Balaka.....	129°	5° 30' S.



Alaba	131°	4° S.
Goumara	133°	1° 40' S.
13. Zaba	135°	on the Line.
Zibala	135°	4° 15' N.
Nagadiba.....	135°	8° 30'
Sousouara	135°	11° 15'

14. Let such then be the mode of describing in detail the complete circuit of all the provinces and satrapies of the known world, and since we indicated in the outset of this compendium how the known portion of the earth should be delineated both on the sphere and in a projection on a plane surface exactly in the same manner and proportion as what is traced on the solid sphere, and since it is convenient to accompany such descriptions of the world with a summary sketch, exhibiting the whole in one comprehensive view, let me now therefore give such a sketch with due observance of the proper proportion.

This island of Taprobanê has changed its name with notable frequency. In the *Râmâyana* and other Sanskrit works it is called *Lankâ*, but this was an appellation unknown to the Greeks. They called it at first *Antichthonos*, being under the belief that it was a region belonging to the opposite portion of the world (Pliny, lib. VI, c. xxii). In the time of Alexander, when its situation was better understood, it was called Taprobanê. Megasthenês mentions it under this name, and remarks that it was divided (*into two*) by a river, that its inhabitants were called *Palaeogoni* and that it



produced more gold and pearls of large size than India. From our author we learn that the old name of the island was Simoundou, and that Taprobané, its next name, was obsolete in his time, being replaced by Saliké. The author of the *Periplus* states, on the other hand, that Taprobané was the old name of the island, and that in his time it was called Palai Simoundou. The section of his work however in which this statement occurs (§ 61) is allowed to be hopelessly corrupt. According to Pliny, Palaesimundus was the name of the capital town, and also of the river on whose banks it stood. How long the island continued to be called Saliké does not appear, but it was subsequently known under such names as Serendivus, Sirediba, Serendib, Zeilan, and Sailan, from which the transition is easy to the name which it now bears, Ceylon.

With regard to the origin or derivation of the majority of these names the most competent scholars have been divided in their opinions. According to Lassen the term Palaiogonoi was selected by Megasthenés to designate the inhabitants of the island, as it conveyed the idea entertained of them by the Indians that they were Râkshasas, or giants, 'the sons of the progenitors of the world.' To this it may be objected that Megasthenés did not intend by the term to describe the inhabitants, but merely to give the name by which they were known, which was different from that of the island. Schwanbeck again suggested that the term might be a transliteration of Pâli-janâs, a Sanskrit compound, which he took to mean "men of the sacred doctrine" (*Ind. Ant.*, vol. VI, p. 129, n.) But, as Prialx has pointed out (*Apollon*.



of *Tyana*, p. 110), this is an appellation which could scarcely have been given to others than learned votaries of Buddhism, and which could scarcely be applicable to a people who were not even Buddhist till the reign of Aśôka, who was subsequent to Chandragupta, at whose court Megasthenês acquired his knowledge of India. Besides, it has been pointed out by Goldstücker (*l.c.* n. 59) that *Pali* has not the meaning here attributed to it. He adds that the nearest approach he could find to Palaiogonoi is—*pāra* 'on the other side of the river' and *jands* 'a people'; Pārajanâs, therefore, 'a people on the other side of the river.' Tenment, in conclusion, takes the word to be a Hellenized form of *Pali-putra*, 'the sons of the Pāli,' the first Prasian colonists of the island. A satisfactory explanation of Palai-Simoundou has not yet been hit on. That given by Lassen, Pāli-Simanta, or Head of the Sacred Law, has been discredited. We come now to Taprobanê. This is generally regarded as a transliteration of Tāmraparṇî, the name which Vijaya, who, according to tradition, led the first Indian colony into Ceylon, gave to the place where he first landed, and which name was afterwards extended to the whole island. It is also the name of a river in Tinneveli, and it has, in consequence, been supposed that the colonists, already referred to, had been, for some time, settled on its banks before they removed to Ceylon. The word means 'Copper-coloured leaf.' Its Pāli form is Tambapanni (see *Ind. Ant.*, Vol. XIII, pp. 33f.) and is found, as has been before noticed, in the inscription of Aśôka on the Girnâr rock. Another name, applied



to it, by Brahmanical writers, is Dwīpa-Rāvaṇa, *i.e.*, 'the island of Rāvaṇa, whence perhaps Taprobanê.' Salikê, Serendivas, and other subsequent names, are all considered to be connected etymologically with Sīnhala (colloquially Sīlam), the Pāli form of Sīhala, a derivative from *siṃha*, 'a lion,' *i.e.* 'a hero'—the hero Vijaya. According to a different view these names are to be referred to the Javanese *sela*, 'a precious stone,' but this explanation is rejected by Yule (*Marco Polo*, vol. II, p. 296, n. 6). For Salikê, Tennent suggests an Egyptian origin, Siela-keh, *i.e.*, 'the land of Siela.'

Little more was known in the west respecting the island beyond what Megasthenês had communicated until the reign of the Emperor Claudius, when an embassy was sent to Rome by the Sinhalese monarch, who had received such astonishing accounts of the power and justice of the Roman people that he became desirous of entering into alliance with them. He had derived his knowledge of them from a castaway upon his island, the freedman of a Roman called Annius Plocamus. The embassy consisted of 4 members, of whom the chief was called Rachia, an appellation from which we may infer that he held the rank of a Râja. They gave an interesting, if not a very accurate, account of their country, which has been preserved by Pliny (*Nat. Hist.* lib. VI). Their friendly visit, operating conjointly with the discovery of the quick passage to and from the East by means of the monsoon, gave a great impetus to commercial enterprise, and the rich marts, to which access had thus been opened, soon began to be frequented by the galleys of the West. Ptolemy, living in Alexan-



dria, the great entrepôt in those days of the Eastern traffic, very probably acquired from traders arriving from Ceylon, his knowledge concerning it, which is both wonderfully copious, and at the same time, fairly accurate, if we except his views of its magnitude, which like all his predecessors he vastly over-estimated. On the other hand, he has the merit of having determined properly its general form and outline, as well as its actual position with reference to the adjoining continent, points on which the most vague and erroneous notions had prevailed up to his time, the author of the *Periplus* for instance describing the island as extending so far westward that it almost adjoined Azania in Africa. The actual position of Ceylon is between $5^{\circ} 55'$ and $9^{\circ} 51'$ N. lat., and $79^{\circ} 42'$ and $81^{\circ} 55'$ E. long. Its extreme length from north to south is $271\frac{1}{2}$ miles, its greatest width $137\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and its area about one-sixth smaller than that of Ireland. Ptolemy however made it extend through no less than 15 degrees of latitude and 12 of longitude. He thus brought it down more than two degrees south of the equator, while he carried its northern extremity up to $12\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. lat., nearly 3 degrees north of its true position. He has thus represented it as being 20 times larger than it really is. This extravagant over-estimate, which had its origin in the Mythological Geography of the Indian Brâhmans, and which was adopted by the islanders themselves, as well as by the Greeks, was shared also by the Arab geographers Masû'dî, Idrisi, and Abu'l-fidâ, and by such writers as Marco Polo. In consequence of these misrepresentations it came to be questioned at one time whether Ceylon or



Sumatra was the Taprobané of the Greeks, and Kant undertook to prove that it was Madagascar (Tennent's *Ceylon*, vol. I, p. 10 and n.). Ptolemy has so far departed from his usual practice that he gives some particulars respecting it, which lie out of the sphere of Geography, strictly so called. He is mistaken in stating that the tiger is found in Ceylon, but he has not fallen into error on any other point which he has noticed. It may be remarked that the natives still wear their hair in the effeminate manner which he has noticed. In describing the island geographically he begins at its northern extremity, proceeds southward down the western coast, and returns along the east coast to Point Pedro. "In his map he has laid down the position of eight promontories, the mouths of five rivers and four bays and harbours, and in the interior he had ascertained that there were thirteen provincial divisions, and nineteen towns, besides two emporia on the coast, five great estuaries, which he terms lakes, two bays and two chains of mountains, one of them surrounding Adam's Peak, which he designates as Malaia, the name by which the hills that environ it are known in the *Mahāvādīso*." Tennent, from whom the foregoing summary has been quoted, observes in a foot-note (vol. I, p. 535) that Ptolemy distinguishes those indentations in the coast which he describes as *bays* (κόλπος) from the estuaries, to which he gives the epithet of *lakes*, (λίμνην);³⁴ of the former he particularises two, Pati

³⁴ Tennent here seems to have confounded λιμνήν, a haven or creek, with λίμνη, a lake. The words are, however, etymologically connected.



and Prasôdês, the position of which would nearly correspond with the Bay of Trinkônamalai and the harbour of Colombo—of the latter he enumerates five, and from their position they seem to represent the peculiar estuaries formed by the conjoint influence of the rivers and the current, and known to the Arabs by the name of “gobbs.”

Ceylon is watered by numerous streams, some of which are of considerable size. The most important is the Mahâweligaugâ, which has its sources in the vicinity of Adam's Peak, and which, after separating into several branches, enters the ocean near Trinkônamalai. Ptolemy calls it the Ganges. He mentions four other rivers, the Soana, Azanos, Barakês and Phasis, which Tennent identifies with the Dedera-Oya, the Bentote, the Kambukgam and the Kangarayen respectively. Lassen, however (*Ind. Alt.*, vol. III, p. 21), identifies the Azanos with the Kâlagaugâ which enters the sea a little farther north than the river of Bentote, and is a larger stream.

The mountains named by Ptolemy are the Galiba in the north-west of the island, and the Malaia, by which he designates the mountain groups which occupy the interior of the island towards the south. He has correctly located the plains or feeding grounds of the elephants to the south-east of these mountains; *malai* is the Tamil word for “mountain.”

The places which he has named along the coast and in the interior have been identified, though in most cases doubtfully, by Tennent in his map of Taprobanê according to Ptolemy and Pliny, in vol. I. of his work, as follows:—



On the West Coast beginning from the north :—

Margana with Mantote.

Iógana with Aripo.

Anarismoundou Cape with Kudramali Point,
but Mannert with Kalpantyn (further south).

Sindo Kanda with Chilau (Chilau from Salâ-
bhana—the Diving, *i. e.* Pearl Fishery.)

Port of Priapis³⁵ with Negombo.

Cape of Zeus at Colombo.

Prasôdês Bay, with Colombo Bay.

Noubartha with Barberyn.

Odoka with Hikkode.

Cape Orneôn (of Birds) with Point de Galle.

On the South Coast :—

Dagana with Dondra Head.

Korkobara with Tangalle.

On the East Coast :

Cape of Dionysos, with Hambangtote.

Cape Kêtaion (Whale cape) with Elephant Rock
(Bokana Yule identifies with Kambugam).

Haven of Mardos with Arukgam Bay.

Abaratha with Karativoe (but Yule with Apar-
atote, which is better).

Haven of the Sun with Batticalao.

Rizala Haven with Vendeloos Bay.

Oxeia Cape (Sharp point) with Foul Point.

Spatana Haven with an indentation in Trin-
kônamalai Bay.

Nagadiba or Nagadina with a site near the Bay.

Pati Bay with Trinkônamalai Bay.

Anoubingara with Kuchiavelli.

Modouttou with Kokelay.

³⁵ This was no doubt a name given by the Greeks,



On the North Coast:—

Mouth of the Phasis.

Talakôry or Aakotê, with Tondi Manaar. Yule places both Nagadiba and Modouttou on the north-west coast, identifying the latter with Mantote.

With respect to places in the interior of the island Tennent says (vol. I, p. 536, n. 2): "His (Ptolemy's) *Maagramon* would appear on a first glance to be Mahâgâm, but as he calls it the metropolis, and places it beside the great river, it is evidently Bintenne, whose ancient name was "Mahâyangana" or "Mahâwelligâm." His *Anurogrammum*, which he calls *βασιλειον* "the royal residence," is obviously Anurâdhapura, the city founded by Anurâdha 500 years before Ptolemy (*Mahawânso*, pp. 50-65). The province of the *Moudouttoi* in Ptolemy's list has a close resemblance in name, though not in position, to Mantote; the people of Reyagamkorle still occupy the country assigned by him to the *Rhogandanoi*—his *Nagadiboi* are identical with the Nâgadiva of the *Mahawânso*; and the islet to which he has given the name of *Bassa*, occupies nearly the position of the Basses, which it has been the custom to believe were so-called by the Portuguese,—“Baxos” or “Baixos” “Sunken Rocks.” The *Rhogandanoi* were located in the south-west of the island. The sea, which stretched thence towards Malaka, appears to have at one time borne their name, as it was called by the Arab navigators “the sea of Horkand.” The group of islands lying before Ceylon is no doubt that of the Maldives.



CSL

KLAUDIUS PTOLEMY'S GEOGRAPHY
OF CENTRAL ASIA.

Having now examined in detail the whole of Ptolemy's Indian Geography, I annex as a suitable Appendix his description of the countries adjacent to India. The reader will thus be presented with his Geography in its entirety of Central and South-Eastern Asia. In the notes I have adverted only to the more salient points.

BOOK VI, CAP. 9.

POSITION OF HYRKANIA.

[Map of Asia, 7.]

1. Hyrkania is bounded on the north by that part of the Hyrkanian sea which extends from the extreme point of the boundary line with Média as far as the mouth of the river Ôxos which lies in..... 100° 43' 5'

2. In which division occur these towns :—

Saramannê, a town.....	94° 15'	40° 30'
Mouth of the Maxêra.....	97° 20'	41° 30'
The sources of this river ...	98°	38° 20'
Mouth of the Sokanda	97° 20'	42°
Mouth of the river Ôxos ...	100°	43° 5'

3. On the west by the part of Média already mentioned as far as Mount Korônos [in which part of Média is

Saramannê..... 94° 15' 40° 30']

4. on the south by Parthia, along the side of it described as passing through the range of Korônos, and on the east by Margianê



through the mountainous region which connects the extremities referred to.

5. The maritime ports of Hyrkania are inhabited by the Maxérai, and the Astabênôï and below the Maxérai by the Khrêndoi, after whom comes the country adjacent to the Korônos range, Arsîtis, and below the Astabênôï is the country called Sirakêné.

6. The cities in the interior are said to be these :—

Barangê	99°	42°
Adrapsa	98° 30'	41° 30'
Kasapê.....	99° 30'	40° 30'
Abarbina	97°	40° 10'
Sorba	98°	40° 30'
7. Sinaka	100°	39° 40'
Amarousa	96°	39° 55'
Hyrkania, the metropolis....	98° 50'	40°
Sakê (or Salê).....	94° 15'	39° 30'
Asmoutna	97° 30'	39° 30'
Maisoka (or Mausoka)	99°	39° 30'

8. And an island in the sea near it called Talka..... 95° 42°

The name of Hyrkania is preserved to this day in that of Gurkan or Jorjan, a town lying to the east of Asterâbâd. Its boundaries have varied at different periods of history. Speaking generally, it corresponds with the modern Mazanderan and Asterâbâd. Its northern frontier was formed by the Kaspian, which was sometimes called after it—the Hyrkanian Sea. The river Ôros,



which is called by the natives on its banks the Amu-daryâ, and by Persian writers the Jihun, falls now into the Sea of Aral, but as we learn from our author as well as from other ancient writers it was in former times an affluent of the Kaspian, a fact confirmed by modern explorations. Mount Korônos was the eastern portion of the lofty mountain chain called the Elburz, which runs along the southern shores of the Kaspian. The River Maxêra is mentioned by Pliny (lib. VI, c. xiv, sec. 18) who calls it the Maxeras. It has been variously identified, as with the Tejin, the Gurgan, the Atrek and others. The metropolis of Hyrkania is called by Ammianus Marcellinus (c. xxiii, sec. 6) Hyrkana, which is probably the Gurkan already mentioned.

CAP. 10.

POSITION OF MARGIANÈ.

[*Map of Asia 7.*]

Margianè is bounded on the west by Hyrkania, along the side which has been already traced, and on the north by a part of Skythia extending from the mouths of the river Ôxos as far as the division towards Baktrianè, which lies in 103°—43°, and on the south by part of Areia along the parallel of latitude running from the boundary towards Hyrkania and Parthia through the Sariphi range, as far as the extreme point lying 109°—39°, and on the east by Baktrianè along the mountainous region which connects the



said extremities. A considerable stream, the Margos, flows through the country, and its sources lie in105° 39° while it falls into the Ôxos in 102° 43° 30'.

2. The parts of it towards the river Ôxos are possessed by the Derbikkai, called also the Derkeboi, and below them the Massagetai, after whom the Parnoi and the Dâai, below whom occurs the desert of Margiana, and more to the east than are the Tapouroi.

3. The cities of it are—

Ariaka	103°	43°
Sina (or Sêna).....	102° 30'	42° 20'
Aratha	103° 30'	42° 30'
Argadina	101° 20'	41° 40'
Iasionion	103° 30'	41° 30'

4. There unites with the River Margos, another stream flowing from the Sariphi range of which the sources lie..... 103° 39°

Rhêa.....	102°	40° 50'
Antiokheia Margianê.....	106°	40° 20'
Gourianê	104°	40°
Nisaia or Nigaia	105°	39° 10'

“In early periods,” says Wilson (*Ariana Antiqua*, p. 148), “Margiana seems to have been unknown as a distinct province, and was, no doubt, in part at least, comprised within the limits of Parthia. In the days of the later geographers, it had undergone the very reverse relation, and had, to all appearance, extended its boundaries so as to



include great part of the original Parthia. It is evident from Strabo's notice of the latter (lib. XI, c. ix) that there was left little of it except the name; and in Ptolemy no part of Parthia appears above the mountains." Strabo says of it (lib. XI, c. x) "Antiokhos Sôtêr admired its fertility, he enclosed a circle of 1,500 stadia with a wall, and founded a city, Antiokheia. The soil is well adapted to vines. They say that a vine stem has been frequently seen there which would require two men to girth it, and bunches of grapes two cubits in size." Pliny writes somewhat to the same effect. He says (lib. VI, c. xvi): "Next comes Margianê, noted for its sunny skies; it is the only vine-bearing district in all these parts, and it is shut in on all sides by pleasant hills. It has a circuit of 1,500 stadia, and is difficult of approach on account of sandy deserts, which extend for 120 miles. It lies confronting a tract of country in Parthia, in which Alexander had built Alexandria, a city, which after its destruction by the barbarians, Antiokhos, the son of Seleucus, rebuilt on the same site. The river Margus which amalgamates with the Zothale, flows through its midst. It was named Syria, but Antiokhos preferred to have it called Antiokheia. It is 80 stadia in circumference. To this place Orodes conducted the Romans who were taken prisoners when Crassus was defeated." This ancient city is represented now by Merv. The river Margus is that now called the Murgh-âb or Meru-râd. It rises in the mountains of the Hazâras (which are a spur of the Paropanisos and the Sariphi montes of our author), and loses itself



in the sands about 50 miles north-west of the city, though in ancient times it appears to have poured its waters into the Ôxos.

The tribes that peopled Hyrkania and Margiana and the other regions that lay to the eastward of the Kaspian were for the most part of Skythian origin, and some of them were nomadic. They are described by the ancient writers as brave and hardy warriors, but of repulsive aspect and manners, and addicted to inhuman practices. Ptolemy names five as belonging to Margiana—the Derbikkai, Massagetai, Parnoi, Dâai and Tapouroi.

The Derbikes are mentioned by Strabo (lib. XI, c. xi, sec. 7), who gives this account of them. "The Derbikes worship the earth. They neither sacrifice nor eat the female of any animal. Persons who attain the age of above 70 years are put to death by them, and their nearest relations eat their flesh. Old women are strangled and then buried. Those who die under 70 years of age are not eaten, but are only buried."

The Massagetai are referred to afterwards (c. xiii, sec. 3) as a tribe of nomadic Sakai, belonging to the neighbourhood of the river Askatangkss. They are mentioned by Herodotos (lib. I, c. cciv.) who says that they inhabited a great portion of the vast plain that extended eastward from the Kaspian. He then relates how Cyrus lost his life in a bloody fight against them and their queen Tomyris. Alexander came into collision with their wandering hordes during the campaign of Sogdiana as Arrian relates (*Anab.* lib. IV, cc. xvi, xvii).



As regards the origin of their name it is referred by Beal (*J. R. A. S.*, N.S., vol. XVI, pp. 257, 279) to *maiza*—'greater' (in Moeso-Gothic) and Yue-ti (or chi). He thus reverts to the old theory of Rémusat and Klaproth, that the Yue-ti were Getae, and this notwithstanding the objection of Saint-Martin stated in *Les Huns Blancs*, p. 37, n. 1. The old sound of Yue he observes was *Get*, correspondent with the Greek form *Getai*. In calling attention to the Moeso-Gothic words *maiza* (greater) and *minniza* (less) he suggests that "we have here the origin of the names Massagetae, and the Mins, the Ta Yue-chi (great Yue-chi) and the Sian Yue-chi (little Yue-chi)."

The Parnoi, according to Strabo, were a branch of the Dahai (lib. XI, c. vii, sec. 1) called by Herodotos (lib. I, c. lii) the Däoi, and by our author and Stephanos of Byzantium the Däai. Strabo (lib. XI, c. viii, 2) says of them: "Most of the Skythians beginning from the Kaspian Sea, are called D a h a i S k y t h a i, and those situated more towards the east, Massagetai and Sakai, the rest have the common appellation of Skythians, but each separate tribe has its peculiar name. All, or the greater part of them, are nomadic." Virgil (*Aen.* lib. VIII, l. 728) applies to the Dahae the epithet *indomiti*. It is all but certain that they have left traces of their name in the province of Dahestân, adjoining to Asterâbâd, as this position was within the limits of their migratory range. In the name Dâae, Dahae or Ta-hia (the Chinese form) it is commonly inferred that we have the term Tajik, that is Persian, for there is good reason to place Persians even in Trans-



CSL

oxiana long before the barbarous tribes of the Kaspian plains were heard of (See Wilson's *Arian. Antiq.*, p. 141).

The Tapouroi appear to be the same as the Tapyroi mentioned by Strabo as occupying the country between the Hyrkanoi and the Areioi. Their position, however, varied at various times.

Nisaia or Nigaia (the Nesaia of Strabo) has been identified by Wilson (*Arian. Antiq.*, pp. 142, 148) with the modern Nissa, a small town or village on the north of the Elburz mountains, between Asterâbâd and Meshd.

CAP. 11.

POSITION OF BAKTRIANÊ.

1. Baktrianê is bounded on the west by Margianê along the side already described, on the north and east by Sogdianê, along the rest of the course of the River Ôxos, and on the south by the rest of Areia, extending from the extreme point towards Margianê—

the position of which is..... 109° 39°

and by the Paropanisadai along the parallel thence prolonged, through where the range of Paropanisos diverges towards the sources of the Ôxos which lie in 119° 30' 39°

2. The following rivers which fall into the Ôxos flow through Baktrianê :—

The river Ôkhos, whose sources lie 110° 39°



and the Dargamanês, whose
sources lie $116^{\circ} 30'$ $36^{\circ} 20'$
and the Zariaspis, whose
sources lie 113° 39°
and the Artamis, whose
sources lie 114° 39°
and the Dargoidos, whose
sources lie 116° 39°
and the point where this
joins the Ôxos lies in..... $117^{\circ} 30'$ 44°

3. Of the other tributaries the Artamis and
the Zariaspis unite in..... 113° $40^{\circ} 40'$
before falling into the Ôxos

in $112^{\circ} 30'$ 44°

4. The Dargamanês and the Ôkhos also
unite in 109° $40^{\circ} 30'$
before falling into the Ôxos

in 109° 44°

5. Of the Paropanisos range, the western
part is situated in $111^{\circ} 30'$ 39°
and [the Eastern] in $119^{\circ} 30'$ 39°

6. The parts of Baktrianê in the north
and towards the River Ôxos are inhabited by
the Salaterai and the Zariaspai, and to
the south of these up towards the Salaterai the
Khomaroi, and below these the Kômoi,
then the Akinakai, then the Tambyzoi,
and below the Zariaspai the Tokharoi, a
great people, and below them the Marykaioi,
and the Skordai, and the Ouarnoi



(Varnoi), and still below those the Sabadioi, and the Oreisitoi, and the Amareis.

7. The towns of Baktrianê towards the river Óxos are the following :—

Kharakhartá	111°	44°
Zari(a)spa or Kharispa	115°	44°
Khoana.....	117°	42°
Sourogana	117° 30'	40° 30'
Phratou	119°	39° 20'

8. And near the other rivers these :—

Alikhorda.....	107°	43° 30'
Khomara	106° 30'	43° 30'
Kouriandra	109° 30'	42° 10'
Kauaris	111° 20'	43°
Astakana.....	112°	42° 20'
Ebousmonanassa or Tosmou- anassa	108° 30'	41° 20'
Menapia	113°	41° 20'
Eukratidia	115°	42°

9. Baktra, the king's re-

residence (Balkh)	116°	41°
Estobara	109° 30'	45° 20'
Marakanda (Samarkand) ...	112°	39° 15'
Marakodra	115° 20'	39° 20'

The boundaries of Baktra or Baktriana varied at different periods of history, and were never perhaps at any time fixed with much precision. According to Strabo it was the principal part of Ariana, and was separated from Sogdiana on the east and north-east by the Óxos, from Areia on the south by the chain of Paropanisos, and on



the west from Margiana by a desert region. A description of Baktriana, which Burnes, in his work on Bokhara, corroborates as very accurate, is given by Curtius (lib. VII, c. iv) and is to this effect: "The nature of the Baktrian territory is varied, and presents striking contrasts. In one place it is well-wooded, and bears vines which yield grapes of great size and sweetness. The soil is rich and well-watered—and where such a genial soil is found corn is grown, while lands with an inferior soil are used for the pasturage of cattle. To this fertile tract succeeds another much more extensive, which is nothing but a wild waste of sand parched with drought, alike without inhabitant and without herbage. The winds, moreover, which blow hither from the Pontic Sea, sweep before them the sand that covers the plain, and this, when it gathers into heaps, looks, when seen from a distance, like a collection of great hills; whereby all traces of the road that formerly existed are completely obliterated. Those, therefore, who cross these plains, watch the stars by night as sailors do at sea, and direct their course by their guidance. In fact they almost see better under the shadow of night than in the glare of sunshine. They are, consequently, unable to find their way in the day-time, since there is no track visible which they can follow, for the brightness of the luminaries above is shrouded in darkness. Should now the wind which rises from the sea overtake them, the sands with which it is laden would completely overwhelm them. Nevertheless in all the more favoured localities the number of men and of horses that are



there generated is exceedingly great. Baktra itself, the capital city of that region, is situated under mount Paropanisos. The river Bactrus passes by its walls: and gave the city and the region their name." This description is in agreement with the general character of the country from Balkh to Bokhara, in which oases of the most productive soil alternate with wastes of sand.

Baktra figures very early in history. Its capital indeed, Baktra (now Balkh) is one of the oldest cities in the world. The Baktrian Walls is one of the places which Euripides (*Bakkhai*, l. 15) represents Dionysos to have visited in the course of his eastern peregrinations. Ninus, as we learn through Ktésias, marched into Baktriana with a vast army and, with the assistance of Semiramis, took its capital. In the time of Darius it was a satrapy of the Persian empire and paid a tribute of 360 talents. Alexander the Great, when marching in pursuit of Bessus, passed through Baktria and, crossing the Óxos, proceeded as far as Marakanda (Samarkand). Having subjugated the regions lying in that direction, he returned to Baktra and there spent the winter before starting to invade India. Some years after the conqueror's death Seleukos reduced Baktria, and annexed it to his other dominions. It was wrested, however, from the hands of the third prince of his line about the year 256 B.C. or perhaps later, by Antiokhos Theos or Theodotos, who made Baktria an independent kingdom. His successors were ambitious and enterprising, and appear to have extended their authority along the downward course of the



Indus even to the ocean, and southward along the coast as far as the mouth of the Narmadâ. The names of these kings have been recovered from their coins found in great numbers both in India and in Afghanistan. This Graeko-Baktrian empire, after having subsisted for about two centuries and a half, was finally overthrown by the invasion of different hordes of the Sakai, named, as Strabo informs us, the Asioi, Pasianoi, Tokharoi and Sakarauloi.³⁶ These Sakai yielded in their turn to barbarians of their own kindred or at least of their own type, the Skythians, who gave their name to the Indus valley and the regions adjoining the Gulf of Khambhât. Among the most notable Indo-Skythian kings were Kadphises and Kanerkes who reigned at the end of the first and the beginning of the second century of our æra and, therefore, not very long before the time of Ptolemy. Between the Indo-Skythian and Muhammadan periods was interposed the predominancy of Persia in the regions of which we have been speaking.

Ptolemy mentions five rivers which fall into the Ôxos: the Ôkhos, Dargamanês, Zariaspis, Artamis, and Dargoidos, of which the Zariaspis and Artamis unite before reaching the Ôxos. Ptolemy's account cannot be reconciled with the existing hydrography of the country. The Dargamanês is called by Ammianus (lib. XXIII, c. vi) the Orga-

³⁶ The Wu-sun (of Chinese history) are apparently to be identified with the Asii or Asiani, who, according to Strabo occupied the upper waters of the Iaxartes, and who are classed as nomades with the Tokhéri and Sakarauli (p. Sara-Kauli, *i.e.*, Sarikulis).—Kingsmill, in *J. R. A. S., N. S.*, vol. XIV, p. 79.



menes. The Artamis, Wilson thinks, may be the river now called the Dakash (*Ariana Antiqua*, p. 162) and the Dargamanês, the present river of Ghori or Kunduz which is a tributary of the Ôkhos and not of the Ôxos as in Ptolemy. The Ôkhos itself has not been identified with certainty. According to Kinneir it is the Tezen or Tejend which, rising in Sarâkhs, and receiving many confluent, falls into the Kaspian in N. L. 33° 41'. According to Elphinstone it is the river of Herat, either now lost in the sand or going to the Ôxos (*Ariana Antiqua*, p. 146). Bunbury (vol. II, p. 284) points out that in Strabo the Ôkhos is an independent river, emptying into the Kaspian. The Ôkhos of Artemidoros, he says, may be certainly identified with the Attrek, whose course, till lately, was very imperfectly known.

Ptolemy gives a list of thirteen tribes which inhabited Baktrianê. Their names are obscure, and are scarcely mentioned elsewhere.³⁷

In the list of towns few known names occur. The most notable are Baktra, Marakanda, Eukratidia and Zariaspa. Baktra, as has been already stated, is the modern Balkh. Heeren (*Asiatic Nations*, 2nd edit., vol. I, p. 424), writes of it in these terms: "The city of Baktra must be regarded as the commercial entrepôt of Eastern Asia: its name belongs to a people who never cease to afford

³⁷ Prof. Beal (*J. R. A. S., N. S.*, Vol. XVI, p. 253), connects the name of the Tokharoi with Tu-ho-lo the name of a country or kingdom Tukhârâ, frequently mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang. The middle symbol *ho*, he says, represents the rough aspirate, and we should thus get Tahra or Tuxra, from which would come the Greek Tokharoi.



matter for historical details, from the time they are first mentioned. Not only does Baktra constantly appear as a city of wealth and importance in every age of the Persian empire, but it is continually interwoven in the traditions of the East with the accounts of Semiramis and other conquerors. It stood on the borders of the gold country, 'in the road of the confluence of nations,' according to an expression of the *Zend-avesta*; and the conjecture that in this part of the world the human race made its first advance in civilisation, seems highly probable." The name of Balkh is from the Sanskrit name of the people of Baktra, the Bahlikas. Marakanda is Samarkand. It was the capital of Sogdiana, but Ptolemy places it in Baktriané, and considerably to the south of Baktra, although its actual latitude is almost 3 degrees to the north. It was one of the cities of Sogdiana which Alexander destroyed. Its circumference was estimated at 64 stadia, or about 7 miles. The name has been interpreted to mean "warlike province." Eukratidia received its name from the Graeko-Baktrian king, Eukratidês, by whom it was founded. Its site cannot be identified. Pliny makes Zariaspa the same as Baktra, but this must be a mistake. No satisfactory site has been as yet assigned to it.

CAP. 12.

POSITION OF THE SOGDIANOI.

The Sogdianoï are bounded on the west by that part of Skythia which extends from the section of the Ôxos which is towards Baktriané and Margiané through the Oxeian mountains



as far as the section of the river Iaxartes, which lies in 110° E. 49° N. ; on the north likewise by a part of Skythia along the section of the Iaxartes extended thence as far as the limit where its course bends, which lies in 120° E. $48^{\circ} 30'$ N. On the east by the Sakai along the (bending) of the Iaxartes as far as the sources of the bending which lie in 125° E. 43° N., and by the line prolonged from the Sakai to an extreme point which lies in 125° E. $38^{\circ} 30'$ N., and on the east and the south and again on the west by Baktriané along the section of the Ôxos already mentioned and by the Caucasian mountains especially so-called, and the adjoining line and the limits as stated, and the sources of the Ôxos.

2. The mountains called the Sogdian extend between the two rivers, and have their extremities lying in 111° 47°
and 122° $46^{\circ} 30'$

3. From these mountains a good many nameless rivers flow in contrary directions to meet these *two rivers*, and of these nameless rivers one forms the Oxeian Lake, the middle of which lies in 111° E. 45° N., and other two streams descend from the same hilly regions as the Iaxartes—the regions in question are called the Highlands of the Kômédai. Each of these streams falls into the Iaxartes ; one of them is called D é m o s and

its sources lie in 124° 43°



Its junction with the river		
Iaxartes occurs in	123°	47°
The other is the Baskatis		
whose sources lie in	123°	43°
Its junction with the river		
Iaxartes occurs in	121°	47° 30'

4. The country towards the Oxeian mountains is possessed by the Paskai, and the parts towards the most northern section of the Iaxartes by the Iatioi, and the Tokharoi, below whom are the Angaloi; then along the Sogdian mountains the Oxydrangai and the Drybaktai, and the Kandaroi, and below the mountains the Mardyenoï, and along the Ôxos the Ôxeianoï and the Khôrasmioï, and farther east than these the Drepsianoï, and adjoining both the rivers, and still further east than the above the Anieseis along the Iaxartes, and the Kirrhâdai (or Kirrhodeeis) along the Ôxos, and between the Kaukasos Range and Imaos the country called Ouandabanda.

5. Towns of the Sogdianoï in the highlands along the Iaxartes are these:—

Kyreskhata	124°	43° 40'
Along the Ôxos:—		
Oxeiana	117° 30'	44° 20'
Marouka	117° 15'	43° 40'
Kholbêsina	121°	43°

6. Between the rivers and higher up—



Trybaktra.....	112° 15'	
Alexandria Oxeiana.....	113°	44° 20'
Indikomordana	115°	44° 20'
Drepsa (or Rhepsa) the Metropolis	120°	45°
Alexandria Eskhatê (i.e. Ultima)	122°	41°

Sogdiana was divided from Bactriana by the river Oxos and extended northward from thence to the river Iaxartes. The Sakai lay along the eastern frontier and Skythic tribes along the western. The name exists to this day, being preserved in Soghd which designates the country lying along the river Kohik from Bokhara eastward to Samarkand. The records of Alexander's expedition give much information regarding this country, for the Makedonian troops were engaged for the better part of three years in effecting its subjugation.

In connexion with Sogdiana, Ptolemy mentions four mountain ranges—the Caucasian, the Sogdian, the mountain district of the Komédai, and Imaos. Kaukasos was the general name applied by the Makedonians to the great chain which extended along the northern frontiers of Afghanistan, and which was regarded as a prolongation of the real Kaukasos. Ptolemy uses it here in a specific sense to designate that part of the chain which formed the eastern continuation of the Paropamisos towards Imaos. Imaos is the meridian chain which intersects the Kaukasos, and is now called Bolor Tâgh. Ptolemy places it about 8 degrees too far eastward. The



CSL

Sogdian Mountains, placed by Ptolemy between the Iaxartes and Ôxos, towards their sources, are the Thian Shan. The Kômêdai, who gave their name to the third range, were, according to Ptolemy, the inhabitants of the hill-country which lay to the east of Baktriana and up whose valley lay the route of the caravans from Baktra, bound for Sêrika across Imaus or the Thsunglung. Cunningham has identified them with the Kiu-mi-tho (Kumidha) of Hsien Tsiang. Their mountain district is that called Muz-tâgh.

The rivers mentioned in connexion with Sogdiana are the Ôxos, and the Iaxartes, with its two tributaries, the Baskatis and the Dêmos. The Ôxos takes its rise in the Pamir³³ Lake, called the Sari-Kul (or Yellow Lake), at a distance of fully 300 miles to the south of the Iaxartes. It is fed on its north bank by many smaller streams which run due south from the Pamir uplands, breaking the S.W. face of that region into a series of valleys, which, though rugged, are of exuberant fertility. Its course

³³ The Pamir plateau between Badakshan and Yarkand connects several chains of mountains, viz. the Hindu Kush in the S.W. the Kuen-luen in the E., the Karakorum in the N.W. the Thian-shân chain in the north, which runs from Tirak Dawan and Ming-yol to the Western Farghana Pass. This plateau is called *Bâm-i-dunyâ* or *Roof of the World*. With regard to the name Pamir Sir H. Rawlinson says: "My own conjecture is that the name of Pamir, or Fâmir, as it is always written by the Arabs, is derived from the Fani (*φάνοι*), who, according to Strabo bounded the Greek kingdom of Baktria to the E. (XI. 14) and whose name is also preserved in Fân-tâû, the Fân-Lake, &c. Fâmir for Fân-mîr would then be a compound like Kashmir, Aj-mîr, Jessel-mîr, &c. signifying 'the lake country of the Fâ-ni.'" (*J. R. G. S.* XLII. p. 189, n.)



hundreds of miles through arid and saline steppes till before reaching the sea of Aral it is dissipated into a network of canals, both natural and artificial. Its delta, which would otherwise have remained a desert, has thus been converted into a fruitful garden, capable of supporting a teeming population, and it was one of the very earliest seats of civilization.³⁰ The deflexion of the waters of the Ôxos into the Aral, as Sir H. Rawlinson points out, has been caused in modern times not by any upheaval of the surface of the Turcoman desert, but by the simple accidents of fluvial action in an alluvial soil. The name of the river is in Sanskrit *Vakshu*, Mongolian, Ba'shu, Tibetan *Pakshu* Chinese *Po-thsu*, Arabic and Persian *Vakhsh-an* or *ab*--from Persian *vah* = 'pure,' or Sanskrit *Vah* = 'to flow.' The region embracing the head-waters of the Ôxos appears to have been the scene of the primæval Aryan Paradise. The four rivers thereof, as named by the Brahmans, were the Sita, the Alakananda, the Vakshu, and the Bhadro = respectively, according to Wilson to the Hoang-ho, the Ganges, the Ôxos, and the Oby. According to the Buddhists the rivers were the Ganges, the Indus, the Ôxos, and the Sita, all of which they derived from a great central lake in the plateau of Pamir, called A-neou-ta = Kara-kul or Sarik-kul Lake.

The *Iaxartes* is now called the *Syr-darya* or

³⁰ "Abu Rihan says that the Solar Calendar of Khwâ-rasm was the most perfect scheme for the measurement of time with which he was acquainted. Also that the Khwâ-rasmians dated originally from an epoch anterior by 980 years to the æra of the Selencidae-134 B.C." (See *Quarterly Review*, No. 240, Art. on *Central Asia*).



Yellow River. The ancients sometimes called it the Araxes, but, according to D'Anville, this is but an appellative common to it with the Amu or Ôxos, the Armenian Aras and the Rha or Volga. The name Iaxartes was not properly a Greek word but was borrowed from the barbarians by whom, as Arrian states (*Anab.* lib. III. c. xxx), it was called the Orxantes. It was probably derived from the Sanskrit root *kshar*, "to flow" with a semitic feminine ending, and this etymology would explain the modern form of *S'rr*. See *J. R. G. S.* XLII. p. 492, n. The Iaxartes rises in the high plateau south of Lake Issyk-kul in the Thian Shan. Its course is first to westward through the valley of Khokan, where it receives numerous tributaries. It then bifurcates, the more northern branch retaining the name of Syr-darya. This flows towards the north-west, and after a course of 1150 miles from its source enters the Sea of Aral. Ptolemy however, like all the other classical writers, makes it enter the Kaspian sea. Humboldt accounts for this apparent error by adducing facts which go to show that the tract between the Aral and the Kaspian was once the bed of an united and continuous sea, and that the Kaspian of the present day is the small residue of a once mighty Aralo-Kaspian Sea. Ammianus Marcellinus (lib. XXIII, c. vi), describing Central Asia in the upper course of the Iaxartes which falls into the Kaspian, speaks of two rivers, the Araxates and Dymas (probably the Démos of Ptolemy) which, rushing impetuously down from the mountains and passing into a level plain, form therein what is called the Oxian lake, which is spread over a vast area. This is the



CSL

earliest intimation of the Sea of Aral. (See Smith's *Dict. of Anc. Geog.* s. v.). Bunbury, however, says (vol. II, pp. 641-2): "Nothing but the unwillingness of modern writers to admit that the ancients were unacquainted with so important a feature in the geography of Central Asia as the Sea of Aral could have led them to suppose it represented by the Oxiana Palus of Ptolemy. While that author distinctly describes both the Jaxartes and the Oxus as flowing into the Caspian Sea, he speaks of a range of mountains called the Sogdian Mountains, which extend between the two rivers, from which flow several nameless streams into those two, one of which forms the Oxian lake. This statement exactly tallies with the fact that the Polytimetos or river of Soghd, which rises in the mountains in question, does not flow into the Oxus, but forms a small stagnant lake called Kara-kul or Denghiz; and there seems no doubt this was the lake meant by Ptolemy. It is true that Ammianus Marcellinus, in his description of these regions, which is very vague and inaccurate, but is based for the most part upon Ptolemy, terms it a large and widespread lake, but this is probably nothing more than a rhetorical flourish." The Jaxartes was regarded as the boundary towards the east of the Persian Empire, which it separated from the nomadic Skythians. The soldiers of Alexander believed it to be the same as the Tanais or Don.

In the list of the tribes of Sogdiana some names occur which are very like Indian, the Kandaroï, who may be the Gandhâras, the Mardyënoi, the Madras, the Takhoroï, the Takurs, and the



CSL

Kirrhadai (or Kirrhodeeis) the Kirāta. The name of the Khorasmioi has been preserved to the present day in that of Khwārazm, one of the designations of the Khanate of Khiva. The position of the Khorasmioi may be therefore assigned to the regions south of the Sea of Aral, which is sometimes called after them the Sea of Khwārazm. The Drepsianoi had their seats on the borders of Bactria, as Drepsa, one of their cities and the capital of the country, may be identified with Andarāb, which was a Bactrian town. It is called by Strabo Adrapsa and Darapsa—(lib. XI, c. xi, 2, and lib. XV, c. ii, 10) and Drapsaka by Arrian—(*Anab.* lib. III, c. 39). Bunbury (vol. I, p. 427, n. 3) remarks: "The Drepsa of Ptolemy, though doubtless the same name, cannot be the same place (as the Drapsaka of Arrian, *Anab.* lib. III, c. xxix.) as that author places it in Sogdiana, considerably to the north of Marakanda." Ptolemy, however, as I have already pointed out, places Marakanda to the south of Baktra. Kingsmill (*J. R. A. S., N. S.,* vol. XIV, p. 82) identifies Darapsa with the Lam-shi-ch'eng of the Chinese historians. It was the capital of their Takhia (Tokhāra—Bactria) which was situated about 2000 li south-west of Ta-wan (Yarkand), to the south of the Kwai-shui (Óxos). The original form of the name was probably, he says, Darampsā. In Ta-wan he finds the Phrynoi of Strabo. The region between Kaukasos and Imaös, Ptolemy calls Vandabanda, a name of which, as Wilson conjectures, traces are to be found in the name of Badakshān.

With regard to the towns Mr. Vaux remarks,



(Smith's *Dict. s. v. Sogdiana*): "The historians of Alexander's march leave us to suppose that Sogdiana abounded with large towns, but many of these, as Prof. Wilson has remarked, were probably little more than forts erected along the lines of the great rivers to defend the country from the incursions of the barbarous tribes to its N. and E. Yet these writers must have had good opportunity of estimating the force of these places, as Alexander appears to have been the best part of three years in this and the adjoining province of Baktriana. The principal towns, of which the names have been handed down to us, were Kyreskhata or Kyropolis on the Iaxartes (Steph. Byz. *s. v.*; Curt. lib. VI, c. vi) Gaza (Ghaz or Ghazni, Ibn Haukal, p. 270); Alexandria Ultima (Arrian, lib. III, c. xxx; Curt. *l. c.*; Am. Marc., lib. XXIII, c. vi) doubtless in the neighbourhood, if not on the site of the present Khojend; Alexandria Oxiana (Steph. Byz. *s. v.*); Nautaka (Arrian, *An.* lib. III, c. xxviii; lib. IV, c. xviii) in the neighbourhood of Karshi or Naksheb. Brankhidae, a place traditionally said to have been colonized by a Greek population; and Marginia (Curt., lib. VII, c. x, 15) probably the present Marghinan."

CAP. 13.

POSITION OF THE SAKAI.

[*Map of Asia 7.*]

1. The Sakai are bounded on the west by the Sogdianoi along their eastern side already described, on the north by Skythia along the



line parallel to the river Iaxartes as far as the limit of the country which lies in 130° E. 49° N. on the east in like manner by Skythia along the meridian lines prolonged from thence and through the adjacent range of mountains called Askatangkas as far as the station at Mount Imaös, whence traders start on their journey to Sêra which lies in 140° E. 43° N., and through Mount Imaös as it ascends to the north as far as the limit of the country which lies in 143° E. 35° N., and on the south by Imaös itself along the line adjoining the limits that have been stated.

2. The country of the Sakai is inhabited by nomads. They have no towns, but dwell in woods and caves. Among the Sakai is the mountain district, already mentioned, of the Kômédai, of which the ascent from the Sogdianoï lies in 125° 43°
 And the parts towards the valley of the Kômédai lie in..... 130° 39°
 And the so-called Stone Tower lies in 135° 43°

3. The tribes of the Sakai, along the Iaxartes, are the Karataï and the Komaroi, and the people who have all the mountain region are the Kômédai, and the people along the range of Askatangka the Massagetai; and the people between are the Grynaïoi Skythai and the Toörnai, below whom, along Mount Imaös, are the Byltai.



In the name of the mountain range on the east of the Sakai, A s k a - t a n g k - a s, the middle syllable represents the Turkish word *tdgh*—'mountain.' The tribe of the K a r a t a i, which was seated along the banks of the Iaxartes, bears a name of common application, chiefly to members of the Mongol family—that of Karait. The name of the Massagetai, Latham has suggested, may have arisen out of the common name *Mustāgh*, but Beal, as already stated, refers it to the Moeso-gothic "*maiza*" and "Yue-chi—Getæ." The B y l t a i are the people of what is now called Little Tibet and also Baltistân.

CAP. 14.

POSITION OF SKYTHIA WITHIN IMAÖS.

[*Map of Asia 7.*]

1. S k y t h i a within Imaös is bounded on the west by Sarmatia in Asia along the side already traced, on the north by an unknown land, on the east by Mount Imaös ascending to the north pretty nearly along the meridian of the starting-place already mentioned as far as the unknown land $140^{\circ} 63^{\circ}$, on the south and also on the east by the Sakai and the Sogdianoï and by Marginê along their meridians already mentioned as far as the Hyrkanian Sea at the mouth of the Ôxos, and also by the part of the Hyrkanian Sea lying between the north of the Ôxos and the river Rhâ according to such an outline.



2. The bend of the River Rhâ which marks the boundary of Sarmatia and Skythia..... 85° 54°
 with the mouth of the river Rhâ which lies in 87° 30' 48° 50'
 Mouth of the river Rhy-mos 91° 48° 45'
 Mouth of the river Daïx ... 94° 48° 45'
 Mouth of the river Iaxartes 97° 48°
 Mouth of the river Iästos ... 100° 47° 20'
 Mouth of the river Polyti-mêtos 103° 45° 30'
 Aspapôta, a town 102° 44°
 after which comes the mouth of the Ôxos.

3. The mountains of Skythia within Imaös are the more eastern parts of the Hyperborean hills and the mountains called Alana, whose extremities lie 105° 59°
 and 118° 59° 30'

4. And the Rymmik mountains whose extremities lie 90° 54°
 and 99° 47° 30'
 from which flow the Rymmos and some other streams that discharge into the River Rhâ, uniting with the Daïx river.

5. And the Norosson range, of which the extremities lie 97° 53° 30'
 and 106° 52° 30'
 and from this range flow the Daïx and some other tributaries of the Iaxartes.



6. And the range of mountains called Aspisia whose extremities lie $111^{\circ} \quad 55^{\circ} 30'$
and $117^{\circ} \quad 52^{\circ} 30'$
and from these some streams flow into the River Iaxartes.

7. And the mountains called Tapoura whose extremities lie $120^{\circ} \quad 56^{\circ}$
and $125^{\circ} \quad 49^{\circ}$
from which also some streams flow into the Iaxartes.

8. In addition to these in the depth of the region of the streams are the Syêba mountains whose extremities lie $121^{\circ} \quad 58^{\circ}$
and $132^{\circ} \quad 62^{\circ}$
and the mountains called the Anarea whose extremities lie $130^{\circ} \quad 56^{\circ}$
and $137^{\circ} \quad 50^{\circ}$
after which is the bend in the direction of Imaôs continuing it towards the north.

9. All the territory of this Skythia in the north, adjoining the unknown regions, is inhabited by the people commonly called the Alanoi Skythai and the Souobênnoi and the Alanorsoi, and the country below these by the Saitianoï and the Massaioï and the Syêboï, and along Imaôs on the outer side the Tektosakes, and near the most eastern sources of the river Rhâ the Rhoboskoi below whom the Asmanoï.

10. Then the Paniardoï, below whom, more towards the river, the country of Kano-



dipsa, and below it the Koraxoi, then the Orgasoi, after whom as far as the sea the Erymmoi, to east of whom are the Asiôtai, then the Aorsoi, after whom are the Iaxartai, a great race seated along their homonymous river as far as to where it bends towards the Tapoura Mountains, and again below the Saitanioi are the Mologênnoi, below whom, as far as the Rymnik range, are the Samnîtai.

11. And below the Massaioi and the Alana Mountains are the Zaratai and the Sasones, and further east than the Rymnik Mountains are the Tybiakai, after whom, below the Zaratai, are the Tabiênnoi and the Iâstai and the Makhaitêgoi along the range of Norosson, after whom are the Norosbeis and the Norossoi, and below these the Kakhagai Skythai along *the country of the Iaxartai*.

12. Further west than the Aspisia range are the Aspisioi Skythai, and further east the Galaktophagoi Skythai, and in like manner the parts farther east than the Tapoura and Syêba ranges are inhabited by the Tapoureoi.

13. The slopes and summits of the Anarea Mountains and Mount Askatangkas are inhabited by the homonymous Anareoi Skythai below the Alanorsoi, and the Askatangkai



CSL

Skythai further east than the Tapourei, and as far as Mount Imaös.

14. But the parts between the Tapoura Mountains and the slope towards the mouth of the Iaxartes and the seacoast between the two rivers are possessed by the Ariakai, along the Iaxartes and below these the Namostai, then the Sagaraukai, and along the river Oxos the Rhibioi, who have a town

Dauaba104° 45°.

The country of the Skyths is spread over a vast area in the east of Europe and in Western and Central Asia. The knowledge of the Skyths by the Greeks dates from the earliest period of their literature, for in Homer (*Iliad*, lib. XIII, l. 4) we find mention made of the Galaktophagoi (milk-eaters) and the Hippemolgoi (mare-milkers) which must have been Skythic tribes, since the milking of mares is a practice distinctive of the Skyths. Ptolemy's division of Skythia into within and beyond Imaös is peculiar to himself, and may have been suggested by his division of India into within and beyond the Ganges. Imaös, as has already been pointed out is the Bolor chain, which has been for ages the boundary between Turkistán and China. Ptolemy, however, placed Imaös too far to the east, 8° further than the meridian of the principal source of the Ganges. The cause of this mistake, as a writer in Smith's *Dictionary* points out, arose from the circumstance that the data upon which Ptolemy came to his conclusion were selected from two different sources. The Greeks first became acquainted with the



Kômédorum Montes when they passed the Indian Kaukasos between Kábul and Balkh, and advanced over the plateau of Bâmiyân along the west slopes of Bolor, where Alexander found in the tribe of the Sibae the descendants of Hêraklês, just as Marco Polo and Burnes met with people who boasted that they had sprung from the Makedonian conquerors. The north of Bolor was known from the route of the traffic of the Séres. The combination of notations obtained from such different sources was imperfectly made, and hence the error in longitude. This section of Skythia comprised Khiva, the country of the Kosaks, Ferghâna, Tashkend, and the parts about the Balkash.

The rivers mentioned in connexion with Skythia within Imaös are the Ôxos, Iaxartes, Rhâ, Rhymmos, Daïx, Iästos and Polytimêtos. The Rhâ is the Volga, which is sometimes called the Rhau by the Russians who live in its neighbourhood. Ptolemy appears to be the first Greek writer who mentions it. The Rhymmos is a small stream between the Rhâ and the Ural river called the Narynchara. The Daïx is the Isik or Ural river. The Iästos was identified by Humboldt with the Kizil-darya, which disappeared in the course of last century, but the dry bed of which can be traced in the barren wastes of Kizil-koum in W. Turkestân. With regard to the Polytimêtos, Wilson says (*Arian. Antiq.* p. 168); "There can be no hesitation in recognizing the identity of the Polytimêtos and the Zarafshân, or river of Samarkand, called also the Kohik, or more correctly the river of the Kohak; being so termed from its passing by



CSL

a rising ground, a Koh-ak, a 'little hill' or 'hillock,' which lies to the east of the city. According to Strabo, this river traversed Sogdiana and was lost in the sands. Curtius describes it as entering a cavern and continuing its course underground. The river actually terminates in a small lake to the south of Bokhara, the Dangiz, but in the dry weather the supply of water is too scanty to force its way to the lake, and it is dispersed and evaporated in the sands. What the original appellation may have been does not appear, but the denominations given by the Greeks and Persians 'the much-bonoured' or 'the gold-shedding' stream convey the same idea, and intimate the benefits it confers upon the region which it waters." Ptolemy is wide astray in making it enter the Kaspian.

The mountains enumerated are the Alana, Rhyrnika, Norosson, Aspisia, Tapoura, Syêba, and Anarea. By the Alana Mountains, which lay to the east of the Hyperboreans, it has been supposed that Ptolemy designated the northern part of the Ural Chain. If so, he has erroneously given their direction as from west to east. The Rhyrnika mountains were probably another branch of that great meridian chain which consists of several ranges which run nearly parallel. The Norosson may be taken as Ptolemy's designation for the southern portion of this chain. The Aspisia and Tapoura mountains lay to the north of the Iaxartes. The latter, which are placed three degrees further east than the Aspisia, may be the western part of the Altai. The Syêba stretched still farther eastward with an inclina-



CSL

tion northward. To the southward of them were the Anareia, which may be placed near the sources of the Obi and the Irtysh, forming one of the western branches of the Altai. Ptolemy erroneously prolongs the chain of Imaös to these high latitudes.

Ptolemy has named no fewer than 38 tribes belonging to this division of Skythia. Of these the best known are the Alani, who belonged also to Europe, where they occupied a great portion of Southern Russia. At the time when Arrian the historian was Governor of Kappadokia under Hadrian, the Asiatic Alani attacked his province, but were repelled. He subsequently wrote a work on the tactics to be observed against the Alani (*ἑκταξίς κατ' Ἀλανῶν*) of which some fragments remain. The seats of the Alani were in the north of Skythia and adjacent to *the unknown land*, which may be taken to mean the regions stretching northward beyond Lake Balkash. The position of the different tribes is fixed with sufficient clearness in the text. These tribes were essentially nomadic, pastoral and migratory—hence in Ptolemy's description of their country towns are singularly conspicuous by their absence.

CAP. 15.

THE POSITION OF SKYTHIA BEYOND IMAÖS.

[*Map of Asia*, 8.]

1. Skythia beyond Mount Imaös is bounded on the west by Skythia within Imaös, and the Sakai along the whole curvature of the



mountains towards the north, and on the north by the unknown land, and on the east by Serikê in a straight line whereof the extremities lie in 150° 63°
and 160° 35°
and on the south by a part of India beyond the Ganges along the parallel of latitude which cuts the southern extremity of the line just mentioned.

2. In this division is situated the western part of the Auxakian Mountains, of which the extremities lie 149° 49°
and 165° 54°
and the western part of the mountains called Kasia, whose extremities lie in 152° 41°
and..... 162° 44°
and also the western portion of Emôdos, whose extremities lie in 153° 36°
and..... 165° 36°
and towards the Auxakians, the source of the River Oikhardês lying in 153° 51°

3. The northern parts of this Skythia are possessed by the Abioi Skythai, and the parts below them by the Hippophagoi Skythai, after whom the territory of Auxakitis extends onward, and below this again, at the starting place already mentioned, the Kasian land, below which are the Khatai Skythai, and then succeeds the Akhasa land, and below it along the Emôda the Kharunaioi Skythai.



4. The towns in this division are these:—

Auxakia	143°	49° 40'
Issédôn Skythikê	150°	49° 30'
Khaurana	150°	37° 15'
Soita	145°	35° 20'

Skythia beyond Imaös embraced Ladakh, Tibet, Chinese Tartary and Mongolia. Its mountains were the Auxakian and Kasian chains, both of which extended into Sêrikê, and Emôdos. The Auxakians may have formed a part of the Altai, and the Kasians, which Ptolemy places five degrees further south, are certainly the mountains of Kâshgar. The Emôdos are the Himalayas.

The only river named in this division is the Oikhardês, which has its sources in three different ranges, the Auxakian, the Asmiræan and the Kasian. According to a writer in Smith's *Dictionary* the Oikhardês "may be considered to represent the river formed by the union of the streams of Khotan, Yarkand, Kashgar and Ushi, and which flows close to the hills at the base of the Thian-shan. Saint-Martin again inclines to think Œchardês may be a designation of the Indus, while still flowing northward from its sources among the Himalayas. "Skardo," he says, (*Étude*, p. 420) "the capital of the Balti, bears to the name of the Oikhardês (Chardi in Amm. Marc. 2) a resemblance with which one is struck. If the identification is well founded, the river Oichardês will be the portion of the Indus which traverses Balti and washes the walls of Skardo."

In the north of the division Ptolemy places the *Abioi Skythai*. Homer, along with the Galak-



tophagoi and Hippémolgoi, mentions the Abioi. Some think that the term in the passage designates a distinct tribe of Skythians, but others take it to be a common adjective, characterizing the Skythians in general as very scantily supplied with the means of subsistence. On the latter supposition the general term must in the course of time have become a specific appellation. Of the four towns which Ptolemy assigns to the division, one bears a well-known name, Issédôn, which he calls Skythikê, to distinguish it from Issédôn in Serikê. The name of the Issédônes occurs very early in Greek literature, as they are referred to by the Spartan poet Alkman, who flourished between 671 and 631 B. C. He calls them Assedones (*Frag.* 94, ed. Welcker). They are mentioned also by Hekataios of Miletos. In very remote times they were driven from the steppes over which they wandered by the Arimaspians. They then drove out the Skythians, who in turn drove out the Kimmerians. Traces of these migrations are found in the poem of Aristéas of Prokonnesos, who is fabled to have made a pilgrimage to the land of the Issédones. Their position has been assigned to the east of Ichin, in the steppe of the central horde of the Kirghiz, and that of the Arimaspi on the northern declivity of the Altai. (Smith's *Dict.* s. v.) This position is not in accordance with Ptolemy's indications. Herodotos, while rejecting the story of the Arimaspians and the griffins that guarded their gold, admits at the same time that by far the greatest quantity of gold came from the north of Europe, in which he included the tracts along the Ural, and Altai



ranges. The abundance of gold among the Skythians on the Euxine is attested by the contents of their tombs, which have been opened in modern times. (See Bunbury, vol. I, p. 200.)

Regarding Ptolemy's Skythian geography, Bunbury says (vol. II, p. 597): "It must be admitted that Ptolemy's knowledge of the regions on either side of the Imaos was of the vaguest possible character. Eastward of the Rhâ (Volga), which he regarded as the limit between Asiatic Sarmatia and Skythia, and north of the Iaxartes, which he describes like all previous writers as falling into the Kaspian—he had, properly speaking, no geographical knowledge whatever. Nothing had reached him beyond the names of tribes reported at second-hand, and frequently derived from different authorities, who would apply different appellations to the same tribe, or extend the same name to one or more of the wandering hordes, who were thinly dispersed over this vast extent of territory. Among the names thus accumulated, a compilation that is probably as worthless as that of Pliny, notwithstanding its greater pretensions to geographical accuracy, we find some that undoubtedly represent populations really existing in Ptolemy's time, such as the Alani, the Aorsi, &c., associated with others that were merely poetical or traditional, such as the Abii, Galaktophagi and Hippophagi, while the Issêdones, who were placed by Herodotos immediately east of the Tanais, are strangely transferred by Ptolemy to the far East, on the very borders of Serika; and he has even the name of a town which he calls Issedon Serika, and to which he



assigns a position in longitude 22° east of Mount Imaös, and not less than 46° east of Baktra. In one essential point, as has been already pointed out, Ptolemy's conception of Skythia differed from that of all preceding geographers, that instead of regarding it as bounded on the north and east by the sea, and consequently of comparatively limited extent, he considered it as extending without limit in both directions, and bounded only by 'the unknown land,' or, in other words, limited only by his own knowledge."

CAP. 16.

POSITION OF SERIKÉ.

[*Map of Asia*, 8].

Seriké is bounded on the west by Skythia, beyond Mount Imaös, along the line already mentioned, on the north by the unknown land along the same parallel as that through Thulé, and on the east, likewise by the unknown land along the meridian of which the extremities lie..... $180^{\circ} 63^{\circ}$
and $180^{\circ} 55^{\circ}$
and on the south by the rest of India beyond the Ganges through the same parallel as far as the extremity lying $173^{\circ} 55^{\circ}$
and also by the Sinai, through the line prolonged till it reaches the already mentioned extremity towards the unknown land.

2. Seriké is girdled by the mountains called Anniba, whose extremities lie ... $153^{\circ} 60^{\circ}$
and $171^{\circ} 56^{\circ}$



and by the eastern part of the Auxakians,
of which the extremity lies165° 54'
and by the mountains called the Asmiraia
whose extremities lie167° 47' 30'
and174° 47' 30'
and by the eastern part of the Kasia range,
whose extremities lie162° 44'
and171° 40'
and by Mount Thagonron whose
centre lies.....170° 43'
and also by the eastern portion of the moun-
tains called Emôda and Sêrika, whose extremity
lies.....165° 36'
and by the range called Ottorokorrhas, whose
extremities lie169° 36'
and176° 38'

3. There flow through the far greatest por-
tion of Sêrikê two rivers, the Oikhardês, one of
whose sources is placed with the Auxakioi, and
the other which is placed in the Asmiraian
mountains lies in174° 47' 30'
and where it bends towards the Kasia
range160° 48' 30'
but the source in them lies.....161° 44' 15'
and the other river is called the Bautisos, and
this has one of its sources in the Kasia range
in160° 43'
another in Ottorokorrha.....176° 39'
and it bends towards the Emôda in 168° 39'
and its source in these lies.....160° 37'

4. The most northern parts of Sêrike are



inhabited by tribes of cannibals, below whom is the nation of the Anniboi, who occupy the slopes and summits of the homonymous mountains. Between these and the Auxakioi is the nation of the Syzyges, below whom are the Dâmnai, then as far as the river Oikhardes the Pialai (or Piaddai), and below the river the homonymous Oikhardai.

5. And again farther east than the Anniboi are the Garinaioi and the Rhabannai or Rhabannaioi, and below the country of Asmiraia, above the homonymous mountains. Beyond these mountains as far as the Kasia range the Issêdones, a great race, and further east than these the Throanoi, and below these the Ithagouroi, to the east of the homonymous mountains, below the Issêdones, the Aspakârai, and still below those the Bâtai, and furthest south along the Emôda and Sêrika ranges the Ottorokorhai.

6. The cities in Sêrikê are thus named :—

Damna	156°	51° 20'
Piala (or Piadda).....	160°	49° 40'
Asmiraia	170°	48°
Throana	174° 40'	47° 40'

7. Issêdôn Serikê

Aspakara (or Aspakaia)	162° 30'	41° 40'
Drôsakhê (or Rhosakla)	167° 40'	42° 30'
Paliana	162° 30'	41°
Abragana	163° 30'	39° 30'



8. Thogara	171° 20'	39° 40'
Daxata	174°	39° 30'
Orosana	162°	37° 30'
Ottorokorrha... ..	165°	37° 15'
Solana	169°	37° 30'
Sêra metropolis.....	177°	38° 35'

The chapter which Ptolemy has devoted to Sêrikê has given rise to more abortive theories and unprofitable controversies than any other part of his work on Geography. The position of Serikê itself has been very variously determined, having been found by different writers in one or other of the many countries that intervene between Eastern Turkistan in the north and the province of Pegu in the south. It is now however generally admitted that by Sêrikê was meant the more northern parts of China, or those which travellers and traders reached by land. At the same time it is not to be supposed that the names which Ptolemy in his map has spread over that vast region were in reality names of places whose real positions were to be found so very far eastward. On the contrary, most of the names are traceable to Sanskrit sources and applicable to places either in Kaśmir or in the regions immediately adjoining. This view was first advanced by Saint-Martin, in his dissertation on the Serikê of Ptolemy (*Étude*, pp. 411 ff.) where he has discussed the subject with all his wonted acuteness and fulness of learning. I may translate here his remarks on the points that are most prominent: "All the nomenclature," he says (p. 414), "except some names at the extreme points north



and east, is certainly of Sanskrit origin. To the south of the mountains, in the Panjâb, Ptolemy indicates under the general name of Kaspiræi an extension genuinely historical of the Kâsmirian empire, with a detailed nomenclature which ought to rest upon informations of the 1st century of our æra; whilst to the north of the great chain we have nothing more than names thrown at hazard in an immense space where our means of actual comparison show us prodigious displacements. This difference is explained by the very nature of the case. The Brâhmins, who had alone been able to furnish the greater part of the information carried from India by the Greeks regarding this remotest of all countries, had not themselves, as one can see from their books, anything but the most imperfect notions. Some names of tribes, of rivers, and of mountains, without details or relative positions—this is all the Sanskrit poems contain respecting these high valleys of the North. It is also all that the tables of Ptolemy give, with the exception of the purely arbitrary addition of graduations. It is but recently that we ourselves have become a little better acquainted with these countries which are so difficult of access. We must not require from the ancients information which they could not have had, and it is of importance also that we should guard against a natural propensity which disposes us to attribute to all that antiquity has transmitted to us an authority that we do not accord without check to our best explorers. If the meagre nomenclature inscribed by Ptolemy on his map, of the countries situated beyond



(that is to the east) of Imaös, cannot lead to a regular correspondence with our existing notions, that which one can recognize, suffices nevertheless to determine and circumscribe its general position. Without wishing to carry into this more precision than is consistent with the nature of the indications, we may say, that the indications, taken collectively, place us in the midst of the Alpine region, whence radiate in different directions the Himâlaya, the Hindu-Kôh and the Bolor chain—enormous elevations enveloped in an immense girdle of eternal snows, and whose cold valleys belong to different families of pastoral tribes. Kaśmir, a privileged oasis amidst these rugged mountains, appertains itself to this region which traverses more to the north the Tibetan portion of the Indus (above the point where the ancients placed the sources of the Indus) and whence run to the west the Ôxos and Iaxartes. With Ptolemy the name of Imaös (the Greek transcription of the usual form of the name of Himâlaya) is applied to the central chain from the region of the sources of the Ganges (where rise also the Indus and its greatest affluent, the Śatadru or Satlaj) to beyond the sources of the Iaxartes. The general direction of this great axis is from south to north, saving a bend to the south-east from Kaśmir to the sources of the Ganges; it is only on parting from this last point that the Himâlaya runs directly to the east, and it is there also that with Ptolemy the name of Emôdos begins, which designates the Eastern Himâlaya. Now it is on Imaos itself or in the vicinity of this grand



system of mountains to the north of our Panjâb and to the east of the valleys of the Hindu-Kôh and of the upper Óxos that there come to be placed, in a space from 6 to 7 degrees at most from south to north, and less perhaps than that in the matter of the longitudes, all the names which can be identified on the map where Ptolemy has wished to represent, in giving them an extension of nearly 40 degrees from west to east, the region which he calls Skythia beyond Imaös and Serika. One designation is there immediately recognizable among all the others—that of Kasia. Ptolemy indicates the situation of the country of Kasia towards the bending of Imaös to the east above the sources of the Óxos, although he carries his Montes Kasii very far away from that towards the east; but we are sufficiently aware beforehand that here, more than in any other part of the Tables, we have only to attend to the nomenclature, and to leave the notations altogether out of account. The name of the Khaśa has been from time immemorial one of the appellations the most spread through all the Himálayan range. To keep to the western parts of the chain, where the indication of Ptolemy places us, we there find Khaśa mentioned from the heroic ages of India, not only in the *Itihâsas* or legendary stories of the *Mahâbhârata*, but also in the law book of Manu, where their name is read by the side of that of the D a r a d a, another people well known, which borders in fact on the Khaśa of the north. The Khaśa figure also in the Buddhist Chronicles of Ceylon, among the people subdued by Asôka in the upper Panjâb, and we find them mentioned



CSL

in more than 40 places of the *Kaśmīr Chronicle* among the chief mountain tribes that border on Kaśmīr. Baber knows also that a people of the name of Khas is indigenous to the high valleys in the neighbourhood of the Eastern Hindu-Kōh; and, with every reason, we attach to this indigenous people the origin of the name of Kāshgar, which is twice reproduced in the geography of these high regions. Khasāgiri in Sanskrit, or, according to a form more approaching the Zend, Khasāghairi, signifies properly the mountains of the Khaśa. The Akhasa Khōra, near the Kasia regio, is surely connected with the same nationality. The Aspakārai, with a place of the same name (Aspakara) near the Kasi Montes, have no correspondence actually known in these high valleys, but the form of the name connects it with the Sanskrit or Iranian nomenclature. Beside the Aspakarai, the Batai are found in the Bāutta of the *Rājatarangini*. In the 10th century of our era, the Chief of Ghilghit took the title of Bhātshāh or Shah of the Bhāt. The Balti, that we next name, recall a people, mentioned by Ptolemy in this high region, the Byltai. The accounts possessed by Ptolemy had made him well acquainted with the general situation of the Byltai in the neighbourhood of the Imaös, but he is either ill informed or has ill applied his information as to their exact position, which he indicates as being to the west of the great chain of Bolor and not to the east of it, where they were really to be found. The Ramana and the Daśamana, two people of the north, which the *Mahābhārata* and the Pauranik lists mention



along with the China, appear to us not to differ from the Rhabannae and the Damnai of Ptolemy's table." Saint-Martin gives in the sequel a few other identifications—that of the Throanoi (whose name should be read Phronnoi, or rather Phaanoi as in Strabo) with the Phuna of the *Lalitavistara* (p. 122)—of the Kharauanoi with the Kajana, whose language proves them to be Daradas, and of the Ithagouroi with the Dangors, Dhagars or Dakhars, who must at one time have been the predominant tribe of the Daradas. The country called *Asmiraia* he takes, without hesitation, to be Kaśmir itself. As regards the name *Ottorokorra*, applied by Ptolemy to a town and a people and a range of mountains, it is traced without difficulty to the Sanskrit—*Uttarakuru*, i.e., the Kuru of the north which figures in Indian mythology as an earthly paradise sheltered on every side by an encircling rampart of lofty mountains, and remarkable for the longevity of its inhabitants, who lived to be 1000 and 10,000 years old. Ptolemy was not aware that this was but an imaginary region, and so gave it a place within the domain of real geography. The land of the Hyperboreans is a western repetition of the *Uttarakuru* of Kaśmir.

CAP. 17.

POSITION OF AREIA.

[*Map of Asia 9.*]

Areia is bounded on the north by *Margianê* and by a part of *Baktrianê* along its southern side, as already exhibited. On the west by



Parthia and by the Karmanian desert along their eastern meridians that have been defined, on the south by Drangianê along the line which, beginning from the said extremity towards Karmania, and curving towards the north, turns through Mount Bagôos towards the east on to the extreme point which lies $111^{\circ} 34'$ the position where the mountain curves is $105^{\circ} 32'$ The boundary on the east is formed by the Paropanisadai along the line adjoining the extremities already mentioned through the western parts of Paropanisos; the position may be indicated at three different points, the southern $111^{\circ} 36'$ the northern $111^{\circ} 30' 39''$ and the most eastern $119^{\circ} 30' 39''$

2. A notable river flows through this country called the Areias, of which the sources that are in Paropanisos, lie $111^{\circ} 38' 15''$ and those that are in the Sariphoi, $118^{\circ} 33' 20''$ The part along the lake called Areia, which is below these mountains, lies in ... $108^{\circ} 40' 36''$

3. The northern parts of Areia are possessed by the Nisaïoi and the Astauênôi or Astabênôi, but those along the frontier of Parthia and the Karmanian desert by the Masdôranoi or Mazôranôi, and those along the frontier of Drangianê by the Kaseirôtai, and those along the Paropanisadai by the Parautoi, below whom are the Obareis



and intermediately the Drakhamai, below whom the Aitymandroi, then the Borgoi, below whom is the country called Skorpiophoros.

4. The towns and villages in Areia are these:—

Dista	102° 30'	38° 15'
Nabaris	105° 40'	38° 20'
Taua	109°	38° 45'
Angara	102°	38°
Bitaxa	103° 40'	38°
Sarmagana	105° 20'	38° 10'
Sipharê	107° 15'	38° 15'
Rhaugara	109° 30'	38° 10'

5. Zamoukhana	102°	37°
Ambrôdax	103° 30'	37° 30'
Bogadia	104° 15'	37° 40'
Ouarpna (Varpna)	105° 30'	37°
Godana	110° 30'	37° 30'
Phorana	110°	37°
Khatriskhê	103°	36° 20'
Khaurina	104°	36° 20'

6. Orthiana	105° 15'	36° 20'
Taukiana	106° 10'	36°
Astauda	107° 40'	36°
Artikaudna	109° 20'	36° 10'
Alexandreia of the Areians	110°	36°
Babarsana or Kabarsana	103° 20'	35° 20'
Kapoutana	104° 30'	35° 30'



7. Areia, a city.....	105°	35°
Kaskê	107° 20'	35° 20'
Sôteira	108° 40'	35° 30'
Ortikanê.....	109° 20'	35° 30'
Nisibis	111°	35° 20'
Parakanakê	105° 30'	34° 20'
Sariga	106° 40'	34° 40'
8. Darkama	111°	34° 20'
Kotakê	107° 30'	33° 40'
Tribazina	106°	33°
Astasana	105°	33°
Zimyra	102° 30'	33° 15'

Areia was a small province included in Ariana, a district of wide extent, which comprehended nearly the whole of ancient Persia. The smaller district has sometimes been confounded with the larger, of which it formed a part. The names of both are connected with the well-known Indian word *ârya*, 'noble' or 'excellent.' According to Strabo, Aria was 2,000 stadia in length and only 300 stadia in breadth. "If," says Wilson (*Ariana Antiq.*, p. 150) "these measurements be correct, we must contract the limits of Aria much more than has been usually done; and Aria will be restricted to the tract from about Meshd to the neighbourhood of Herat, a position well enough reconcilable with much that Strabo relates of Aria, its similarity to Margiana in character and productions, its mountains and well-watered valleys in which the vine flourished, its position as much to the north as to the south of the chain of Taurus or Alburz, and its being bounded by Hyrkania,



Margiana, and Baktriana on the north, and Drangiana on the south."

Mount Bagôos, on its south-east border, has been identified with the Ghâr mountains. The Montes Sariphi are the Hazâras. The river Areias, by which Aria is traversed, is the Hari Rûd or river of Herat which, rising at Obz in the Paropanisian mountains, and having run westerly past Herat, is at no great distance lost in the sands. That it was so lost is stated both by Strabo and Arrian. Ptolemy makes it terminate in a lake; and hence, Rennell carried it south into the Lake of Seistân, called by Ptolemy the Areian lake. It receives the Ferrah-Rûd, a stream which passes Ferrah or Farah, a town which has been identified with much probability with the Phra mentioned by Isidôros in his *Mans. Parth.*, sec. 16. It receives also the Etymander (now the Helmand) which gave its name to one of the Areian tribes named by Ptolemy.

He has enumerated no fewer than 35 towns belonging to this small province, a long list which it is not possible to verify, but a number of small towns, as Wilson points out, occur on the road from Meshd to Herat and thence towards Qandahâr or Kâbul, and some of these may be represented in the Table under forms more or less altered. The capital of Areia, according to Strabo and Arrian, was Artakoana (v. ll. Artakakna, Artakana) and this is no doubt the Artikaudna of Ptolemy, which he places on the banks of the Areian lake about two-thirds of a degree north-west of his Alexandria of the Areians. The identification of this Alexandria is uncertain; most probably it was Herat, or some



CSL

place in its neighbourhood. Herat is called by oriental writers Hera, a form under which the Areia of the ancients is readily to be recognized. Ptolemy has a city of this name, and Wilson (*Ariana Antiqua*, p. 152), is of opinion that "Arta-koana, Alexandria and Aria are aggregated in Herat." With reference to Alexandria he quotes a memorial verse current among the inhabitants of Herat: "It is said that Hari was founded by Lohrasp, extended by Gushtasp, improved by Bahman and completed by Alexander." The name of Sôteira indicates that its founder was Antiokhos Sôtér.

CAP. 18.

POSITION OF THE PAROPANISADAI.

[Map of Asia 9.]

1. The Paropanisdai are bounded on the west by Areia along the aforesaid side, on the north by the part of Baktrianê as described, on the east by a part of India along the meridian line prolonged from the sources of the river Ôxos, through the Caucasian mountains as far as a terminating point which

lies in 119° 30' 39°
and on the south by Arakhôsia along the line connecting the extreme points already determined.

2. The following rivers enter the country—the Dargamanês, which belongs to Baktrianê, the position of the sources of which has



been already stated ; and the river which falls into the Kôa, of which the sources lie.....115° 34° 30'.

3. The northern parts are possessed by the Bôlitai, and the western by the Aristophyloi, and below them the Parsioi, and the southern parts by the Parsyêtai, and the eastern by the Ambautai.

4. The towns and villages of the Paropanisadai are these :—

Parsiana.....	118° 30'	38° 45'
Barzaura	114°	37° 30'
Artoarta.....	116° 30'	37° 30'
Baborana	118°	37° 10'
Katisa	118° 40'	37° 30'
Niphanda	119°	37°
Drastoka	116°	36° 30'
Gazaka or Gaudzaka	118° 30'	36° 15'

5. Naulibis.....	117°	35° 30'
Parsia.....	113° 30'	35°
Lokharna	118°	34°
Daroakana.....	118° 30'	34° 20'
Karoura, called also Ortospana.....	118°	35°
Tarbakana	114° 20'	33° 40'
Bagarda	116° 40'	33° 40'
Argouda.....	118° 45'	33° 30'

The tribes for which Paropanisadai was a collective name were located along the southern and eastern sides of the Hindu-Kush, which Ptolemy calls the Kaukasos, and of which his Paropanisos formed a part. In the tribe which he calls the



Bâlitaî we may perhaps have the Kabolitæ, or people of Kabul, and in the Ambautaithe Ambashtha of Sanskrit. The Parsyêtai have also a Sanskrit name—'mountaineers,' from *parvata*, 'a mountain,' so also the Parantoi of Arëia. The principal cities of the Paropanisadai were Naulibis and Karoura or Ortospana. Karoura is also written as Kaboura and in this form makes a near approach to Kabul, with which it has been identified. With regard to the other name of this place, Ortospana, Cunningham (*Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, p. 35) says: "I would identify it with Kâbul itself, with its Bala Hisâr, or 'high fort,' which I take to be a Persian translation of Ortospana or Urddhasthâna, that is, high place or lofty city." Ptolemy mentions two rivers that crossed the country of the Paropanisadai—the Dargamanês from Baktriana that flowed northward to join the Ôxos, which Wilson (*Ariana Antiqua*, p. 160) takes to be either the Dehas or the Gori river. If it was the Dehas, then the other river which Ptolemy does not name, but which he makes to be a tributary of the Kôa, may be the Sarkhâb or Gori river, which, however, does not join the Kôa but flows northward to join the Ôxos. Pânini mentions Parsusthâna, the country of the Parsus, a warlike tribe in this reign, which may correspond to Ptolemy's Parsioi or Parsyetai.⁶⁰ The following places have been identified:—

Parsiana with Pañjshir; Barzaura with Bazârak; Baborana with Parwân; Drastoka with Istargarh; Parsia (capital of the

⁶⁰ See Beal's *Bud. Rec. of Wn. Count.* vol. II, p. 235a.



Parsii) with Farzah, and Lokharna with Lôgarh south of Kâbul.

CAP. 19.

POSITION OF DRANGIANÊ.

[Map of Asia 9.]

Drangianê is bounded on the west and north by Areia along the line already described as passing through Mount Bagôos, and on the east by Arakhôsia along the meridian line drawn from an extreme point lying in the country of the Areioi and that of the Paropanisadai to another extreme point, of which the position is in111° 30' 28' and on the south by a part of Gedrôsia along the line joining the extreme points already determined, passing through the Baitian mountains.

2. There flows through the country a river which branches off from the Arabis of which the sources lie109° 32° 30'

3. The parts towards Areia are possessed by the Darandai, and those towards Arakhôsia by the Baktrioi, the country intermediate is called Tatakênê.

4. The towns and villages of Drangianê are said to be these:—

Prophthasia	110°	32° 20'
Rhouda	106° 30'	31° 30'



Inna	109°	31° 30'
Arikada	110° 20'	31° 20'
5. Asta	117° 30'	30° 40'
Xarxiarê	106° 20'	29° 15'
Nostana	108°	29° 40'
Pharazana	110°	30°
Bigis	111°	29° 40'
Ariaspê	108° 40'	28° 40'
Arana.....	111°	28° 15'

Drangianê corresponds in general position and extent with the province now called Seistân. The inhabitants were called Drangai, Zarangae, Zarangoi, Zarangaioi and Sarangai. The name, according to Burnouf, was derived from the Zend word, *sarayo*, 'a lake,' a word which is retained in the name by which Ptolemy's Arcian lake is now known—Lake Zarah. The district was mountainous towards Arakhôsia, which formed its eastern frontier, but in the west, towards Karmania, it consisted chiefly of sandy wastes. On the south it was separated from Gedrôsia by the Baitian mountains, those now called the Washati. Ptolemy says it was watered by a river derived from the Arabis, but this is a gross error, for the Arabis, which is now called the Purali, flows from the Baitian mountains in an opposite direction from Drangiana. Ptolemy has probably confounded the Arabis with the Etymander or Helmand river which, as has already been noticed, falls into Lake Zarah.

Ptolemy has portioned out the province among three tribes, the Darandai (Drangai?) on the north, the Baktrioi to the south-east, and the people of Tatakênê between them.



The capital was *Prophthasia* which was distant, according to Eratosthenes, 1500 or 1600 stadia from Alexandria Areion (Herat). Wilson therefore fixes its site at a place called Peshawarun, which is distant from Herat 183 miles, and where there were relics found of a very large city. This place lies between Dushak and Phra, *i.e.* Farah, a little to the north of the lake. These ruins are not, however, of ancient date, and it is better therefore to identify *Prophthasia* with Farah which represents Phra or Phrada, and Phrada, according to Stephanos of Byzantium, was the name of the city which was called by Alexander *Prophthasia* (Bunbury, vol. I, p. 488). Dushak, the actual capital of Seistân, is probably the Zarang of the early Muhammadan writers which was evidently by its name connected with Drangiana. In the Persian cuneiform inscription at Behistun the country is called *Zasaka*, as Rawlinson has pointed out (see Smith's *Dictionary*, s. v. *Drangiana*). The place of next importance to the capital was *Ariaspê*, which Arrian places on the Etymander (*Anab.*, lib. IV, c. vii). The people were called *Ariaspai* at first, or *Agriaspai*, but afterwards *Euergetai*,—a title which they had earned by assisting Cyrus at a time when he had been reduced to great straits.

CAP. 20.

POSITION OF ARAKHÔSIA.

Arakhôsia is bounded on the west by *Drangianê*, on the north by the *Paropanisadai*, along the sides already determined, on the east by the part of India lying along the meridian



line extended from the boundary towards the Paropanisadai as far as an extreme point lying119° 28° and on the south by the rest of Gedrôsia along the line joining the extreme points already determined through the Baitian range.

2. A river enters this country which branches off from the Indus of which the sources lie in114° 32° 30' and the divarication (*ἐκτροπή*)

in121° 30' 27° 30' and the part at the lake formed by it which is called Arakhôtos Krênê (fountain)—

lies in.....115° 28° 40'

3. The people possessing the north parts of the country are the Parsyêtai, and these below them the Sydroi, after whom are the Rhôploutai and the Êritai.

4 The towns and villages of Arakhôsia are said to be these:—

Ozola (or Axola)	114° 15'	32° 15'
Phôklis	118° 15'	32° 10'
Arikaka	113°	31° 20'
Alexandreia	114°	31° 20'
Rhizana	115°	31° 30'
Arbaka	118°	31° 20'
Sigara	113° 15'	30°
Khoaspa.....	115° 15'	30° 10'
5. Arakhôtos.....	118°	30° 20'
Asiakê	112° 20'	29° 20'
Gammakê	116° 20'	29° 20'



CSL

Malianê	118°	29° 20'
Dammâna	113°	28° 20'

Arakhôsiâ comprised a considerable portion of Eastern Afghanistan. It extended westward beyond the meridian of Qandahâr and its eastern frontier was skirted by the Indus. On the north it stretched to the mountains of Ghûr, the western section of the Hindu-Kush, and on the south to Gedrôsiâ from which it was separated by the Baitian mountains, a branch of the Brahui range. The name has been derived from Haraqiatî, the Persian form of the Sanskrit Sarasvatî, a name frequently given to rivers (being a compound of *saras*, 'flowing water,' and the affix *vati*) and applied among others to the river of Arakhôsiâ. The province was rich and populous, and what added greatly to its importance, it was traversed by one of the main routes by which Persia communicated with India. The principal river was that now called the Helmand which, rising near the Koh-i-bâbâ range west of Kâbul, pursues a course with a general direction to the south-west, and which, after receiving from the neighbourhood of Qandahâr the Argand-âb with its affluents, the Tarnak and the Arghasan, flows into the lake of Zarah. Ptolemy mentions only one river of Arakhôsiâ and this, in his map, is represented as rising in the Paryétai mountains (the Hazâras) and flowing into a lake from which it issues to fall into the Indus about $3\frac{1}{2}$ degrees below its junction with the combined rivers of the Panjâb. This lake, which, he says, is called Arakhotos Krênê, he places at a distance of not less than 7 degrees from his Arcian lake. In the text



he says that the river is an arm of the Indus, a statement for which it is difficult to find a reason.

The capital of Arakhôsia was Arakhôtos, said by Stephanos of Byzantium to have been founded by Semiramis. Regarding its identification Mr. Vaux (Smith's *Dictionary*, s. v.) says: "Some difference of opinion has existed as to the exact position of this town, and what modern city or ruins can be identified with the ancient capital? M. Court has identified some ruins on the Arghasan river, 4 parasangs from Qandahâr, on the road to Shikarpur, with those of Arakhôtos, but these Prof. Wilson considers to be too much to the S.E. Rawlinson (*Jour. Geog. Soc.*, vol. XII, p. 113) thinks that he has found them at a place now called Ulân Robât. He states that the most ancient name of the city, Kophen, mentioned by Stephanos and Pliny, has given rise to the territorial designation of Kipin, applied by the Chinese to the surrounding country. The ruins are of a very remarkable character, and the measurements of Strabo, Pliny, and Ptolemy are, he considers, decisive as to the identity of the site. Stephanos has apparently contrasted two cities—Arakhôsia, which he says is not far from the Massagetae, and Arakhôtas, which he calls a town of India. Sir H. Rawlinson believes the contiguity of the Massagetae and Arakhôsia, may be explained by the supposition that by Massagetae, Stephanos meant the Sakai, who colonized the Hazâra mountains on their way from the Hindu-Kush to Sakastân or Seistân." Another account of the origin of the name Seistân is that it is a corruption of the word Saghistân, i. e., the country of



the *saghis*, a kind of wood which abounds in the province and is used as fuel. Arakhôsia, according to Isidoros of Kharax, was called by the Parthians "White India."

CAP. 21.

POSITION OF GEDRÔSIA.

Gedrôsia is bounded on the west by Karmania along the meridian line, already determined as far as the sea, and on the north by Drangianê and Arakhôsia along the separate meridian lines passing through these countries, and on the east by part of India along the river Indus following the line prolonged from the boundary towards Arakhôsia to its termination at the sea in109° 20° and on the south by a part of the Indian Ocean. It is thus described through its circuit.

2. After the extremity towards Karmania		
the mouth of the River Arabis	105°	20° 15'
the sources of the river	.....110°	27° 30'
the divarication of the river		
entering Drangianê	.....107° 30'	25°
Rhagirana, a city	.....106°	20°
Women's Haven (Gynaikôn		
limên)	.....107°	20° 15'
Koiamba	.....108°	20°
Rhizana	.....108° 20'	20° 15'
After which the extreme point		
at the sea already men-		
tioned	.....109°	20°



3. Through Gedrôsia run the mountains called the Arbita, whose extreme points lie in..... 160° (107 ?) 22°
and 113° $26^{\circ} 30'$
from these mountains some rivers join the Indus and the source of one of these lies 111° $25^{\circ} 30'$
and also there are some streams flowing through Gedrôsia, that descend from the Baitian range.

4. The maritime parts are possessed by the villages of the Arbitai, and the parts along Karamania by the Parsidai (or Parsirai), and the parts along Arakhôsia by the Mausarnai, all the interior of the country is called Paradênê, and below it Parisiê nê, after which the parts towards the Indus river are possessed by the Rhamnai.

5. The towns and villages of Gedrôsia are accounted to be these:—

Kouni.....	110°	27°
Badara	113°	27°
Mousarna	115°	$27^{\circ} 30'$
Kottobara	118°	$27^{\circ} 30'$
Soxestra or Sôkstra	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$25^{\circ} 45'$
Oskana	115°	26°
Parsis, the Metropolis	$106^{\circ} 30'$	$23^{\circ} 30'$
Omiza	110°	$23^{\circ} 30'$
Arbis, a city	105°	$22^{\circ} 30'$

6. The islands adjacent to Gedrôsia are—

Asthaia	105°	18°
Kodauê.....(107 ?)	$160^{\circ} 30'$	17°



Gedrôsia corresponds to the modern Baluchistân. Its coast line extended from the mouth of the Indus to Cape Jask near the Straits, which open into the Persian Gulf. Ptolemy however assigned the greater portion of this coast to Karmania which according to his view must have begun somewhere near Cape Passence. Arrian restricted the name of Gedrôsia to the interior of the country, and assigned the maritime districts beginning from the Indus to the Arabies, the Oreitai and the Ikthyophagoi in succession. The ancient and the modern names of the province, Major Mockler tries to identify in his paper in the *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N. S., vol. XI. pp. 129-154.

The people that possessed the maritime region immediately adjoining the Indus were called the Arbitai or Arabies. In one of their harbours the fleet of Nearkhos at the outset of his memorable voyage was detained for 24 days waiting till the monsoon should subside. This harbour was found to be both safe and commodious, and was called by Nearkhos the Port of Alexander. It is now Karâchi, the great emporium for the commerce of the Indus. The name of the people was applied also to a chain of mountains and to a river, the Arabis, now called the Purali, which falls into the Bay of Sonmiyâni. Ptolemy's Arabis, however, lay nearer Karmania, and may be taken to be the Bhasul, which demarcated the western frontier of the Oreitai, and to the east of which the district is still known by the name of Arbu. Ptolemy does not mention the Oreitai, but seems to have included their territory in that of the Arbitai.



CSL

The Rhannai are placed in Ptolemy's map in the northern part of the province and towards the river Indus. This race appears to have been one that was widely diffused, and one of its branches, as has been stated, was located among the Vindhya.

The Parsidai, who bordered on Karmania, are mentioned in the *Periplus* (c. xxxvii) and also in Arrian's *Indika* (c. xxvi) where they are called Pasirees. They gave their names to a range of mountains which Ptolemy makes the boundary between Gedrosia and Karmania, and also to a town, Parsis, which formed the capital of the whole province.

Of the other towns enumerated only one is mentioned in Arrian's *Indika*, Gynaikôn Limên, or women's haven, the port of Morontobara, near Cape Monze, the last point of the Pab range of mountains. The haven was so named because the district around had, like Carthage, a woman for its first sovereign.

The names of the two towns Badara and Mousarna occur twice in Ptolemy, here as inland towns of Gedrosia, and elsewhere as seaport towns of Karmania. Major Moekler, who personally examined the Makran coast from Gwadar to Cape Jâsk, and has thereby been enabled to correct some of the current identifications, has shown that Gwadar and Badara are identical. Badara appears in the *Indika* of Arrian as Barna.

I here subjoin, for comparison, a passage from Ammianus Marcellinus which traverses the ground covered by Ptolemy's description of Central and Eastern Asia. Ammianus wrote about the middle



of the fourth century of our æra, and was a well informed writer, and careful in his statement of facts. The extract is from the 23rd Book of his *History*:—

AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS—Book XXIII.

“ If you advance from Karmania into the interior (of Asia) you reach the Hyrkanians, who border on the sea which bears their name. Here, as the poorness of the soil kills the seeds committed to it, the inhabitants care but little for agriculture. They live by hunting game, which is beyond measure varied and abundant. Tigers show themselves here in thousands, and many other wild beasts besides. I bear in mind that I have already described the nature of the contrivances by which these animals are caught. It must not be supposed, however, that the people never put hands to the plough, for where the soil is found richer than usual the fields are covered with crops. In places, moreover, that are adapted for being planted-out, gardens of fruit-trees are not wanting, and the sea also supplies many with the means of livelihood. Two rivers flow through the country whose names are familiar to all, the Oxus and Maxera. Tigers at times, when pressed by hunger on their own side of these rivers, swim over to the opposite side and, before the alarm can be raised, ravage all the neighbourhood where they land. Amidst the smaller townships there exist also cities of great power, two on the sea-board, Socunda and Saramanna, and the others inland—Azmorna and Solen, and Hyrkana, which rank above the others. The country next to this people on the north is said to be inhabited by the



Abii, a most pious race of men, accustomed to despise all things mortal, and whom Jupiter (as Homer with his over-fondness for fable sings) looks down upon from the summits of Mount Ida. The seats immediately beyond the Hyrkanians form the dominions of the Margiani, who are nearly on all sides round hemmed in by high hills, and consequently shut out from the sea. Though their territory is for the most part sterile, from the deficiency of water, they have nevertheless some towns, and of these the more notable are Jasonion and Antiochia and Nisæa. The adjoining region belongs to the Baktriani, a nation hitherto addicted to war and very powerful, and always troublesome to their neighbours, the Persians, before that people had reduced all the surrounding states to submission, and absorbed them into their own name and nationality. In old times, however, even Arsakes himself found the kings who ruled in Baktriana formidable foes to contend with. Most parts of the country are, like Margiana, far distant from the sea, but the soil is productive, and the cattle that are pastured on the plains and hill-sides, are compact of structure, with limbs both stout and strong, as may be judged from the camels which were brought from thence by Mithridates and seen by the Romans during the siege of Cyzicus, when they saw this species of animal for the first time. A great many tribes, among which the Tochari are the most distinguished, obey the Baktrians. Their country is watered, like Italy, by numerous rivers, and of these the Artemis and Zariaspes after their union, and in like manner th combined Ochus



CSL

and Orchomanes, swell with their confluent waters the vast stream of the Oxos. Here also cities are to be found, and these are laved by different rivers. The more important of them are Chatra and Charta and Alicodra and Astacia and Menapila, and Baktra itself, which is both the capital and the name of the nation. The people, who live at the very foot of the mountains, are called the Sogdii, through whose country flow two rivers of great navigable capacity, the Araxates and Dymas, which rushing impetuously down from the mountains and passing into a level plain, form a lake of vast extent, called the Oxian. Here, among other towns, Alexandria, and Kyreschata, and Drepsa the Metropolis, are well known to fame. Contiguous to the Sogdians are the Sacae, an uncivilized people, inhabiting rugged tracts that yield nothing beyond pasture for cattle, and that are, therefore, unadorned with cities. They lie under Mounts Askanimia and Komodus. Beyond the valleys at the foot of these mountains and the village which they call Lithinon Pyrgon (Stone Tower) lies the very long road by which traders pursue their journey who start from this point to reach the Séres. In the parts around are the declivities by which the mountains called Imaus and the Tapourian range, sink down to the level of the plains. The Skythians are located within the Persian territories, being conterminous with the Asiatic Sarmatians, and touching the furthest frontier of the Alani. They live, as it were, a sort of secluded life, and are reared in solitude, being scattered over districts that lie far apart, and that yield for the sustenance of life a



mean and scanty fare. The tribes which inhabit these tracts are various, but it would be superfluous for me to enumerate them, hastening as I am to a different subject. One fact must, however, be stated, that there are in these communities which are almost shut out from the rest of mankind by the inhospitable nature of their country, some men gentle and pious, as for instance, the Jaxartes and the Galaktophagi, mentioned by the poet Homer in this verse:

Γλακτοφάγων ἀβίωτε δικαιοτάτων ἀνθρώπων.

“Among the many rivers of Skythia which either fall naturally into larger ones, or glide onward to reach at last the sea, the R o e m n u s is of renown, and the Jaxartes and the T a l i c u s, but of cities they are not known to have more than but three, A s p a b o t a and C h a u r i a n a and S a g a.

“Beyond these places in the two Skythias and on their eastern side lie the Sêres, who are girt in by a continuous circle of lofty mountain-peaks, and whose territory is noted for its vast extent and fertility. On the west they have the Skythians for their next neighbours, and on the north and east they adjoin solitudes covered over with snow, and on the south extend as far as India and the Ganges. The mountains referred to are called Anuiva and Nazavicium and Asmira and Emodon and Opurocara. Through this plain which, as we have said, is cinctured on all sides by steep declivities, and through regions of vast extent, flow two famous rivers, the Œchardes and the Bautisus, with a slower current. The country is diversified in its character, here expanding into open plains, and there rising



in gentle undulations. Hence it is marvellously fruitful and well-wooded, and teeming with cattle. Various tribes inhabit the most fertile districts, and of these the Alitrophagi and Annibi and Sizyges and Chardi are exposed to blasts from the north and to frosts, while the Rabannae and Asmirae and Essedones, who outshine all the other tribes, look towards the rising sun. Next to these, on their western side, are the Athagorae and the Aspacarae. The Betae, again, are situated towards the lofty mountains fringing the south, and are famed for their cities which, though few in number are distinguished for their size and wealth; the largest of them being Asmira, and Essedon and Asparata and Sera, which are beautiful cities and of great celebrity. The Sères themselves lead tranquil lives, and are averse to arms and war, and since people whose temper is thus sedate and peaceful relish their ease, they give no trouble to any of their neighbours. They enjoy a climate at once agreeable and salubrious; the sky is clear and the prevailing winds are wonderfully mild and genial. The country is well-shaded with woods, and from the trees the inhabitants gather a product which they make into what may be called fleeces by repeatedly besprinkling it with water. The material thus formed by saturating the soft down with moisture is exquisitely fine, and when combed out and spun into wool is woven into silk, an article of dress formerly worn only by the great, but now without any distinction even by the very poorest.⁴¹

⁴¹ It was a notion long prevalent that silk was combed from the leaves of trees. Thus Virgil (*Georg.* II, 121)



CSL

The Sêres themselves live in the most frugal manner, more so indeed than any other people in the world. They seek after a life as free as possible from all disquiet, and shun intercourse with the rest of mankind. So when strangers cross the river into their country to buy their silks or other commodities, they exchange no words with them, but merely intimate by their looks the value of the goods offered for sale; and so abstemious are they that they buy not any foreign products. Beyond the Sêres live the Ariani, exposed to the blasts of the north wind. Through their country flows a navigable river called the Arias, which forms a vast lake bearing the same name. This same Aria has numerous towns, among which Bitana Sarmatina, and Sotera and Nisibis and Alexandria are the most notable. If you sail from Alexandria *down the river* to the Caspian Sea the distance is 1,500 stadia.

Immediately adjoining these places are the P a r o p a n i s a t a e, who look on the east towards the Indians and on the west towards Caucasus, lying themselves towards the slopes of the mountains. The River Ortogordomaris, which is larger than any of the others, and rises among the Baktriani, flows through their territory. They too, have some towns, of which the more celebrated are Agazaca and Naulibus and Ortopana, from which the navi-

"Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenuia Seres." Strabo (XV, i, 20) describes silk as carded off the bark of certain trees. Pausanias, who wrote about 180 A.D. is the first classical author who writes with some degree of correctness about silk and the silk-worm. Conf. P. Mela, i, 2, 3; iii, 7, 1; Pliny, VI, 17, 20; Prop. i, 14, 22; Sol. 50; Isid. Orig. xix, 17, 6; ib. 27, 5.



CSL

gation along the coast to the borders of Media in the immediate neighbourhood of the Caspian Gates extends to 2,200 stadia. Contiguous to the Paropanisatae just named are the Drangiani, seated quite close to the hills and watered by a river called the Arabian, because it rises in Arabia. Among their other towns they have two to boast of in particular, Prophthasia and Ariaspe, which are both opulent and famous. After these, and directly confronting them, Arachosia comes into view, which on its right side faces the Indians. It is watered by a stream of copious volume derived from the Indus, that greatest of rivers, after which the adjacent regions have been named. This stream, which is less than the Indus, forms the lake called Arachotoserene. The province, among other important cities, has Alexandria and Arbaca and Choaspa. In the very interior of Persia is Gedrosia, which on the right touches the Indian frontier. It is watered by several streams, of which the Artabius is the most considerable. Where it is inhabited by the Barbitani the mountains sink down to the plains. A number of rivers issue from their very base to join the Indus, and these all lose their names when absorbed into that mightier stream. Here too, besides the islands there are cities, of which Sedratyra and Gunaikon Limen (Women's haven) are considered to be superior to the others. But we must bring this description here to an end, lest in entering into a minute account of the seaboard on the extremities of Persia we should stray too far from the proper argument."



APPENDIX OF ADDITIONAL NOTES.

1. On the latitude of Byzantium and of Tâsh-Kurghân—(p. 14).

Ptolemy, like Hipparkhos and all the ancients except Strabo, erroneously took the latitude of Byzantium ($41^{\circ} 1'$) to be the same as that of Marseilles ($43^{\circ} 18'$). The latitude of Tâsh-kurghân in the Pâmîr is $37^{\circ} 46'$ and its longitude $75^{\circ} 10'$ E.; the latitude of Tashkend is $42^{\circ} 58'$, and that of Och or Ush (near which there is a monument called at this day the Takhti-Suleiman, 'Throne of Soliman,' which Heeren took to be the veritable stone tower of Ptolemy) is $40^{\circ} 19'$.

2. On Kouroula—(pp. 22, 63, and 64).

Lieut.-Colonel Branfill (*Names of Places in Tanjore*, p. 8), thinks this may be represented by Kurla or Koralai-gorla on the East Coast. "There is," he points out, "Gorlapâlem near Nizâmpattanam. (Cf. *Vingorla*, South Concan, Malabar Coast)."

3. Argaric Gulf and Argeirou (pp. 22, 59, and 60).

Branfill in the work cited (pp. 8 and 9) says :— "Ârârankarai (pronounced nowadays Âtrañkarai), at the mouth of the Vagai looks very like the ancient 'Argari,' and 'Sinus Argalicus' (Yule), the Argaric Gulf . . . *Ἀρχαίπων* looks like Anâikarai, the ancient name of Adam's Bridge, so called by the Tamils as being the bridge or causeway *par excellence* In the middle ages, before Pâmban was separated from the mainland by the



CSL

storm that breached the famous causeway, there is said to have been a great city, remains of which are still to be seen on the spit of sand opposite to Pāmban." *Αρχείρου* in Nobbe's edition appears as *Αργείρου*.

4. On Thelkheir—(pp. 63 and 64).

Branfill (p. 12), would identify this with Chidambaram—"the town between the Vellār and Kolaḍam (*Coleroon*) rivers, . . . from *chit* = wisdom, and *ambara*, horizon, sky; = *Heaven of Wisdom*. Tillai, or Tillaiyanam is the former name of this place, and it is familiarly known as Tillai even now amongst the natives. May not this be the ancient Thelkyr and *Θελχείρ* of Ptolemy and the ancient geographers? But perhaps Tellūr (near Vandavasi) may be it." Tillai, he points out (p. 30), is a tree with milky sap.

5. On Orthoura—(pp. 64 and 184).

Branfill (pp. 7 and 8), identifying this, says:—"Orattūr (pronounced Oratthūru) is found repeatedly in this (Kavéri Delta) and the adjacent districts, and may represent the 'Orthura' of ancient geographers, for which Colonel Yule's Map of Ancient India gives *Ureiyour*, and Professor Lassen's *Wadiur*."

6. On Arkatos—(p. 64).

Branfill, who takes this to designate a place and not a king, says (p. 11):—"Ārkād or Āru-kāḍu = six forests; the abode of six Rishis in old times. There are several places of this name in Tanjore and S. Arcot, besides the town of 'Arcot' near 'Vellore' (*Αρκατῶν βασιλειον Σῶρα*). One of these would correspond better than that with Harkātu of Ibn Batuta, who reached it the first



evening of his march inland after landing from Ceylon, apparently on the shallow coast of Madura or Tanjore (fourteenth century)."

7. On the River Adamas—(p. 71).

Professor V. Ball, in his Presidential Address to the Royal Geological Society of Ireland (read March 19, 1883), says:—"The *Adamas* River of Ptolemy, according to Lassen's analysis of the data, was not identical with the Mahanadi, as I have suggested in my 'Economic Geology' (p. 30), but with the Subanrikha, which is, however, so far as we know, not a diamond-bearing river, nor does it at any part of its course traverse rocks of the age of those which contain the matrix in other parts of India. This *Adamas* River was separated from the Mahanadi by the Tyndis and Dosaron; the latter, according to Lassen, taking its rise in the country of Kokkonaga (*i.e.* Chutia Nâgpur), and to which the chief town Dosara (the modern Doesa) gave its name. But, according to this view, the Dosaron must have been identical with the modern Brahmini, which in that portion of its course called the Sunk (or Koel), included a diamond locality. I cannot regard this identification as satisfactory, as it does not account for the Tyndis intervening between the Dosaron and Mahanadi, since, as a matter of fact, the Brahmini and Mahanadi are confluent at their mouths. Lassen, however, identifies the Dosaron with the Baiturnee, and the Tyndis with the Brahmini. This destroys the force of his remark, as to the origin of the name of the former, since at its nearest point it is many miles distant from Doesa."



8. On Mount Sardônyx—(p. 77).

Professor Ball in the address above cited, says:—
“The sardonyx mines of Ptolemy are probably identical with the famous carnelian and agate mines of Rajpipla, or, rather, as it should be called, Ratanpur.”

9. On Talara—(p. 90).

Branfill suggests the identification of this with Tellâr or Tillârapaṭṭu (p. 8).

10. On Pounnata—(p. 180).

“Punâdu, Punnâdu, or Punnâta, as it is variously written, seems also to be indicated by the Pan-nuta in Lassen’s Map of Ancient India according to Ptolemy, and by the Paunata of Colonel Yule’s Map of Ancient India, *ubi beryllus*.” This place is about 70 miles to the south-east of Seringapatam.

11. On Arembour—(pp. 180, 182).

Branfill—(p. 8), identifies this with Arambadr.

12. On Abour—(p. 184).

Branfill (p. 11), identifies this with “Âvâr, *cow-villa*, a decayed town, 5 miles S.W. of Kambakônâ, with a temple and a long legend about a cow(â). May not this be the ancient Abur of the Map of Ancient India in Smith’s Classical Atlas? Colonel Yule suggests Amboor, but this Âvâr seems nearer, and if not this there are several places in S. Arcot named Amûr.”

13. On Argyrê—(p. 196).

Professor Ball says:—“There are no silver mines in Arakan, and considering the geological structure of the country, it is almost certain there never were any. I have been recently informed by General Sir A. Phayre that Argyrê is



probably a transliteration of an ancient Burmese name for Arakan. It seems likely therefore that it was from putting a Greek interpretation to this name that the story of the silver-mines owed its origin."

14. On the Golden Kheronese—(p. 197).

"Gold," says Mr. Colquhoun (*Amongst the Shans*, p. 2), "has been for centuries washed from the beds of the Irrawadi, Sitang, Salween, Mékong, and Yang-tsi-kiang rivers." The gold-reefs of Southern India which have of late attracted so much notice, are, he points out, but outcrops of the formation which extends on the surface for thousands of square miles in the Golden Peninsula.

15. On the Loadstone rocks (p. 242).

Professor Ball thinks these rocks may possibly be identified with certain hill-ranges in Southern India which mainly consist of magnetic iron (*Economic Geology of India*, p. 37).

16. On the sandy deserts of Baktria (p. 270).

In the *Proceedings* of the Royal Geographical Society for April last will be found a description of the Kara-kum sands, by M. Paul Lessar, who divides them into three classes. The *burkans* which form his 3rd class are of the nature described by Curtius. "The sand is wholly of a drifting nature; the slightest puff of wind effaces the fresh track of a caravan." He notices a place in the Khanate of Bokhara where whole caravans have been buried.

17. On the river Óchos (p. 273).

"What hitherto has been taken for the dry bed of the Ochus is not the bed of a river, but merely



a natural furrow between sand-hills. Thus the bed of the Oehus has still to be discovered." *Proceedings of the Royal Geog. Socy.* for April 1885.

18. On the Avestic names of rivers, &c. in Afghanistan—(pp. 305-19).

In the 1st chapter of the *Vendîdâd* the names are given of the sixteen lands said to have been created by Ahura Mazda. Of these the following nine have been thus identified by Darmesteter in his translation of the *Zend-Avesta*, *Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. IV. p. 2):—

Zend name.	Old Persian.	Greek.	Modern.
Sughdha	Suguda	Sogdianê	(Samarkand)
Môuru	Margu	Margianê	Mery
Bâkhdhi	Bakhtri	Baktra	Balkh
Harôyu	Haraiya	Areia	Hari-Rôd
Vehrâna	Varkâna	Hyrkania	Jorjân
Harahvaiti	Harauvati	Arakhôtos	Harât
Haêtumant		Etymandros	Helmend
Ragha	Raga	Bhagai	Reï
Hapta hindu	Hindavas	Indoi	(Pañjâb)

Some of these and other names are examined in an article in *The Academy* (May 16, 1885, No. 680), signed by Auriel Stein, from which the following particulars are gathered: "We recognize the 'powerful, faithful *Mourva*' as the modern Mery, the 'beautiful *Bâkhdhi*' as Balkh, *Haraeva* as Herât, the mountain *Vâitigaesâ* as the *Bâdhgês* of recent notoriety. The river *Harahvaiti* (Sansk. *Sarasvatî*) has been known in successive ages as *Arakhôtos* and *Arghand-âb*; but more important for Avestic geography is the large stream of which it is a tributary, the 'bountiful, glorious *Haêtumant*,' the *Etyman-*



CSL

dros and Hermandus of classic authors, the modern *Helmand*." A passage is quoted from the Avesta where eight additional rivers seem to be named. "At its foot (the mountain Ushidao's, *i.e.* the Koh-i-Baba and Siâh-Kôh's) gushes and flows forth the *Hvâstra* and the *Hvaspa*, the *Fradatha* and the beautiful *Hvarenâshaiti* and *Ustavaiti* the mighty, and *Urvadha*, rich of pastures, and the *Erezi* and *Zarenumaiti*." The *Hvâstra* Stein thinks may be the Khâsh-Rûd, and the *Hvaspa* the Khuspâs-Rûd, both of which come from the south slope of the Siâh-Kôh and reach the eastern basin of the lagune where the lower course of the Helmand is lost. "In Khuspâs," he adds, "a place on the upper course of the Khuspâs-Rûd, we may recognize the town *Khoaspa* mentioned by Ptolemy in Arakhôsia. The name *hvaspa* means "having good horses," and seems to have been a favourite designation for rivers in Iran. Besides the famous Khoaspês near Susa, we hear of another Khoaspes, a tributary of the Kabûl River." In Kâsh, a town on the Khâsh-Rûd may be recognized the station called Cosata by the Anonymous Ravennas. The *Fradatha* is Pliny's Ophradus (*i.e.* ὁ Φράδος of the Greek original) and now the Farâh-Rûd. The *Prophthasia* of Ptolemy and Stephanos of Byzantium is a literal rendering of *fradatha*, which in common use as neuter means (literally "proficiency"), "progress," "increase." The *Hvarenâshaiti* is the *Pharnacotis* of Pliny and now the Harrût-Rûd, which like the Farâh-Rûd enters the lake of Seistân. *Farnahvati* has been suggested as the original and native form of Pharnacotis.



19. On the Griffins or Gryphons—(p. 295).

Professor Ball in a paper published in the *Proceedings of the Royal Irish Academy*, 2nd Ser., Vol. II. No. 6, pp. 312-13 (Pol. Lit. and Antiq.) says: "In the account which Photios gives of the Griffins, if we exclude from it the word *birds*, and for feathers read hair, we have a tolerably accurate description of the hairy black-and-tan coloured Thibetan mastiffs, which are now, as they were doubtless formerly, the custodians of the dwellings of the Thibetans, those of gold-miners, as well as of others. They attracted the special attention of Marco Polo, as well as of many other travellers in Thibet, and for a recent account of them reference may be made to Capt. Gill's '*River of Golden Sand*.'"



ERRATA.

- Page 8, n. 5, for *Noble* read *Nobbe*.
- „ 14, n. 12, after Tâsh-Kurghân insert its
Lat. 37° 46' (long. 75° 4').
- „ 20, n. for [LXXXIX] read [XXIX].
- „ 25, for *censure* in last line but one read
usa.
- „ 51, l. 20, for Kandionoi read Pandionoi.
- „ 63, l. 16, for *outlet* read *outset*.
- „ 64, l. 13, omit *the* before Kolkhoi.
- „ 68, l. 15, for *Gâdrâ* read Gâdâr.
- „ 70, l. 27, Katikardama should begin the
line after.
- „ 71, l. 13, after Dôsarôn instead of the
dash insert the sign of equality (=)
and so after “Adamas” in the next
line, and after “Ganges” in line 21.
- „ 75, Section 21 should have been *immedi-*
ately followed by the next 4 sections
which appear on p. 78.
- „ 76, l. 16, for ‘*punishment*’ of the ‘*gods*’
read ‘*punishment of the gods*.’
- „ 80, l. 21, for Rikshavant read Rikshavat.
- „ 81, l. 29, for Bidasis read Bibasis.
- „ 87, l. 7, for the *comma* after the bracket
put *period*.
- „ 88, l. 26, for Rhonadis read Rhouadis.



Page 124, The sections 47-50 should have been placed after the notice of Iomousa on p. 126.

- ” 140, l. 29, after ‘second group’ insert (sections 57 and 58).
- ” 140, last line, after ‘fourth group,’ insert (section 61).
- ” 141, l. 15, after ‘sixth group’ insert (section 64.)



CSL

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
A		Agara	159
Abaratha	248, 258	Agathou daimonos	
Abarbina.....	261	Is.	236, 238
Abhiras (Ahirs).....	40	Aghadfp	216
Abioi Skythai. 293-6, 323		Agimoitha	225
Abiria	36, 136, 140	Aginnatai	236-7
Abour	184-5	Agisymba.....	13 n11, 15
Abragana	299	Agrinagara	154
Abrana Is.	250	Ahiehhatra	133, 161
Achîn	240	Ahromi	128
Adamas, R. 70, 71, 80, 104		Aigidiôn, Is.	250
Adam's Peak	256	Aïoi.....	53, 54, 180
Adarima	180	Airrhadoi	191
Adeisamon	250	Aithiopians.....	245
Adeisathra...80, 133, 161		Aitymandroi	307
Adeisathroi	164-6	Ajmîr	129, 149
Adeisathron. 78, 79, 80, 159		Ajûna	114
Adisdara ... 131, 133, 161		Akadra	202-3
Adrapsa	261	Akadrai	245
Adris or Rhouadis R. 81,		Akesinês, R.	89
90		Akhasa.....	293
Aganagara	202, 215	Akinakai	268
Aganagora	212	Akour	183
Agar.....	154	Alaba, Is.	251
		Alana, Mts.	236, 291



CSL

	PAGE		PAGE
Alanorsoi.....	287	Anara	159
Alanoi Skythai 287, 299,	325	Anarea, Mts....	287-8, 292
Alexandreia in Ara-		Anarismoundon, C.	248, 258
khosia	316	Andâman, Is.....	237
Alexandreia Âreiôn..	307, 309-10, 328	Andarâb	282
Alexandreia Eskhatê	277, 283, 325	Andhela, R.	98
Alexandria Opiane...	112	Andomatis, R.	98
Alexandreia Oxeianê	277	Andrapana	136, 141
Alikhorda	269, 325	Anniba, Mts....	297-8, 326
Alingar, R.	87, 106	Anieseis	276
Alishang, R.	87	Anikhai	131
Allosygnê	66, 68	Anina	225
Aloê	180	Aninakha	132, 221-2
Alôr	145, 152	Anoubingara ...	249, 258
Alosanga	225, 231	Anourogrammoi.	249-50, 259
Altai, Mts.....	292, 295	Antakhara	156
Al-wâkin or Lukin.	10n	Antibolê, R. 73-5,	191-2
Amakatis or Ama-		Antiokheia Margiane	
kastis.....	124, 127	(Merv) ...	17, 263-4, 324
Amarakançaka	99	Anupshahr	175
Amarapur	230	Anurâdhapura ...	155, 259
Amareis	269	Aornos	105, 143
Amarousa	261	Aorsoi	288
Ambashtha	312	Aparatote	258
Ambastai ...	159, 161, 245	Aparytai	116
Ambastes, R.	244	Apokopa, Mts.	75-6
Ambautai	311-312	Arabis, R. 313-14,	319, 321, 329
Ambrôdax	307	Arabitai	159
Amminê, Is.	250	Arakan	196, 205
Anamba, Is.	241	Arakhôsia. 34,	315-19, 329



CSL

INDEX.

343

PAGE	PAGE
Arakhôtos, 20n, 34, 316-18	Arikada 314
Arakhôtos Krênê. 316-17, 329	Arikaka 316
Aral, sea of 279-82	Arimaspîans 295
Arana 314	Aripo 258
Aratha 263	Arisabion 225
Aravali, Mts. 76, 94	Arispara 124, 126
Araxates, R. 325	Aristobathra 142
Araxes, R. 280	Aristophylai 311
Arbaka 316, 329	Arjikiya, R. 85
Arbis 320	Ârkâd 162
Arbita, Mts. 95, 320	Arkand-âb, R. 34
Arbitai or Arabies... 321	Arkatos 64, 162
Arbuda or Abu, Mt. 76, 149	Arklinara 225
Ardha-gangâ, R. 65	Armagara 45, 48
Ardônê 124, 128	Arômata (Cape Guar- dafui) 27
Areia 305-10, 328	Arôr 83, 151
Areian Lake. 306, 314, 328	Arouarnoi (Arvar- noi) 65-6, 185
Areias, R. 306, 328	Arsa 118
Arembour 180, 182	Arsagalitae 118
Argadina 263	Arsitis 261
Argalou 60	Artakoana 309
Argandâb, R. 317	Artamis, R. 268, 273, 324
Argaric Gulf 22	Artikaudna 307, 309
Argeirou 59	Artoarta ... 136, 141, 311
Argouda 311	Arukgam Bay 258
Argyra 196	Asanabara 225
Ariaka 263	Asiakê 316
Ariakai 289	Asigramma 142, 143
Ariakê 175, 179	Asikni, R. 85, 89
Ariakê Sadinôn 39	Asinda 149
Ariaspê 314-15, 329	Asini 125



CSL

INDEX.

345

PAGE	PAGE
Baktrianê ... 267-74, 324-5	Bardamana 185
Baktrioi 313	Bardaôtis 163
Balaka, Is. 250	Bardâwad 165
Balantipyrgon ... 164, 166	Bardaxêma 33, 37
Balasôr 72	Bardhwân 174
Baleopatam 45	Bardia 37
Bali, Is. 241	Barenkora (or Baren-
Balima 142	athra) 226
Balita 55	Baris, R. 49, 53, 78, 103, 180
Balkh 269, 274	Barna 322
Balonga 202	Barona, R. 69
Balongka 226	Baronsai, Is. ... 236, 238-9
Baltipatna 39, 45	Barrhai 222-4
Bambhara 148	Barygaza. 38, 40, 49, 77,
Bammala 53, 55	152-3
Bammogoura 154	Barzaura 311-12
Banagara 136, 141	Basanârâi 222-3
Banaouasei 176, 179	Baskatis, R. 275
Bânâras 129, 228	Bassa, Is. 250, 259
Bandobênê 87	Bassein 44, 197
Bândogarh 166	Bâtai 299, 304, 327
Bania 145	Batoi 63, 183-4
Banna or Banu 141	Batanagara..... 124, 127
Barabaŋga, R. 74	Batangkaisara... 128, 130
Barago, C. 197	Batrakheian Sea ... 246
Barakê 36, 187-8	Batticalao 258
Barakês, R. ... 248-9, 257	Bautisos, R. ... 298, 326
Barakoura 191, 195	Bazakata, Is. 236-7
Barangê 261	Bear, Mt. (Ouxenton). 100
Barbarei 148	Becare 52
Barbarikon 148	Bedasta, R. 89
Barborana 112	Begram 112
Barcelôr 50	Beias, R. 90



	PAGE		PAGE
Benagouron	171	Bidaspês, R.....	81, 89, 109
Benda or Binda. 39, 41,		Bideris.....	180
103, 175		Bigis	314
Bentote, R.....	257	Bilhâri	167
Bêpur	50	Binagara	145, 151
Bêpyrrhos, Mts. 102, 204,		Bintenne	259
208, 221		Biolingai or Bölingai. 163	
Bêrabai	196-7	Bisauli	131
Berê	184	Bitaxa	307
Bêttigô, Mt. 59, 78		Bogadia	307
Beseidai	217	Bodhpûr	151
Besmeid	143	Bôkana	248, 258
Besynga, R. 196, 205		Bôkanoi	250
Besyngetai	196, 219	Bokhârâ	35
Bettigoi..... 159, 160, 166		Bôlitai	311-12
Bhadar, R. 37		Bolor, Mts.....	35, 302
Bhadrâvati	163	Bombay	43-4
Bhândak	166	Bônis	142, 145
Bhanzas	223	Boraita.....	212, 214, 216
Bharâod	163	Borgoi	307
Bharêch	216	Boreion Akron (North Cape)	247-9
Bharoch	38, 153	Boriban	167
Bhars or Bhors	224	Boudaia	150, 151
Bhatnair	127	Boukephala.....	124
Bhaulingi	163	Boumasanoi	250
Bhaunagar.....	37, 150	Brâhmanâbâd.....	152
Bhîls	160	Brakhmanai Magoi. 167,	
Bhîlsa	122	169	
Bhîma, R. 41		Brahmaputra, R. 192,	
Bhîwandî, R. 42		206, 209	
Bhôjapûr	163	Brakhmê... 51, 167, 170-1	
Bhota	192, 206	Brâhminî, R. 71	
Bibasis, R. 190			



CSL

PAGE	PAGE
Dâmnâk.....299, 305	Diamond Point..... 74
Damudâ, R. 100	Diamouna, R. ....96, 98
Dangayas 211	Dilâwar 125
Dangors or Dagors..118,	Dildana 165
305	Dindugal 184
Darâdrae...83, 105-7, 305	Dionysopolis .....112-13
Darandai..... 313	Dionysos, C.....248, 258
Dargamenes, R..268, 272,	Diordouloi 250
310-12	Dista 307
Dargoidos, R..... 268	Doânai .....222-4
Darkama 308	Doanas, R....202-3, 208-9
Darokana 311	Doblana 165
Dasâmana 304	Dondra Head..... 258
Dasana or Doana ... 226	Dôrias, R..202, 209, 234-5
Dasârnas..... 71	Dôsarênê .....171-3
Dashak..... 315	Doesa 172
Dauaba 289	Dôsârên, R..70-1, 80, 104
Daulatâbâd 177	Dounga.....39, 42
Daxata 300	Draband or Dera-
Dedera-Oya, R. 257	band..... 141
Dehli...122, 128, 130, 222	Drakhumai 307
Dekra ... 217	Drangianê ...313-15, 329
Dêmos, R. 275, 325	Drastoka 311-12
Deopali..... 175	Drepsa (or Rhepsa). 277,
Derbikktai .....263, 265	282, 325
Dêvagana..... 150	Drepsianoî .....276, 282
Dêvagadh 177	Drilophyllitai 160, 168,
Dewaliya..... 149	171
Dhângars..... 211	Drôsakhê (or Rhosakla)
Dhar 154	299
Dharanikôta 187	Drybaktai 276
Dharmodaya, R..... 100	Dudhal 128
Dhârur or Dârur ... 177	Dugadh 42



PAGE	PAGE
Dumura, R. ....234-5	Euthymédia .....122-4
Dwâarakâ 188	Ezata 196
Dyardanes, R..... 209	
E	
Ebousmouanassa ... 269	Faizâbâd 229
Eikour 184	Farzab 313
Eirênê, Is. 250	Ferro, Is. 4 n4
Ekbatana..... 17	Foul Point 258
Elangkon or Elang- kor .....53, 54	Fu-nan 9 n6
Elburg, Mts. 262	
Eldana 225	G
Ellasing 231	Gagasmira .....124, 129
Elura 177	Gahalata 118
Embolima 142	Galaktophagoi Sky- thai... 228-9, 295-6, 326
Emôdos, Mt. ...293-4, 302, 326	Galiba 247
Empêlathra..... 135	Galiba, Mts. ....249, 257
Eôritai..... 316	Galle, Point de 258
Epitausea 151	Gamaliba .....175-6
Erarasa.....124, 129, 228	Gamuakê 316
Erod or Yirodu 182	Gandakî, R.102, 135, 205, 218
Erranoboas, R. 98	Gandarai .....115, 116
Erzhenysis, R. 97	Gandaritis 87
Erymnoi 288	Gandava, R. 95
Estobara 269	Gandhara 115
Etymander, R.34, 309, 315	Ganganoi.....210
Euaspla, R. 87	Gangaridai ...172-4, 233
Euergetai..... 315	Gangê Regia, 172-3, 215-6
Eukratidia .....269, 274	Gangês, R. (of Cey- lon).....249, 258



PAGE	PAGE
Ganges, course of ... 79	Gôdâvari, C. ....62, 68
Ganges, mouths of 72, 73, 100-2	Gôdâvari, R....41, 66, 234
Ganges, tributaries of.97-8	Gomal, R. 95
Gangetic Gulf .....24, 63	Gomati, R. 86
Ganjâm 70	Gonds 160
Garamaioi 17	Gonghris 174
Garamantes .....13 n11	Gorakhpâr 99
Garinaioi (or Khara- maioi) .....299, 305	Gôrya .....112-13
Garô Hills 235	Goryaia .....88, 105, 110
Garioia, R. 88	Gorys 87
Gaticara, C..... 10n	Goumara, Is. 251
Gaur or Gâura 215	Gouraios, R. ....110-11
Gauri, R. 87	Gouriané 263
Gazaka or Gaudzaka. 311	Goverdhan 129
Gedrôsia. 34, 319-22, 329	Great Cape .....202, 204
Ghâghra or Ghogra, R. ....98, 99	Great Gulf..202, 204, 244
Ghâra, R. 36	Green Sea...189, 191, 246
Ghâts, Eastern 79	Grynaioi Skythai. 35, 284
Ghâts, Western ...78-81	Gudalur 65
Ghilghit 118	Gudur 68
Girirâja 129	Gujarât.....36, 38
Ghoḍa-bandar 44	Gûndi 150
Ghorband, R..... 112	Gurkan (or Jorjan). 112, 261
Ghoregâon 44	Gwa..... 197
Ghoris or Gur 111	Gwadar 322
Ghûr, Mts. 309	Gynaikôn Limên.319,322, 329
Girnâr, Mt..... 37	
Goa or Govâ 181	H
Goaris, R. ... 39, 41, 103	Haidarâbâd 144, 152
Godana 307	Hâjipûr 218
	Hala, Mts. 95



CSL

INDEX.

351

PAGE	PAGE		
Halsi	181	Hmâbi	199
Hambangtote, C.....	258	Hônan-fu (Séra).....	19n
Hang-chow	10n	Horatae	140, 149
Hangol	182	Horkand, sea of.....	259
Hanoi	9 n6	Hughli, R.	73
Hardwâr or Awaratta. 130,	212	Hydaspês, R. ...	89, 125
Hari-Râd, R.....	309	Hydraôtes, R. ...	90, 123
Hashtnagar	117	Hypanis, R.	90
Hastakavapra	150	Hyperborean, Mts....	286
Hastinâpura. 72, 122, 212		Hlyphasis or Hypasis, R.	90, 91-2
Hastimalla	174	Hyrkania.17, 260-2, 323-4	
Haump	154		
Havila	107		
Hayakshêtra	166		
Hazâras, Mt.	309		
Hekatompylos ...17, 18n			
Heliou limên ...248, 258			
Hellespont, parallel of.14,	15, 18 n15		
Helmund, R. 34, 309, 317			
Heorta	210		
Heptanêsia	187-8		
Herat (Areia) 19n, 111,	308-10, 315		
Hesydrus, R.	91		
Hierapolis	11, 17		
Hindu-kush	35		
Hippokoura. 39, 44, 176,	178-9		
Hippêmolgoi	295		
Hippophagoi, Sky-			
thai.....	293, 296		

I

Iabadios, Is. . 191, 239-41	
Iasionion	263, 324
Iâstai	288
Iatioi	276
Iastos, R.	286, 290
Iatour	185
Iaxartai	288, 326
Iaxartes, R. 275, 279-81,	286
Ibêringai	221, 223
Ikarta	185
Imaôs, Mt.19, 35, 289-90,	300
Indabara	124, 128
Indê	175
Indikomordana	277
Indoi	222



CSL

	PAGE		PAGE
Indoskythia ...	136, 140	Jalâlabâd.....	114
Indoprathai	221-2	Jalâlpûr	125
Indrapratha ...	122, 128	Jâlandhara	110
Indus, changes of		Jamma.....	126
course of	84n	Jamnak	60, 72, 99
Indus, mouths of.	33, 37, 96	Java, Is.	239-41
Indus, origin of name		Jayagadh.....	57
of	81, 82	Jelasôr, R.	101
Indus, sources of.	81, 83, 142	Jhelam, R.	89, 109
Indus, tributaries of.	81, 85, 86	Jibal Khushnâmi, Is.	238
Indus, valley of the	137	Ji-nan	6 n9
Inna	314	Jorampur.....	162
Iobares, R.	98	Jubunak, R.	102
Iogana	248, 258	Juna-gadh	37
Iomusa	126	Junnar.....	177
Irâwadi, R.	198-9		
Islands of the Blest	4 n4, 10, 28	K	
Issedôn Skythikê..	294-6	Kabul	147n, 311
Issêdones	299, 327	Kabul, R.	84, 86
Istargaph	312	Kachh, Gulf of	36
Ithagouros	118, 299, 305	Kadaluñdi	50
Ivernia (Ireland) ...	14	Kadapâ.....	186
		Kadranj, sea of	200
J		Kailâsa, Mt.	83
Jagdalak	113	Kâinas, R.	98
Jajhar	129	Kaineitai, Is.	48
Jajhpur	72	Kaisana	112
		Kakobai	222-3
		Kâkamukha	172
		Kâkula.....	236



	PAGE		PAGE
Kālagangā, R.	257	Kanaris	269
Kalah	300	Kanathra, Is.	250
Kalaikarias	48, 51	Kandaloi	159
Kalaka-serai	121	Kandaroi	276, 281
Kalandradona, Is. ...	250	Kandipatna	185
Kalikat	49	Kanatti	53
Kalimr, C.	60-2	Kangarayan, R.	257
Kālinadi	215	Kangra	110
Kalinadi, R.	134	Kan̄hagiri	179
Kalinga	233	Kannagara	69, 70
Kalingai	68, 81	Kannetri	54
Kaliour	184	Kanogiza...134, 224, 227-8	
Kallada	153	Kanodipsa	237-8
Kalliena.....	40, 57	Kanouj	134, 227-8
Kaliga.....	185	Kant	134
Kaligeris	176, 179	Kantala	160
Kalligikon, C. ...	59, 60-2	Kan̄thi, Gulf of 33,36,136,	
Kalpē	21		187
Kalyān	160, 179	Kanyakubja ...	134, 227
Kalyāna.....	43, 57	Kapisēnē	106, 113
Kamah, R.	86	Kapoutana	307
Kamanē.....	35, 39	Karāchi	146, 321
Kamara	67	Kāragam	182
Kambāyat	42	Karallis	21
Kambērikhon, R. ...	72	Karatai.....	35, 284-5
Kamboja, C.	204	Kareoi	57, 64, 183
Kambukgam, R.	257	Karigē	185-6
Kambyson, R....	71, 72, 73	Karikal	64
Kamigara	151-2	Karikardama	172
Kamilla	232	Karkalla	146
Kampana, R.	111	Karkos, Is.	250
Kanagara...131, 134, 227		Karmaphuli, R. .194, 235	
Kanarak	70	Karmara	184



	PAGE		PAGE
Karnagarh	172	Kattigara ... 9 n7, 11 n7,	25, 245
Karnasônagarh	172	Kaukasos, Mts...277, 311	
Karnul	163	Kausâmbi	72
Karoura (Kabul), 24, 180,		Kausîkî, R. ....102, 205	
182, 311-12		Kâvêri, R. ....50, 65, 79	
Kartasina	171-2	Kaveripattâna	65
Kartinaga	171-2	Kayal	58
Karur	50, 65	Kayâna or Kohâna, R.	98
Kasapê	261	Kelydna	212, 214
Kaseirotai	306	Kemery, Is.	44
Kâshgar	304	Kerangê	185
Kâsî	228	Kesarwa	131
Kasia	303	Kesho	9 n7
Kasia, Mts. ...293-4, 298		Ketaion, C.....248, 258	
Kaskê	308	Khaberis	63, 65
Kâsmîr.....89, 108-9, 302		Khabêros, R.....63, 65	
Kaspapyros	116	Khaibar Pass.....	113
Kaspatyros	108	Khalinê, Is.....236, 238	
Kaspeira	124, 128	Khalkittis	222
Kaspeiria 105-8, 124-6,		Khan-fu	10n
301		Kharakharta	269
Kaspian Gates, 17, 18, 20n		Kharaunaioi Skythai	
Kassida	225-8		293
Kastra	171	Khariphron	33, 36
Katabêda, R.....	191, 194	Khasa	303
Katak	70-1	Khatai Skythai.....	293
Katharians.....123, 157		Khatriaioi.....141, 156-7	
Kâthiâvad	157	Khatriis	159
Kathis.....157-8		Khatriiskhê	307
Katikardama	69-70	Khaurana	394, 326
Katisa	311	Khaurina.....	307
Kattaks	157	Khêdâ	181
Kattaour	157		



CSL

INDEX.

355

PAGE	PAGE		
Khetars	157	Kôa, R. 81, 86, 87, 93, 95,	312
Kheronese, The Golden		Koangka	132, 135
24, 27, 190, 197-8, 208,	226	Kodanê, Is.....	320
Kheronesus of the		Kođdura	66, 68
Pirates	45, 47-8	Kodrana	136, 141
Khitai or Kathay. 9 n 6		Kognabanda	158
Khiva	282, 290	Kognandoua ..	124, 126
Khoana	269	Kohik, R. ...	35, 277, 291
Khoaspa	316, 329	Koiamba	319
Khoaspes, R. 86, 115, 128		Koimbatour Gap.....	78
Khôês, R.	87	Kôkala.....	70
Khojend	282	Kôkanâr	179
Kholbêsina	276	Kokelay	258
Khomara	269	Kokkonagara. 226, 235-6,	245
Khomaroi	268	Kokkonagai.....	171-2
Khonnamagara 124, 126		Kola or Kula-taik 198 n	
Khôrasmioi	276, 282	Kolaka	142, 146
Khrêndoi	261	Kolhâpur	177
Khryse.....	69	Kôli	198, 200
Khrysoanas, R. 198-9,	208-9	Kolindoia	183
Khwârasm... 279 n, 282		Kolis	61
Khyendwen, B.....	235	Kolkhic Gulf	57
Kianchi	9 n 7	Kolkhoi.....	57-8, 78
Kimara	225	Kolmândla	47
Kindia	131, 134	Kômari, C.	29, 58
Kipin or Kophen ...	318	Komaroi	35, 284
Kirâta	192, 282	Kômédai. 18, 35, 104, 275,	278, 284
Kirrhâdai.....	276, 282	Kômoi	268
Kirrhadia	219-221	Koñdopalle	68
Kizibdarya, R.	290	Koñdôta	212
Kleisobara	9		



	PAGE		PAGE
Konkan	45	Kouba	180
Konta	130	Koudoutai	222
Kontakossyla	66, 68	Kounaraka, R.	74
Ko-panto	12 n 9	Kouni	320
Kôphên or Kôphês, R. 86,		Kourellour	180-1
105		Kouriandra	269
Korangkaloï	217	Kouraporeina	135
Korankâra	217	Kourotula	22, 63, 64
Koraxoi	288	Kranganûr	50-53
Korcour	180	Krishna, R.	41, 63, 66
Koreoura	49	Krishnapatam	67
Korindiour	183	Krokala, Is.	116
Koringa	68	Kubhâ, R.	86
Korkobara	248, 258	Kuchiavelli	253
Korônos, Mt.	260-2	Kûda	45
Kortatha	202	Kudramali, Pt.	253
Koroungkala ..	185, 187	Kulburga	177
Kôry, Is.	137	Kulinda	110
Kôry, C. 22, 26 n, 59, 60,		Kuluta	110
189, 247		Kunâr or Kâmah, R. 86,	
Kôrygaza	212, 216-7	106	
Kôsa	153	Kuram, R.	141
Kôsala	99, 135	Kurumbars	162
Kôsamba	70, 72	Kunḍa	130
Kotakê	308	Kushans	138
Kotaur	55	Kusinagara	135
Kottiarâ	53, 54, 55	Kylindrinê	105, 109
Kottiaris, R.	245-6	Kyreskhata 276, 283, 325	
Kottis	66, 67		
Kottobara	69		
Kottobarâ (in Gedro-			
sia)	320		
Kottonarikhê	50, 188		

L

Labokla ...	122, 124, 126
Lahore	122, 123, 126



PAGE	PAGE
Lambatai .....104, 106	Madurâ or Mathura 60, 122, 126, 129, 184
Lameta 167	Madura, Is..... 241
Lamghân 106, 141, 213	Magaris 171
Landai, R. ....87, 110	Maghada .....119, 169
Lankâ (Ceylon) 251	Magnetic Rocks ...242-4
Lârdêsa 153	Magona, R..... 97
Lariagara 225	Magour 184
Larikê .....38, 152-3, 157	Mahaban, Mt..... 143
Lasyppa 226	Mahâñadi, R. 71, 161, 169, 94 333
Launi or Lavanî, R. 37, 94	Mahânanda 215
Lepchhas 224	Maharashtra 39
Lêstai or Robbers' Country 202	Mahâweliganga, R... 257
Leukê, Is..... 57, 187-8	Mahendra, Mt.....69, 76
Liganeira .....124, 126	Mahî 136
Ligor 203	Maiandros, Mt. 204-5, 208
Limyrikê .....49, 180	Mais, R..... 104
Lôgarh 313	Maisolia ...66, 67, 68, 185
Lohâwar 127	Maisôlos, R.....66, 107
Lokharna .....311, 313	Maisoka or Mausokr 1
Lohkot..... 122	Malaia, Mt. 49, 256
Lônibarê .....33, 37	Malaita .....163-4
Lo-yang 19n	Malaka, straits of ... 200
M	
Maagrammon ...250, 259	Malamantus, R. 88
Macco-Calingae 233	Malanga .....67, 185-6
Machin 9 n 7	Malaya, Mt. 75, 78
Madagascar, Is. 256	Mâldâ 215
Madang-arh 47	Maleiba 164
Madhy-a-dêsa 77	Maleo, C. 2
Madra.....123, 157	Maleou Kôlon, C. ...108 3-9
	Maliane 317
	Malipalla .....175-6



CSL

358

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Mâlk'héd	179	Margara	130
Malli	169	Marghinan	283
Maltoun	165	Margianê .....262-7, 324	
Manada, R. ...69, 71, 103		Margos, R.	263-4
Manâr Gulf	57	Marhara	130
Manarat, R.	67	Marouka	276
Manarppa or Manali- arpha	66, 67	Maroundai	212-4
Mandagara	45, 47, 57	Martaban	10n
Mandalai ...132-3, 167-8		Martaban, gulf of ...	197
Mandara, Mt. ...110, 205		Marudvridhâ, R.	85
Manekir	156	Marykaioi	268
Mangalîn ...46, 48, 50, 54		Masdoranoi or Mazô- ranoi	306
Mangaruth	46	Massagetai 35, 263, 265-6, 284	
Mangrol	37	Massaioi	287
Maniaina or Mania- taia	225	Mastanour	180-1
Manikhai	132	Masulipaṭṭam	68
Maniolai, Is. 237, 239, 242-4		Matlak	74
Maniyeih	132	Mausarnaioi	320
Mantiour	183	Maxêra, B.	260, 262
Mantote	258-9	Maxêrai	261
Mapoura	70	Mega, R.	72, 74
Marakanda (Samar- kand)	269, 274	Mehatnu, R.	68
Marakodra	269	Mekong, R.	203, 209
Mardos or Mardou- lamnê	243, 258	Melangê	65, 67
Mardyênnoi	276	Melizeigara	57, 187
Matoura or Mat- ouva	226, 235	Melkynda	52-4
Matou	247, 258	Menapia	269, 325
Margana		Mendêla	183
		Menouthias, Is.	189
		Meru, Mt.	110
		Methora	98



	PAGE		PAGE
Milizegyris	57	Nagadiba or Nagadina	249, 258-9
Minagara	70, 72, 159	Nagapatam	64
Minnagar	139, 152	Nagara	112-13
Mins	266	Nagarouris	175
Miraj	180	Nageiroi	250
Mirzapûr	78, 134	Nagor	64
Mithankot	94, 143, 144	Nakadouba	250
Modogoulla	176, 179	Namados or -ês, R.	38, 102
Modoura. 124, 128, 183-4		Namostai	289
Modouttou ...	249, 258-9	Nanagouna, R.	45, 48, 103, 159
Mohana, R.	97	Nangalogai	221, 223
Mologénoi	288	Nanghenhar (Naga-	
Monakhê, Is.	250	ra-hara)	113-14
Monedes	212	Nanigaina	69, 70
Monoglosson	33, 37	Nanigèris	137-8
Môphis, R.	38, 103-4	Naosnera	151
Morounda	180-82	Nâra, R.	94, 145
Mousarna	320, 322	Narmadâ or Nabadâ, R.	99
Mousopallê	180	Naroulla ...	180-1
Mouziris . 48, 51, 54, 242		Nartenh	230
Mâdgal	179	Nasika	152, 156
Mundâs	212	Naulibi	117
Muraṇḍa	106	Naulibis	311, 328
Murgh-âb or Meru- râd, R.	264	Nausâri	39
Muyiri-koḍu	51	Nausaripa	33, 39
N			
Naagramma	151	Navi-bandar	37
Nabaris	307	Negombo	258
Nadubandagar	135	Negrâis, C.	63, 197
Nâf or Tekenâf, R.	195	Nelisuram	54
Nagadiba, Is.	251	Nelkynda	52, 60



	PAGE		PAGE
Neudros, R....	90	Ophir.....	40, 140
Nigranigramma.....	156	Opianè.....	20n, 112
Nikaia.....	89, 125	Opotoura.....	168
Nikama.....	63, 64	Orbadar-i or -ou.....	149
Nikobar, Is.....	239	Orchomanes, R.....	324
Nilâb.....	117	Oreisitôi.....	269
Nilgiri, Mts.....	79	Oreitai.....	159
Niphanda.....	311	Oreophanta.....	167
Nirañjana, R.....	97	Orgalie Gul.....	59, 60
Nisaia or Nigaia. 263, 267,	324	Orgasoi.....	288
Nisaioi.....	306, 309	Orneôn, C.....	248, 258
Nisibis.....	308, 328	Orneôn, Is.....	250
Nissa.....	267	Orosana.....	300
Nitra.....	45, 48	Oroudian, h.....	78, 80, 81
Norosson, Mts....	286, 291	Orthiana.....	307
Nostana.....	314	Orthoura.....	6, 34-5
Noubartha.....	248, 258	Ortikane.....	308
Nygdosora.....	159	Ortospana (Kabûl) 20n,	34, 311-2, 328
Nysa.....	105	Orza.....	130, 131
O			
Obareis.....	306	Osanpûr.....	151
Odôka.....	248, 258	Oskana.....	144, 320
Odombarae.....	149	Ostha.....	158
Oidanes, R.....	209	Ostobalasara.....	124
Oikhardês, R. 293-4, 298-	9, 326	Ottorokorrhas, Mts 298-	300, 305, 326
Ôkhos, R... 267, 272-3, 324		Ouangalia, Is.....	250
Olokhôira.....	180-1	Quindion (Vindhya),	
Omênogara.....	175-6	Mts.....	77
Omiza.....	320	Oulispada.....	250
		Ourathênai.....	225, 230
		Ouxenton, Mts. 76, 78, 80,	100



INDEX.

361

PAGE	PAGE
Oreia, C. 249, 258	Panasa 150-1
Oreian Lake 275, 281, 325	Panassa 164, 166-7
Oreian, Mts. ... 274, 276	Pañchâla 131, 133
Oreiana 276	Pandasa 225, 235
Oreianoï 276	Pandionoi 51, 183
Orus, R. 88, 260, 267-8, 276-9, 286	Pandion's Land 59
Oxydrângkaj 276	Pandouoi 121
Ozênê..... 35, 152, 154-5	Pânḍu's Fort 133
Ozoabis 158	Pamiardoi 287
Ozoana 168, 171	Panjâb, Rivers of ... 83
Ozola (or Axola) 316	Panjâbrivers, confu- ence of 91, 94
	Pañjkora 87
P	Panjpûr 143
Pagrâsa 202	Pañjshir 312
Pakidarê 38	Panjshir, R. 112
Palaiogonoi 252-3	Pantipolis 180
Palaipatnai 45	Parabali 151
Palai-Simoundou ... 252-3	Paradênê 320
Palk's Passage 60	Parakanakê 308
Palanda 226	Paralia ... 54, 63, 64, 184
Palandos, R. ... 198, 208-9	Parashni, R. 85
Pali 45	Parautoi 306, 312
Paliana 299	Pardabathra 142
Palibothra (Patna) 19, 30, 99, 132, 167, 168-9	Pardwa or Priya- deva 150
Palibothri 98	Pâripâtra or Pâriya- tra 76
Paloura 23, 63, 67-70, 180	Parnâsâ, R. 166
Pamîr Plateau 278n	Parnoi 263, 266
	Paropanisadai, 34, 310-13, 328
	Paropanisos, Mt. ... 268



	PAGE		PAGE
Parisara	225	Peshawarun	315
Parisiêné	320	Patirgala	176, 179
Parsia	311-13	Peukelaotis.. 20 n,	115-17
Parsiana	311-12	Pharazana	314
Parsidai or Parsirai.	320	Pharetra or Pharytra	185
Parsis	320, 322	Phasis, R.	249, 257
Parsyêtai.....	311-12, 316	Phaunoi, 278 n,	282, 305
Parthalis.....	174	Philêkos, Is.	250
Parwân	112, 312	Phôklis	316
Pasagé	180-1	Pharana	307
Pasianoi	272	Phra	309, 315
Pasikana	124, 126	Phratou	269
Pasipâda	142-3, 151	Phrourion	185-6
Paskai	276	Phyllitai	159, 160
Passaln	130-1	Pialai (or Piaddai)..	299
Passalai	217-18	Pirate Coast	
Patala	146-7	Pishon or Pisanu, R.	107
Patalêné	136, 139	Piska	142
Pati Bay	249, 256-8	Pithonabastâ	202-3
Patistama	157	Piti, R.	36
Pâtnâ	132, 168	Pityndra	68, 185
Pauravas	164	Plaifa	165
Pavangarh	154	Podigei or Pothigei,	
Pegu	69, 235	Mt.	78
Penn-âr, R.	65, 67	Podoperoura	49, 52
Pentagramma	142-3	Podoukê	65, 66, 250
Pentapolis	191	Poinai Theón, Mts....	75
Peperinê, Is.	187-8	Poleour	185
Perimoula	198, 201	Poloura	72, 75
Perimoulic, Gulf	198, 200	Polytimetos, R.	281, 286,
Peringkarei	51, 183		290-1
Persakra	131	Port of Alexander ...	321
Peshâwar	86, 117	Pârvaroi	163-5



	PAGE		PAGE
Rhaugara.....	307	Sador, R.....	196
Rhêa.....	268	Sagala 122, 131, 134-5, 169	
Rhibioi.....	289	Sagaraukai ...	289, 326
Rhingibéri.....	225, 234-5	Saghêla or Sakula ...	135
Rhizana.....	316, 319	Sagapa (Ghâra) R.	33, 36
Rhoboskoi.....	287	Sagêda.....	164-6
Rhodes, parallel of 4 n3, 6, 11, 17, 18 n15		Sagôda or Sadôga	225, 228-9
Rhogandanoi ...	250, 259	Sahya, Mt.....	76
Rhoploutai.....	316	Sahyâdiri, Mt.....	79, 80
Rhouadis, R.....	90	Sailôdâ, R.....	110
Rhouda.....	313	Saimur or Jaimur...	42
Riksha (Bear) Mts. ..	76	Sainos, R.....	244-5
Rikshavat.....	80	Saitianoï.....	287
Rin or Irina.....	94, 157	Sajintra.....	154
Rizala Haven ..	249, 258	Sakai.....	283-5, 325
Robber Country ...	222	Sakarauloï.....	272
Rupanârâyana, R.	101, 170	Sakê or Salê.....	261
Rymmik, Mts.	286-8, 291	Sâkêta.....	166, 228
Rhymmos, R.	286, 290, 326	Salagissa.....	124, 126
S			
Sabadeïbai, Is....	236, 239	Salakênoï.....	171-3
Sabadioï.....	269	Salang, Is.....	238
Sabana ...	136, 141, 198-9	Salaterai.....	268
Sabalaessa, R.....	33, 36	Salatha.....	225
Sabara.....	196	Salikê (Ceylon)..	247, 252
Sabarai.....	172-3	Salour.....	59
Sabouras.....	63, 65	Salyuen, R.....	209
Sada.....	24, 195-6	Samarkand 12 n9, 35, 271, 274	
		Samaradê.....	202-3
		Sambalaka. 131, 133, 167, 169	
		Sambra.....	196



CSL

INDEX.

365

PAGE	PAGE		
Samnitai	288	Satlaj, R.	91, 93
Sandabaga, R.	89	Sâtpura, Mts.....	77
Sandabal, R.	81, 89	Satyrs, cape of the...	245
Sandokandai	249	Satung or Thatung.	199
Sandowe (Sandwipa).	194,	Satyrs' Is.....	239, 241
	197	Saurabatis	135
Sanf or Chanf	203	Sazantion	152
Sangala	122, 157	Sehwân	144
Sangamarta	162	Seistân, lake of	309
Sanjan	39	Sêlampura	224, 227
Sank, R.	71	Sêlour	183
Sannaba	131	Semanthinos, Mt	204,
Sapara	33, 36		206-7
Sapolos	210	Sêmanthinoi	245
Sarabakic Gulf ...	196-7	Sennê	49, 52
Sarabos, R.	99, 210	Seanoi	249
Saramannê	260, 323	Seoni	171
Saranges, R.	90	Sêra 9, 13, 14, 19 n16,	300,
Sarasvati, R. 85, 89,	99,		327
	101	Serendib (Ceylon)...	252
Sarata	245	Sêres	9 n6, 326-8
Sarayu or Sarju, R...	99	Serikê	297-305
Sarbana or Sardana.	148	Seripala	103, 152
Sardonyx, Mts.	75-6	Sêros, R.....	202, 208-9
Sariga	308	Sêsatai.....	218
Sariphî, Mts. 262, 264,	309	Sibae	290
Sarisabis	175-6	Sibricion	168
Sarmagana	307	Sidhpâr	149
Sarmatia	286, 296	Sidi-jayagad	188
Sarsi.....	131	Sigalla	167, 169
Sasartu, R.....	86	Sigerus	57
Sasones	288	Simylla (Chaul) 29, 39,	
Sâta-dru, R.	92		42-3, 57, 201



CSL

PAGE	PAGE
Sina (or Séna) 263	Soura 159
Sinai or Thizai ... 5, 9 n6	Sôbanos, R. 202-3, 209
Sinai, Gulf of the ... 246	Socunda 323
Sinai, land of the ... 241-7	Sogdiana 35, 274-53, 325
Sinaka 261	Sogdian, Mts. 35, 275-6, 278
Sinda 202, 204	Soghd 277
Sindai, Is. 236, 238, 241	Sokanda, R. 260
Sindhu 82, 85	Solana 300
Sindhu, R. 161	Solen 323
Sindokanda 243, 258	Sôlên, R. 57, 59, 73, 103
Sindomana 144	Solomatis, R. 98, 99
Singapur, Straits of. 242	Sôn, R. 77, 98-9
Sign-an-fu 10 n	Sonaparânta. 198, 221
Sinthôn (Piti), R. 33	Sonargâton 175
Sipiberis (or Sitté- beris) 225	Sôpatma 67
Sippara 70-2	Sôphara 41
Sipparê 307	Sôra 64, 65, 162, 185
Sirakênê 261	Sorba 261
Sirimalaga 176, 179	Sôrétai 64, 184
Siripalla 154	Sôteira 308, 310, 328
Shâhdêri 121	Souanagoura ... 225, 228
Shâhjahânpûr 134	Sonastênê 105-6
Shakôhpur 127	Soubouttou 176
Skordai 268	Soudasanna 156
Skardo, R. 294	Souobênôï 287
Skorpiophoros khâre 307	Soupara 39, 40
Skopoloura 185	Soutrasênôï 98
Skythia beyond Imaôs 292-7	Sourogana 269
Skythia within Imaôs 285-92, 325	Sousikana ... 142, 144-45
Soana, R. 248-9, 257	Sousouara, Is. 251
	Southern Cape 244
	Soxestra or Sôkstra. 320



	PAGE		PAGE
Spatana Haven	249, 258	Tagara.....	79, 175-8
Stagabaza	163	Tagaung	231, 235
Sthānēśvara	128	Taikkulā	198
Stone Tower 12-19, 30,		Tainour	183
284, 325		Takōla	193-9
Storna	210-12	Takōla, C.	197
Suari	173	Takoraioi.....	217
Subanrēkha, R.	74	Takshaśilā (Taxila). 115,	
Śaktimat, Mt.	75	118	
Sumatra, Is. 190, 238-40,		Talara	183
256		Talakōry or Aakōtā..	249
Sūmī.....	149	Talarga	212, 214-6
Supārā, (see Soupāra).		Talka, Is.	261
Sārparaka	72	Taluctā.....	170
Sushōna, R.	85	Tamala	24
Suvarna-rēkhā, R.	71	Tamalitēs	167-8
Suzantion	154	Tamasis	135
Śvetī, R.	86-8	Tambyzoi.....	262
Syđroi... ..	316	Tamerai	193
Syđros	151	Tamluk	74, 168-9
Syēba, Mts.	287-8, 292	Tāmralipta	73, 169
Syebōi	287	Tāmraparī, R. 57, 59, 78,	
Syrastra 33-37, 140, 158		252	
Systrénē	33, 136	Tana	42
Syrieni.....	185	Tunais or Don, R. ...	281
Syrnisika.....	157	Tangōla or Taga ...	183-4
Syzyges	299	Tangalle	258
		Tanganōi.....	210-11
		Tanjore	64, 183
		Taṅk or Tonk	210-11
		Tandr	50
		Tapoura, Mts.	287-9, 291
		Tapoureioi	288

T



	PAGE		PAGE
Tapouroi	268, 267	Tholoubana	163-4
Taprobane, Is. 61, 247,	259	Thoulé (Shetland Is.).	5, 297
Tâpti, R.....	48, 158, 160	Throana	202
Tarbakana	311	Throanoi	299, 305
Tarakhoi	250	Taitoura (Chittore).	152, 156
Tatakêné	313-14	Tiausa	142
Tathilba	167	Tiladai	217-8
Taua.....	307	Tilogrammon	72
Taukiana	307	Timoula	29, 42
Tavoy, R.	209	Tinneveli	57, 59
Taxila.. 20n, 115, 118-121		Tiripangolida	175
Tâshkand	12 n9	Tisapatinga	157
Tashkurgan	12 n9	Tistâ, R.....	102, 205
Tasopion	172	Tittoua.....	183
Tejin, R.	262	Toana	131
Tektosakes	287	Tokharoi 268, 272, 276,	282, 324
Têmala, R.	196	Tokosanna, R....	191, 195
Têmala, C.	196	Tomara	225, 235
Tennagora	184	Tong-king.....	9 n6, 243
Téwar	166	Tong-king, Gulf of..	246
Thagora	202	Toörnai	35, 284
Thagouron, Mt.....	298	Tóringoi	63, 64
Thân.....	149	Tôsalei	225, 230-1
Thanesar	128	Tongma ...	225, 231, 255
Tharawati	236	Tribazina.....	308
Tharra	226, 236	Triglypton or Trilingon	225, 231-4
Thelkheir.....	63	Trikadiba, Is.	187-8
Theophila	149	Trinêsia, Is.	187-8
Thina	220	Trinkônamalai	257
Thinai (Si-guan-fu or Loyang) ...	9 n6, 245-6		
Thogara	300		



	PAGE	PAGE
Y		
Yamuna (Jamna), R. 85,		Zamirai 219, 221
98		Zanzibar, Is. 191
Yarkand 12 n 9		Zaradros, R. 91
Yellapur 181		Zarafshân, R. 290
Yêtdr 186		Zarah Lake ... 314, 317
Yuma, Mt. 205		Zarangoi or Sarangai 314
Z		
Zaba 25, 27, 209		Zaratai 288
Zaba, Is. 251		Zariaspa ... 19n, 269, 274
Zabai 9 n 6, 202-3		Zariaspai 268
Zaôn 224		Zariaspis, R. ... 268, 324
		Zerogerei 152, 154
		Zeus, C. 248, 258
		Zibala, Is. 251
		Zimyra 308



CSL

GENERAL INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
A		C	
Agastya Rishi	78	Camels.....	324
Albiróni	120	Cannibals	299
Alkman	295	Carnelian stone.....	77
Ammianus Marcel- linus	323	Chandragupta	169
Andhrabritya dy- nasty	46	Cocks.....	225, 232-3
Antiokhos Theos ...	271	Copper.....	222
Ants, gold-digging.	107, 110	Cottons	68
Apollonius of Tyana.	119	D	
Aristeas of Prokon- nêsos	295	Darius Hystaspes...	82
Arrian	292	Diamonds 71, 158, 167, 169, 172	
Arsakes	324	Dionysios	114
Aśoka, 116, 119, 154,	300	E	
Astês	117	Elephants.....	247, 249
B		G	
Baleokouros ...	176, 177	Ginger.....	247
Basarenagos	185-6	Gold. 107, 219, 239, 241, 247, 295	
Bdellium	117	Griffins.....	295
Beryl.....	180-1, 247	Gymnosopistai.....	130
Bhṛigu	153		
Boukephalos ...	125, 126		
Brankhidae.....	283		



CSL

372

GENERAL INDEX.

H	PAGE	O	PAGE
Honey	247	Onyx-stones. 77, 155, 176	
Hyacinths	247		
K			
Kadphises	272	Pāndavas.....	128
Kanerkes.....	272	Pāndya Dynasty ...	58
Kanishka ... 116, 119,	138	Paradise	107-8
Kauravas	121	Paradise (Aryan) ...	279
Kēralaputra	182	Parasang	13 n 10
Kostus	117	Pearl Fishery. 57, 64, 201,	
Krishna	60, 128		258
Kērobothros	52, 180	Pepper	50, 53
		Pirates.....	180
		Pōros.....	89, 125, 164
		Ptolemy, Geogl. sys-	
		tem of	1-32
L			
Lunar Race. 121, 129, 164			
M			
Mæs or Titianus ...	14	R	
Malabathrum (Cin-		Rachia (Rājā).....	254
namon) ... 193, 219, 220		Ravens, white.....	232-3
Mambares	40	Rhinoceros ... 13 n 11, 16	
Marinos of Tyre.....	3		n 14
Megasthenes.....	109	Rice	247
Murex, shell-fish ...	236		
Musikanos	144		
Muslin	60		
N			
Nard	117, 225, 229	S	
Ninus	271	Śākyamuni 135, 166, 228-9	
		Śālivāhana	176
		Samudragupta	213
		Sandanes.....	40
		Sandrakottos	169



CSL

GENERAL INDEX.

373

	PAGE		PAGE
Saraganes	40	Tiastanes (Chastāna)	152,
Sātakarni Dynasty...			156
Schoinos	13 n 10	Tigers	247, 323
Semiramis.....	271, 274		
Silver... ..	219, 221, 237, 247	V	
Siroptolemaios	177		
Skylax	82, 108	Vijaya	253.4
Solar Race	166	Vikramaditya ...	122, 154
Sōrnagos.....	64, 184	Vine-trees	264, 271, 308
Sramana	52		
		Y	
T		Yayāti	129
Taxiles	119	Yetha	38

